

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

10
To be published, by the same Author,

AN

ENGLISH AND GERMAN

AND

GERMAN AND ENGLISH

DICTIONARY,

IN OCTAVO.

Wellington
October 2nd 1818
GERMAN GRAMMAR,

Miss F & G Markham
ADAPTED TO *June 23, 1818*

THE USE

OF

ENGLISHMEN.

BY

GEORGE HENRY NOEHDEN, PHIL. D.

MULTA FIUNT EADEM, SED ALITER.—QUINTILIAN.

LONDON:

PRINTED BY C. WHITTINGHAM,
Dean Street, Fetter Lane.

FOR J. MAWMAN, (SUCCESSOR TO MR. DILLY,) IN THE POULTRY;
AND SOLD BY DULAU AND CO. SOHO SQUARE; C. GEISWEILER, PARLIAMENT
STREET; F. PERTHES AND S. G. HOFFMAN, HAMBURG; F. NICOLAI, BERLIN
AND H. DIETRICH, GÖTTINGEN.

1800.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

TWO PARTS



GEORGE ALFRED LINDEN, F.R.S.

MULTA MUNT JAZZUS INO ALIBIS - QUATILIAN

LONDON

FOR INFORMATION (ADDRESS TO THE EDITOR) IN THE FORTH
AND SOLE OF THE AND SOLE OF THE AND SOLE OF THE
THEY ARE THE ONLY AND SOLE OF THE AND SOLE OF THE
THEY ARE THE ONLY AND SOLE OF THE AND SOLE OF THE

1800

TO
R. J. LAWRENCE, ESQ.

SIR,

IN preparing this volume for the press, I have been, in the most lively manner, reminded of the time, when I had the honour of being introduced to your acquaintance. For this circumstance I must consider as the remote cause of the present publication. From a consciousness of its imperfections, I ought, perhaps, not to have inscribed it with your name: but, besides that by my acquaintance with you and your family, I was first led to turn my attention to the subject of this book, there exists a motive more forcible, which induces me to present it to you as a mark of my particular regard. The motive I allude to, is gratitude for that friendship, you have so invariably shown me. I owe it to you, that I visited this country, and became acquainted with that excellent and amiable family, with which, now for some years, I have had the happiness of being connected: two

events, which through life will be to me a source of the greatest satisfaction.

Were I vain enough to flatter myself with hopes of success concerning this production, I might draw the most favourable conclusions from the proficiency of your sons in the language and literature of my native country. For, though I am far from thinking, that any great part of their knowledge is to be ascribed to my instructions, yet, if I am not mistaken, the first principles, by which they began their progress, were the same as are exhibited in this Grammar.

Permit me, Sir, to take this opportunity of offering my warmest acknowledgements for your kindness towards me, and of assuring you, that I shall never cease to be,

SIR,

Your grateful and sincere Friend,

And obliged humble Servant,

N. A.
September 8, 1800.

G. H. NOEHDEN.

ADVERTISEMENT.

IT is about ten years ago, when, residing in Germany, I had the honour of forming an acquaintance with some English gentlemen, who, besides their other pursuits in literature, had come to that country, with a view of studying its language. Being a native, I undertook to assist them with my instructions. But the thought of adapting the Grammar of my own tongue to the use of foreigners, had never occurred to me before. I had, therefore, recourse to a German Grammar, written in English, with which my friends had provided themselves. However, I soon discovered, that my purpose would not be answered by that book, and that my scholars, if left to its guidance alone, would make a very slow and tedious progress. I saw in what points

that Grammar was deficient, and being encouraged by an attempt in some particulars, I carried my investigations through the whole. I met afterwards with farther opportunities of giving the same instructions, and had the satisfaction to perceive, that my endeavours were attended with comparatively great success. Hence this pursuit became an object of my attention: and though interrupted by other avocations, I never lost sight of it. In the year 1793 I came to England, where, with the exception of one twelve month, I have since resided. My situation in this country was such, as frequently called to my mind that subject: and now, thinking that I have brought it to that state, in which it may be productive of some utility, I lay it before the publick.

The chief characteristick of this work will be found to be, that it differs from its predecessors. I have not the arrogance to say, that it is better; but, convinced of its faults, only assert, that it is different. And this difference, has, upon experience, appeared to me to be such, as tends to render the study of the German

language more sure and easy: a circumstance, which I may perhaps be entitled to consider as advantageous. I have, in a great measure, proceeded upon my own ground. At the same time, I have received much instruction from the able and learned writers, who, before me, have employed their pens on this topick; but to none of them I confess myself more indebted than to Mr. Adelung, an author of uncommon merit, who has principally dedicated his literary labours to the cultivation of his native language, and produced works, which are an honour to the nation that counts him one of its number. However, let it be understood, that, though I have derived great information from this writer, I have by no means followed his footsteps. I have chosen a direction of my own: and my errors, therefore, if such they are deemed to be, will not, from what I have said, be referred to a person, to whom they cannot be imputed.

I shall now briefly state in what manner my plan has been executed. Having only practical utility in view, I thought fit to abstain from unnecessary innova-

tion in the distribution of my theme. I divide the whole into two heads: the First, representing the parts of speech by themselves, is that which is commonly called *Etymology*; the Second, in which they are considered in connexion with one another, is the same that, in general, bears the name of *Syntax*. As to the First Division, the eight parts of speech are treated of in as many different chapters. They are preceded by a chapter on Pronunciation. The Second Division consists of three chapters: the first, on the Agreement and Government of Words; the second, on some particular Idioms; and the third, on the Arrangement of Words.

I have every where endeavoured to select what appeared to be most useful; and, seeking for no praise from a display of erudition, given the matter in as concise and simple a manner as I was able. In the Chapter on Pronunciation, I have spoken at large of the letters, and also of the accent; and added a few words on prosody. In the second chapter, of the first part, I have entirely new modelled the system of the Declension of

Substantives. It was my aim to fix upon a firm basis the limits of every declension, that the student might be able to distinguish every substantive, and reduce it at once, without uncertainty, to its proper place; a point which had not been duly attended to before. Something new may perhaps also be met with, in the Section on the Gender, and in the general remarks on the Noun Substantive. The Adjectives I have brought under four forms, which they assume according to the different manner in which they may be used; not speaking of the degrees of comparison, but of the adjectives in their first state. Thus the following chapters of the First Part will be found to contain several things, that were passed over in other Grammars.—Of the Second Part, or the Syntax, I have to remark, that the division into the three chapters mentioned, is quite my own. I claim the attention of the reader particularly to the Third Chapter, on the Arrangement of Words. I believe nothing of that kind has been attempted in any similar work, previous to this.

I shall not detain the reader by more circumstantial details; but conclude with saying, that if what I have done meets with his approbation, I shall think myself rewarded for my labour. It will be an incitement to me, farther to contribute towards the promotion of the German language and literature in this country, from which, I am persuaded, considerable advantages may be derived, both for science, and for the intercourse of active life.

Grammar will be engaged, and which alone
can claim the foreigner's attention. We
shall therefore endeavour to trace its rise
and progress, and observe its deviation from
the original, which it has in some degree
lost. **INTRODUCTION.** We shall
consider, where it is best spoken, and point
out, in what manner the student may arrive
at that degree of correctness and purity, of
which it is susceptible.

THE German Language has, from the
earliest times, of which we possess any
knowledge, to its present state, undergone
such remarkable changes, that, in order to
give the reader a clear and distinct idea of
what is intended as the subject of this pub-
lication, it appears necessary to premise
something in the shape of an historical in-
troduction. From hence, it is hoped, that
a proper notion will be obtained of the dif-
ferent Dialects of Germany, and of that in-
particular, which finally has been adopted as
the general language throughout the whole
country. This latter is distinguished from
the rest by the name of *High German*, and
serves, in our days, exclusively for the pur-
poses of writing, and of polite conversation.
It is that with which the reader of this

2 *Introduction. On the Dialects of Germany.*

Grammar will be engaged, and which alone can claim the foreigner's attention. We shall therefore endeavour to trace its rise and progress, and observe its deviation from the other dialects: after which we shall consider, where it is best spoken, and point out, in what manner the student may arrive at that degree of correctness and purity, of which it is susceptible.

The German * tongue was from time immemorial divided into two principal dialects, the UPPER-GERMAN (*Ober-Deutsch*); and the LOWER-GERMAN (*Nieder-Deutsch*). The former belongs to the south, and the latter to the north of Germany. Those provinces of the south, in which the Upper-German is spoken, are situated between Franconia, and Italy; and comprehend Austria, Bavaria, Suabia, and part of the Rhenish countries. It is also found in Franconia, the southern part of the circle of Upper-Saxony, and in Silesia; though in these it varies, as it approaches the boundaries of the other dialect. The Lower-German extends from

* *German*, in the original, is expressed by *Deutsch*, pronounced like *Doitch*.

the borders of the Netherlands beyond the eastern limits of the Empire. It is spoken in the circles of Westphalia, and Lower Saxony, in the northern part of the Upper Saxon circle (*viz.* in Pomerania and Brandenburg), and in the kingdom of Prussia. There are likewise vestiges of it remaining in a district of Transylvania, which was peopled by a colony from the north of Germany in the 18th century*.

Those two idioms, the Upper and Lower-German, essentially differ from one another, not merely in the pronounciation of the same words, but in the words and phraseology themselves. They diverge more widely than the Attic from the Ionic, or the Ionic from the Doric, in ancient Greece. The Upper-German is in its elocution hissing and guttural, and abounds in deep and broad sounds. The Lower-German, on the contrary, has a clear and soft enunciation, and generally avoids such sounds as are harsh, and unpleasant to the ear. It renders the organs of speech supple and flexible, whereas the former so contracts, or distorts them, that, in

* See Büsching's Geography. Transylvania

4 Introduction. On the Dialects of Germany.

some degree, it disqualifies them for the pronunciation of any other language. Hence we find, that those inhabitants of Germany, among whom the Lower-German prevails, acquire with facility the pronunciation of foreign tongues: while those of the south, or Upper Germany, have to struggle with insurmountable difficulties.

Such being the nature of the two primitive dialects, there can remain no doubt, to which the preference ought to be given. The Lower German is possessed of a considerable share of harmony, when compared with its rival: the latter is liable to many objections. If both at the same time, and under equal circumstances, had been brought forward on the theatre of literature, it is more than probable, that the Lower German would have been cultivated to the exclusion of the other dialect: but unfortunately it happened, that the latter gained ground, while the former was almost entirely neglected.

This arose, in the first instance, from the political state of the country. The Emperors

of Germany, in the 11th, 12th, and 13th centuries, the age in which the modern languages of Europe began to be used in writing*, were chiefly natives of the southern provinces†. Their dialect, the Upper German, was consequently adopted in public transactions, and became the language of the court and the higher ranks connected with it. It was, for this reason, considered as the politer idiom, and more attention was paid to it. Those, who first committed the effusions of their genius to writing, did it under the auspices of those princes: and produced compositions in their native language, which was at the same time that of their patrons and sovereigns. But another circumstance proved likewise favourable to the advancement of the Upper German. This was the vicinity of France and Italy: the two countries, in which, after the dark ages of barbarism, the light of genius and knowledge first shone forth. They shewed the first literary efforts in their own lan-

* See Eichhorn's *History of the Revival and Progress of Literature*.

† See Pütter's *History of the German Empire*, translated by Donford.

6 *Introduction. On the Dialects of Germany.*

guages: and the example was thence communicated to Germany. But of this country the south, from being nearer, had the superior advantage. There the improvements of the neighbouring nations were spread, before they reached any other quarter: and those districts became the fountain-head of rising literature and science! Their language was made the vehicle of learning and genius*: and in proportion as it attained to a greater degree of cultivation, the Lower German was undervalued and disregarded.

In that preeminence the Upper German maintained itself for a considerable time, till it was supplanted by the foundation of a new dialect, namely, the *High German*. This happened, in consequence of the reformation, about the beginning of the 16th century. That event, which so greatly influenced not only the German nation, but the whole of Europe, originated in the Electorate of Sax-

* The poetical productions in that dialect were by no means despicable. Let it suffice to mention the Suabian Bards, who flourished under the Imperial House of Hohenstauffen. See Eichhorn's History of the Rev. and Progr. of Literature.

The Upper German, and the High German. 7

ony. ⁵² There Luther, the illustrious author of the reformation, was born, there he lived, and there he taught ⁵³. In his translation of the Bible, and other works, tending to promote his views, he ventured to depart from the idiom, then generally employed in writing, and to substitute the dialect of his own province. ⁵⁴ This, varying from the Upper German, had been transplanted into the Electorate of Saxony from Franconia, by means of a colony settled there, under the Emperor Henry I. in the 10th century. The Franconian tongue, though it belongs to the Upper German, deviates from it by being less broad and guttural. When carried into the Electorate of Saxony, it there experienced a new improvement. ⁵⁵ The inhabitants of those parts, in which this colony was established, were of the Slavonic race: and intermixing with the Franconians, they imparted to their language much of that softness and harmony, for which the Slavonic tongues are partly distinguished. ⁵⁶ The Franconian, therefore, was divested of many of its original peculiarities, and became more sonorous and concordant than any of its sister dialects.

⁵² Luther was born in the year 1483; he died 1546.

8 *Introduction. On the Dialects of Germany.*

And this was the idiom, which Luther adopted instead of the Upper German. What prompted that great and learned man to recede from the prevailing custom, we cannot exactly ascertain; but it is probable, he was induced by the nicety of his ear, to disapprove the reigning language, and to prefer another, which, though not supported by the authority of foregoing writers, was free from many disadvantages, under which the former evidently laboured. A man of his spirit and genius was well calculated to attempt such a revolution; and the situation, in which he stood, rendered the success complete. Besides, the transition from the one to the other, was not so abrupt and sudden, as it may seem upon a superficial view. The ancient dialect remained the basis; and the changes superinduced were gradual. If we examine Luther's writings in chronological order, we may observe that he proceeded in this work step by step. In his first publications the deviations from the Upper German are comparatively few: but they increase in proportion as he seems to have been more convinced of the justice of that measure, and as the public became reconciled to the inno-

vation. Had Luther been a native of Lower Germany, and attempted to establish the dialect of that country instead of the other, his plan would probably have been defeated. The authority and example of Luther was followed by his friends and adherents; and his language was received by all those, who embraced his doctrines. The protestant preachers issued forth from Wittenberg and the Electorate of Saxony to all parts of the German empire, and delivered their tenets in the dialect of their province, and that of their master. Thus it entered into every corner of Germany, to which the reformation penetrated. It even served as a mark of distinction between the reformed and the papists. The latter persevered in the old style, and abhorred the new idiom, as the abominable invention of heresy. But it was the more cherished by their opponents; and in process of time not only the discourses from the pulpit, but the institution of youth were carried on in the same language: till at last it gained such an ascendancy, that superseding all the provincial dialects, it

10 *Introduction. On the Dialects of Germany.*

was alone regarded as the proper language both for devotion and instruction*.

The reformation had been the fruit of progressive civilization and improvement: in return, it enlightened mankind, and furthered the advancement of knowledge and learning. Around it as a guiding star gathered all that was inimical to superstition, and favourable to truth. It gave to the human mind a wider range, by counteracting ignorance and delusion. The province, in which the reformation was first received, soon raised itself, by these advantages, above the rest of Germany. It became the source of refinement, and the seat of the arts: and served as a pattern for imitation to its neighbours. The language too of that province was looked upon as more pure and elegant, more correct and harmonious, than other idioms: and in this manner it rose to that superiority, in which we behold it at this day. And now, far from having reached the zenith of its glory, it is rapidly advancing towards the period of universal empire, when it will

* See David Michaelis's oratio de eâ Germaniæ Dialecto, quâ in sacris faciundis, et in scribendis libris utimur. Göttingæ, 1750. 4to.

The High German.

reign sole mistress over the whole of the country. That will be the completion of the golden age in the literature of Germany. It is even at present in possession of every thing polite and literary, while the provincial dialects are only preserved among the lower classes of society.

This is the language which, in contradistinction to the other idioms, is termed **HIGH GERMAN***. As it has ceased to be a

* **HOCH DEUTSCH.** *Hoch* signifies *high*, and is opposed to *low* or *flat*: the tongue spoken in the north, or low lands, being styled *Low German*, *Platt Deutsch*, the same as *Nieder Deutsch*. The Electorate of Saxony, which gave birth to the High German, is situated to the south of those provinces, in which the Lower German prevailed; and so far that name is applicable. For the terms *high* and *low*, in describing the situation of countries, are frequently made use of to denote the South and the North. The High German will, after what has been said, not be confounded by the reader with the Upper German, from which it materially differs: though it may be doubted, whether the appellations *High* and *Upper German* sufficiently mark a discrimination. It is not, however, worth our while to discuss the propriety, with which those names were assigned. Let it suffice, that they now answer the purpose of a distinction. We sometimes find the High German, in English erroneously expressed by *High*

12 Introduction. On the Dialects of Germany.

provincial dialect, and is become the general language of the country, it may justly be called *the German* by preference. For it has been cultivated in all quarters, and received improvements, independent of its native province. In its present state it is no longer the language of the Electorate of Saxony, spoken by the inhabitants at large: but there, as elsewhere, it is confined to the higher orders. It is possessed of a superior degree of correctness, having relinquished all local and provincial peculiarities *. We

Dutch. In this case *Dutch* is mistaken for *Deutsch*. The latter is the original for *German*; but *Dutch* refers to the provinces of Holland, and has no connection at all with Germany.

* It will be satisfactory to quote Mr. Adelung, in confirmation of what is advanced above. For his authority, in questions concerning the German language, is paramount to any other I know of; and his evidence, in this particular, may be deemed highly impartial. For he, in general, favours the dialect of the Electorate of Saxony, and wishes to allow to it as much as it can possibly pretend to. In a most excellent work, styled, *A System of the German Language*, (*Lehrgebäude der Deutschen Sprache*) Vol. i. p. 84, and 85, he expresses himself in the following manner: "The High German is, indeed, more frequently spoken in the Electorate of Saxony than in other provinces, which have not

may consider it as a shrub, which has thriven out of its native soil, and produced the finest fruit after being transplanted. Let us then enquire where its growth is, at the present day, most profitable; and in which parts it will be most eligible for the foreigner to gather it.

The Electorate of Saxony, or Upper Saxony, as it is commonly called, demands our first attention. This was the birth-place of

But of those places which have attained to that degree of refinement by which the principal towns in that country are distinguished; but it is by no means the language of the common people; and, therefore, cannot be considered as a provincial dialect. That language which, in our days, is adopted for writing, is not limited to one particular province, but is the general language of taste and polite education in all Germany; though it is naturally more pure in the Electorate of Saxony than elsewhere, since the farther we go from it, the more we find the High German intermixed with provincial idioms. He constantly maintains that it is not a provincial dialect: for instance, in the same book, p. 89, after remarking some peculiarities of the language of Meissen (which is one of the principal towns in the Electorate of Saxony) he says: "This may serve as a hint to those who would declare the High German to be no more than the dialect of Meissen."

14 *Introduction. On the Dialects of Germany:*

the language; and there, we may reasonably expect, that it is well spoken. The towns of Meissen and Dresden are particularly entitled to that honour. They have for a long space of time, been conspicuous by the flourishing state of the arts, and by the elegance and politeness of their inhabitants. The language must necessarily derive great commendations from these circumstances: and the preference, in speaking the High German, was, on that account, generally given to those places. But, of late years, this prerogative has been disputed by other towns, and in other provinces. The principal cities, for instance, in the circle of Lower Saxony, such as Hamburg, Brunswic, Hannover, Göttingen, &c. and some in the north of the Upper Saxon circle, as Berlin and others; in short, all the places of note, within the verge of the Lower German dialect, have brought forward claims, apparently so well founded on merit, that it will be proper to examine the subject more accurately, before we form an opinion. This will be of service to the foreigner, who applies himself to the study

of the German language. For it is of importance for him to know where, in reality, the German is best spoken. Correctness of expression, and choice of phraseology, may be obtained by reading the classical writers of a nation; but the proper mode of speaking the language can only be gained from an intercourse with the natives. It therefore interests us, if we value a good pronunciation, to be informed with whom we may, to the most advantage, associate for that purpose. In Italy we prefer Florence and Rome to Venice or Naples, as in England, Westminster and Bath, to Manchester or Newcastle; and in France, we would rather acquire our pronunciation at Paris, than in the regions of Normandy, or the districts of the south. And in the like manner it remains to be determined, which part of Germany would be most fit for a similar object.

If we compare the pronunciation of the Electorate of Saxony (or Upper Saxony) with that of the Lower Saxon circle, we shall find a difference, which must arise from a provincial bias in either the one or

16 *Introduction. On the Dialects of Germany.*

the other. As it would not be rational to pronounce the same word in two diverse ways, we must fix upon one as the most just. An Upper Saxon may speak well as a native of his province; and a Lower Saxon may vary, and likewise speak correctly according to his dialect. But the High German, as we have seen, is not a provincial dialect; and we ought, therefore, always to follow that mode of pronunciation, which is most in unison with the rules of analogy and euphony. Upon these will depend, which of the two is to be preferred.

We have observed above, that the natives of Lower Germany generally possess great facility in pronunciation. Hence their success in speaking the High German has been considerable. They divest themselves, without much trouble, of their provincial habits: and, with a moderate share of attention, may attain to that, which approaches the standard of nicety and correctness. On the other hand, the Upper Saxons (that is, the inhabitants of the Electorate of Saxony) are not so fortunate in the use of their organs. What is provincial in their pronunciation, is,

for the most part, descended from the Upper German ; and, in general, so inveterate, that it is seldom amended. Consequently the provincial deviations of Upper Saxony are, in their nature, more obstinate and embarrassing than those of Lower Saxony. These may in time be obliterated, whereas the former, it is to be feared, will resist every attempt to remove them. In this respect the Lower Saxons have a great advantage over their neighbours ; and we find among them instances of the High German being spoken with a superior degree of pureness and accuracy.

Upon these grounds a foreigner would not judge amiss, if he were to choose his residence at any eminent place in that province. But a due regard should still be had to the pronunciation of Meissen and Dresden, as by a comparison we shall be the better enabled to discern what is most appropriate. There are those who esteem the pronunciation of Meissen and Dresden, upon the whole, inferior to that of some cities in Lower Saxony. We will not, however, hazard a decision, nor declare in favour of

18 *Introduction. On the Dialects of Germany.*

Dresden, Hannover, or any other claimant*; but, after what has been said; subjoin the most obvious deviations of both the Upper and Lower Saxon, and thus leave the determination to the judgment of the reader.

The provincial aberrances in the Upper Saxon manner of speaking are,

1. A want of discrimination between the soft and hard letters B and P, D and T, G and K. The hard sounds in general predominate; and B. is uttered like P, D like T, G like K. For example: *Der Baum*,

* Mrs. Piozzi, in "Observations and Reflections made in the Course of a Journey through France, Italy, and Germany," Vol. ii. p. 373, has the following remark: *Even I can perceive the language harsher the farther one is removed from Hannover on either side; for Hannover, as Madame de Bianconi told me, at Dresden, is the Florence of Germany, and the tongue spoken at that town is supposed, and justly, the criterion of perfect Teutsch (i. e. German.)* This ingenious lady has, as we see, adopted the notion of those who give the preference to the pronunciation of Lower Saxony. It is singular, that she obtained this intelligence at Dresden; and though we cannot allow her to be a competent judge in this matter, yet what she says serves to illustrate what we have stated above.

the tree, is by the Upper Saxons pronounced *Paum*; *das Buch*, the book, *Puch*; *der Ball*, the ball, *Pall*. In the same manner they sound *T*, where *D* is written, as *Ter*, *tie*, *lar*, for *Der*, *die*, *dar*, the definite article; *Tienen*, for *dienen*, to serve; *Tumm*, for *dumm*, stupid. They likewise express *G* by *K*, and speak *Kott*, instead of *Gott*, God; *Kehen* instead of *gehen*, to go. What is strange, their ear seems to be incapable of perceiving a distinction, though their tongue should be able to produce it. For I have met with natives, who occasionally made use of the soft letters; but so unconscious were they of any difference, that, for the most part, they applied them in the wrong place, pronouncing, for instance, *die Post*, the post office; as *Bost*; *der Platz*, the place, as *Blatz*.

2. The hissing sound of *sh*, assigned to the letter *S*, in the beginning of words before *p* and *t*; and in some other instances. They speak *Stehen*, to stand, as if written *Shtehen*; *Sprechen*, to speak, as if *Shprechen*; *der Durst*, the thirst, as if *Durst*. This, as will be shewn afterwards*, is a relic of the

Upper German, and to be considered as a defect in pronunciation.

3. We may perhaps add the confusion of *ü* and *i*, which seems to be peculiar to the inhabitants of the Electorate of Saxony. They speak both alike, namely as *ee*, whereas the proper sound of *ü* resembles the French *u*.

The principal misnomers, which occur in the pronunciation of the Lower Saxons, are these:

1. They are apt to substitute soft letters for hard ones, especially D for T, as *Däg* for *Tag*. But this arises more from inadvertency, than permanent error; and is avoided by those, who are taught to pay attention to their mode of speaking.

2. The hissing sounds are sometimes superseded, when they ought to be introduced. We hear a Lower Saxon now and then say, *Slagen* for *Schlagen*, *Sneiden* for *Schneiden*: which is as reprehensible as the contrary mistake of the Upper Saxons, before noticed.

to 30. They frequently fail in the letter *G*, which some express by *j* consonant, answering to the English *y* in the beginning of words, as *year*. *Gott*, God, they would pronounce as if spelt *jott*, resembling the sound of *yott*, in English. *Garten*, the garden, as if *jarten*, i. e. *yarten*, in English. Others speak the *G* like a soft *ck*, of which see below. But the true sound of that letter is the same with the hard *G* of the English, in *to go*, *to give*; and those variations are unjustifiable.

These are the most observable flaws in the pronunciation of Upper and Lower Saxony. They proceed from the native idioms of those provinces. For in the same manner as the deviations in the Upper Saxon originate from the Upper German dialect, the peculiarities of the Lower Saxon have their source in the Lower German. They are both equally repugnant to the principles, on which the High German should be founded; for this should steer its course between the provincial idioms, or rise above them by a strict and impartial adherence to the laws of general grammar. But what can

be more ungrammatical than the confusion of sounds, and the abuse of the power of distinct letters in the English in the use of words, as when God they would. Thus much has been said concerning the manner in which the German tongue is, at this day, spoken; which may, perhaps, prove of some utility to the student in his attainment of that language. It would be foreign to our purpose to enter into a more circumstantial detail of the dialects, and their subordinate variations. The reader will be aware, that there are divisions and subdivisions; but on these it is not our object to dwell. Our views are confined to the High German, and of this enough has been afforded for the instruction of the learner.

Europe make use of: the two former are con-
fusions of the same, one employed in printing, the
other in writing. That for printing resembles the
Black Letter of this country, and the former

GERMAN GRAMMAR

appropriated for hand-writing, differs, as will be
seen from the plate annexed. Both, however, as

PART I.

has been intimated, are derived from the same
fontain. Their peculiar characters, being pointed
and angular. They are the productions of the
twelfth and thirteenth centuries; and remain as

CHAP. I.

specimens of that taste is known by the
name of Gothic, and prevailed from the period
mentioned, to the present time, over the

ON PRONUNCIATION.

greatest part of Europe.
Those characters have maintained themselves
in Germany, where they have been much im-

CONTAINING

proved. Yet they still want a little
The Alphabet. 1.
The Pronunciation of Letters. 2.
The Pronunciation of Words, or the Accents. 3.

in the Roman type; that pronunciation is
The Prosody. 4.
hitherto not become general, and the greatest

number of publications continue to appear in the
ancient habit. I shall, therefore, to render it fa-

SECT. I.

amiliar to the student, to introduce it in the German
words that may be introduced in the course of
this Grammar. The character, which serves for

ON THE ALPHABET.

THE Germans use three sorts of characters:
two of which may be called properly German,
and the third Roman or Latin. The latter is
that, which the English and other nations of

Europe make use of: the two former are corruptions of the same, one employed in printing, the other in writing. That for printing resembles the *Black Letter* of this country, and the *Ecriture Ronde et Financiere* of the French. The second, appropriated for hand-writing, differs, as will be seen from the plate annexed. Both, however, as has been intimated, are derived from the same fountain. Their peculiar quality is, being pointed and angular. They are the productions of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries; and remain as specimens of that taste, which is known by the name of *Gothick*, and prevailed from the period mentioned, for a long space of time, over the greatest part of Europe *.

Those characters have maintained themselves in Germany, where they have been much improved. Yet they still want the simplicity and elegance of their original. For this reason many German works have, in later times, been printed in the Roman type: that practice, however, is hitherto not become general, and the greatest number of publications continue to appear in the ancient habit. I shall, therefore, to render it familiar to the student, retain it in the German words that may be introduced in the course of this Grammar. The character, which serves for current hand-writing, is, as far as I know, universally predominant in the German nation: and

* See Gatterer's *Elementa Diplomaticæ*: and *Nouveau Traité de Diplomatique*, by two Benedictine Friars.

though the printed letter may decline, this will probably, from its supposed convenience, be preserved.

There exists, besides, a particular Alphabet for engrossing, which, with the last mentioned, is exhibited in the Plate alluded to.

In writing Latin, or any modern language, of Europe, the Germans use not their own character, but the Roman: with which the people at large are equally well acquainted.

THE PRINTED ALPHABET.

Characters.	Signification.	Name.
A a	A a	Au *
B b	B b	Bey †
C c	C c	Tsey
D d	D d	Dey
E e	E e	Ey ‡
F f	F f	Ef; Ef-ef
G g	G g	Gey, or gay,
H h ch	H h ch	Hau; Tsey-hau
I i	I i	E
J j	J j	Yot
K k ck	K k ck	Kau; Tsey-kau
L l	L l	El
M m	M m	Em
N n	N n	En
O o	O o	O
P p	P p	Pey
Q q	Q q	Koo
R r	R r	Err
S s ff	S s ff	Efs, Efs-efs
ss ft	ss ft	Efs-tset; Efs-tey
T t	T t	Tey
U u	U u	Oo
V v	V v	Fou
W w	W w	Vey §
X x	X x	Iks
Y y	Y y	Ypsilon
Z z	Z z	Tset
tz	tz	Tey-tset

* Not like the broad *au* in *daughter*, *taught*, but rather like the open *au* in *aunt*. See the pronunciation of A, in the next section.

† *ey*, in this and the following instances, to be pronounced as it is in the pronoun *they*.

‡ To sound like the acute *e* of the Germans. See the next section.

§ See the pronunciation of this letter in the next section.

ä ö ü ae oe ue
or
ä ö ü

N. B. Refer to the sound of these diphthongs in the next section.

Fac-simile of German Handwriting

To face P. 27.

Nº1.

Fraktur, or the broken Letter

A B C D E F G H I K L M N
a b c d e f g h i k l m n

O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
o p q r s t u v w x y z

aa bbb cccc dddd eeee ffff gggg hhhh iiii kkkk llll mmmm nnnn oooo pppp qqqq rrrr ssss tttt uuuu vvvv wwww xxxx yyy y z z z z z

aa bbb cccc dddd eeee ffff gggg hhhh iiii kkkk llll mmmm nnnn oooo pppp qqqq rrrr ssss tttt uuuu vvvv wwww xxxx yyy y z z z z z

Nº2

Engrosing Hand

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U V
a b c d e f g h i k l m n o p q r s t u v

W X Y Z
w x y z

Nº3

Current Hand

A B C D E F G H I K L M
a b c d e f g h i k l m

N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
n o p q r s t u v w x y z

aa bbb cccc dddd eeee ffff gggg hhhh iiii kkkk llll mmmm nnnn oooo pppp qqqq rrrr ssss tttt uuuu vvvv wwww xxxx yyy y z z z z z

The foregoing Alphabets exemplified.

Heil dir! unsichtbar Kind des Menschenhauchs.
Der Engel Schwester, süsse Sprache du!

Ob' ich dein heiliges Wort hab' wollen hören
So laß mich dir auch danken.

Kein Kind von Alters her begehrt je

Ein menschliches Ohr: dir Vermehrt mein Stimm.

27
The adjoining Plate exhibits three Alphabets of
German Handwriting.

No. 1. is known by the name of *Fraktur Schrift*,
i. e. the broken letter, because the characters
are formed by interrupted strokes of the pen.
It is used for inscriptions, and to begin the first
lines of any formal writing.

No. 2. called *Ganley Schrift*, *i. e.* chancery writing,
serves commonly for engrossing.

No. 3. is the current hand.

Of these three Alphabets both the capital and
small letters are represented: and a specimen is
added, to show them in connexion.

SECT. II.

ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF LETTERS.

THE subject of this and the following section is attended with great difficulties. For it consists in delineating the force and sound of letters, syllables, and words: and of all things that are objects for the senses, those which refer to the sense of hearing, are undoubtedly the most difficult, and, we may say, almost unattainable by description. The idea we form of sound, proceeds from an immediate comparison with that of which we have a previous and practical knowledge: there is no abstract notion, no general principle, no universal rule to aid the comprehension of it, and to facilitate its acquisition. But even that comparison is very precarious. Individuals may be differently affected by sounds they hear or utter, according to a difference existing in their organs of hearing, or of speaking. The same description, therefore, will not be adequate to the general purpose. There is, besides, in every country, a local and provincial manner of speaking, which as it greatly varies, renders similar attempts extremely intricate and embarrassing. Moreover, the writer, who undertakes to lay down rules for pronouncing a foreign language, cannot at once be a native of two countries, nor be equally well acquainted with the genius and peculiarities of two different tongues; and consequently he must be liable to misconceptions. Add to this, that one lan-

guage may possess sounds, which have nothing to correspond with in the other. How are they to be represented in writing? Is it to be effected by an anatomical analysis of the organs of speech *? or what other means have we, less troublesome and uncertain? The English *Th* is confined to the Celtic languages; the guttural sounds of the Germans, and others, are unknown to many nations; the palaticks and nasals, in which some abound, are foreign to several of their neighbours. How is the pronunciation of these sounds to be communicated to such, as cannot comprehend it through the medium of a comparison? These considerations must strongly impress us with the insufficiency of a descriptive attempt on the pronunciation of a foreign language. It seems only to be calculated for oral instruction.

But should we not, for these reasons, be justified in omitting this part of the Grammar entirely? Would it not be better to leave to the voice of the master, what is impossible to be perfectly attained from the description of the writer? If we could suppose, that all those who deem it expedient to study a foreign language, had it in their power to procure the assistance of a native, this labour might certainly be dispensed with. But as there may be some, that have no such opportunities, it seems to be incumbent upon him, who writes for the public at large, to include in his plan, as far as he is able so to do, also the latter class of his readers. And

* Something of this kind we find in *Cours de Gabelle's* *Grammaire primitive*, vol. i. where the Author treats of Universal Grammar (*Grammaire Universelle*.)

though he should find it impracticable to give all, let him furnish as much as he can. Partial information, in this case, will be esteemed better than none: and knowledge, however defective, be thought preferable to total ignorance. By these motives I am induced, however tedious the task may be, to submit to it; and to tell the reader as much of the pronunciation of the German tongue, as I can express by my pen. As I take for granted, that many of those who learn German, are acquainted with some other language of Europe beside their own, I shall have recourse to the pronunciation of other tongues, where the English alone is not sufficient to convey the sounds I wish.

VOWELS.

A, E, I, O, U, V.

A.

This vowel in no language of Europe, I believe, has that acute sound which is assigned to it in English: I mean that which, for instance, is heard in *hate, mate*, and is by grammarians frequently called the long sound.

In German, A is pronounced as in the French, Italian, Spanish and Portuguese languages. It seems to be between the short A of the English, in *hat, man*, and the broad, in *hall, ball*: and approaches the sound of *a*, in *ah! father*; and that of *au*, in *aunt, gauntlet*.

has three different sounds:

1. The broad, or open,
2. The acute or elevated, and
3. The slender sound.

The broad sound of E resembles that of the long English *a*, in *name*, *basin*, or of *ai*, or *ay*, in *air*, *day*; and is the same with the *é* or *è ouvert* of the French, and the accentuated *e* of the Italians. It takes place, when E concludes the first or middle syllable of a word, not the last. Therefore *leben*, to live, is pronounced nearly as *laben*; *der Besen*, the broom, as *baxen*.

Some words are excepted: *die Ceder* or *Zèder*, the cedar; *Clève*, Cleves, the name of a place; *die Demuth*, humility; *Eden*, Eden, paradise; *die Ege*, the harrow; *Ephen*, ivy; *ewig*, eternal; *jeder*, each; *je*, and *jemahls*, ever; *jemand*, somebody; *jener*, *jène*, *jènes*, he, she, it or that; *Trine*, a proper name; *die Lamprete*, the lamprey; *die See*, the sea-gull; *die Musket*, the musket; *die Pasty*, the pasty; *Peter*, Peter; *die Regel*, the rule; *regieren*, to govern; *die Scene*, the scene; *Schweden*, Sweden; *Schlesien*, Silesia; *die Sirene*, the Siren; *die Tapete*, the hangings of a room; *die Trompete*, the trumpet; *wenig*, little in quantity; *die Zehe*, the toe of the foot. In these the E has the acute sound, contrary to the foregoing rule.

The broad sound is not admitted, when an *h* follows after it, except in a few words, as *stehen*, to

steal, pronounced *stalen*; *fēhlen*, to fail; *versēhlen*, to miss; *der Befehl*, the command; *befēhlen*, to command; *empfehlen*, to recommend; *entbēhren*, to want; *hēhlen*, *verbēhlen*, to conceal; *lēhmen*, loam; *nēhmen*, to take; *die Rēhle*, the throat; *das Mehl*, the flour; *jēhen*, ten. The Upper Saxons also sound the *e* broad before *h* in the following*: *bēhnen*, to stretch; *brēhen*, to turn; *die Fēhde*, the feud or warfare; *lēhnen*, to lean; *die Sēhne*, the sinew; *sich sēhnen*, to long after; *versēhren*, to damage; *wēhen*, to blow; *wēhren*, to guard against; *jēhren*, to consume. The Lower Saxons abide by the rule, and pronounce the words last mentioned with the acute sound.

In the following words the broad sound is heard, though *E* is not at the end of the syllable. *Begeggen*, to meet; *bequēm*, commodious; *das Bret*, the board; *die Brēkel*, the bunn; *der, dem, den*, article; *die Erde*, the earth; *erst*, first; *das Erz*, the ore; *her*, holy; *der Herd*, the hearth; *das Rēbweib*, the concubine; *nebst*, besides, prep. *das Pferd*, the horse; *quer*, awry; *rēgnen*, to rain; *der Schmer*, the smear; *das Schwert*, the sword; *sēgnen*, to bless; *der Steg*, the path; *wer*, who; *wērdēn*, to become; *werth*, worth; *der Werth*, the value; *das Nest*, the nest, (according to the Upper Saxon way of pronouncing.)

When a contraction has taken place, *E* retains its broad sound, though it should be in the middle

* See Adelung's System (Lehrgebäude der Deutschen Sprache) Vol. I. p. 262.

of a syllable: *as*, *er lebt*, he lives, contracted from *er lebet*.

When the *E* is doubled, the sound is always acute, though the Upper Saxons speak it broad in *die Beere*, the berry; *das Beet*, a bed, a division of ground in a garden; *das Heer*, the host, or army; *das Meer*, the sea; *der Speer*, the spear; *der Theer*, the tar.

2. The acute sound of *E* is that of the Italian unaccented *e*, and the French *é fermé*. I believe, this sound exists in the English language, though I am at a loss to elucidate it by proper examples. If I may trust to my ear, I think, it is heard in the pronoun *they*; and perhaps also in *hay*, dried grass.

The acute sound has its place before the letter *h*, as, *die Ehre*; the honour; *die Ehe*, matrimony; *stehen*, to stand.

However, in some words which have been enumerated before, the broad sound prevails, though an *h* should follow.

The acute *E* is also heard before *th*, because this stands for *ht*, as will be shewn hereafter: for instance in *die Weide*, the name of a plant; *das Ratheder*, the professor's chair or desk.

It moreover sounds acutely, when it is doubled: as, in *die See*, the sea; *der Thee*, the tea; *das Beet*, the bed in a garden. &c.

But the Upper Saxons pronounce the following words broad: *die Beere*, the berry; *das Heer*, the host, or army; *der Speer*, the spear; *das Meer*, the sea; *der Theer*, the tar. See above.

m Observe that *ee* is no more than *e* long, and must be uttered as one sound. It is generally used in monosyllables, especially when *e* is the final letter. *bs* We find it also in *die Seele*, the soul; *ber Raffee*, the coffee; *die Armee*, the army. When a word ending in *ee* is in the plural augmented by an additional syllable, containing an *e*; the double *ee* is then exchanged for the single: for instance, *die See*, the sea, plur. *die See-en*, (not *See-en*) the seas; *die Armee*, the army, plur. *die Armee-en*, (not *die Armee-en*) the armies. For it is not the custom to write the *e* in the same word three times following.

bs From this double *e* must be distinguished two *e*'s by chance meeting together, each of which is pronounced separately; as *be-endigen*, to finish, a verb compound of *be* and *endigen*; *ge-ehrt*, honoured, the participle of the verb *ehren*, with the augment *ge*.

m We lastly find the acute or elevated sound of *E* in monosyllables ending in a consonant, though in such instances the double *ee* is frequently adopted: as, *das Beet*, the bed of a garden; *leer*, empty. In *stet*, steady, constant; *stets*, always, continually, and *schel*, oblique, envious; the *e* is single: which the Lower Saxons pronounce acute, and the Upper Saxons broad.

3. The slender sound of *E* is audible before a consonant in the same syllable; and resembles the English *e* in *bet*, *yet*, *help*. For example: *das Bett*, the bed, pronounced like *bet*; *das Feld*, the field, pr. like *felt*.

But in some words the E before a consonant, sounds broad, or acute, as has been above observed. Before the liquids l, m, n, r, the E is obscure, or nearly mute: for instance, *die Distel*, the thistle; *der Athem*, the breath; *öffn*, open; *das Messer*, the knife: similar to the English *e* in *open*, *shapen*, *thistle*, *metre*. And thus obscure it remains, though one or more consonants should follow after the liquid: as *liebend*, loving; *ein Liebender*, a loving person; *die Tugend*, virtue; *tugendhaft*, virtuous; *die Wissenschaft*, the science; *geläutert*, purified; *geläutertes Gold*, purified gold.

At the end of a word of more than one syllable, the E has a kind of half sound, which somewhat resembles the final *er* of the English, as in *water*, and the final *a*, as in *umbrella*, *sophia*. Examples of this sort are numerous, as there is a great variety of words ending in *e*, for instance, the first person of most verbs, and tenses; also many substantives, and adjectives. *Ich liebe*, I love; *Ich liebte*, I did love; *die Liebe*, the love; *die Hände*, the hands; *die gute Frau*, the good woman; *das gute Kind*, the good child; *gute Leute*, good people.

The English, when they hear the *e* so pronounced, sometimes mistake it for their *er* final, which shews, that there must be a resemblance between those two sounds. Therefore, following the sound of *lobē*, they would spell it *lobēr*; *die Stubē*, *stubēr*. But in the words alluded to, nothing like an *r* should be heard.

This half-sound may be called the short sound of *e*. For we find it likewise in the middle of words,

when the syllable it belongs to is short, or, which is the same, void of accent, as *liebete, lobet, lobeten*. It is often thrown out, as *liebte, lobten, lobt*.—The prefixes *Be* and *Ge* have always this half-sound, as *Bereden*, to persuade; *Geschehen*, to come to pass.

When *E* is joined to *I*, it lengthens the latter, but loses its own sound. See letter *I*.

Note.—As a letter of the Alphabet, *E* bears the acute sound, which also serves for the name.

is like the *I* of the Italians, which answers to the long *e* of the English, or their *ee*, or *ie*, in *field*, *shield*; for these sounds are the same according to Johnson.

It never has the sound of the long English *i*, in *fine*, *hide*; though it resembles the short *i*, in *milk*, *silk*, *with*.

It remains the same before and after all letters: and is *not* pronounced like *u*, when it stands before *r*; which is done in English, as in *flirt*, *bird*.

When pronounced long, that is to say, when the full accent rests upon this vowel, it generally has an *e* joined with it. *Id* therefore is nothing but long *i*, equal to the English *ie*, in *field*, *shield*. Consequently it would be erroneous, to sound each of these vowels separately, but *Die* is to be spoken *dee*; *bieser*, *dee-ser*; *Sie*, *see*; *Liebe*, *leebe*. Originally, however, they were pronounced distinctly; and this mode of utterance still prevails in the south of Germany,

where they speak *Wien*, Vienna, as *Wien*; *dies*, this, as *dies*. Nay, in those parts they give this double sound to the *i*, when *e* is not added in writing, as *das Li-echt*, for *das Licht*, the light.

The simple *i* is restored, when in declining the word receives an additional *e*. For it is not usual to write *i* and two *e*'s after it. Therefore *die Poesie*, the poetry, in the plural *die Poesien*, pronounced *Poesi-en*, because it stands for *Poesie-en*; *die Copie*, the transcript, plur. *Copi-en*; *die Melodie*, the melody, plur. *die Melodi-en*. *Das Knie*, the knee, plur. *die Kni-e*, for *die Kniee*. Thus *Ich schrie*, I cried, *Sie schri-en*, they cried, for *Sie schriem*. In such instances, *i* and *e* are sounded by themselves. Likewise in the following words: *das Hieroglyph*, the hieroglyphick; *die Histori-e*, the history; *die Comodi-e*, the comedy; *die Lili-e*, the lily; *Schlesi-en*, Silesia; *der Spani-er*, the Spaniard; *die Ari-e*, the air, music.

It is also lengthened by the addition of the letter *h*, especially when a consonant follows after it in the same syllable, as *Ihm*, to him, *ihn*, him, *ihnen*, you.

Some have maintained, that those additions are needless incumbrances, and that from the accent alone it will appear, whether the vowel is long or short. They have therefore omitted both the *e* and *h* in their writings. In this observation is undoubtedly some truth, if we consider the subject in a speculative point of view. But theory should in such cases give way to general practice, and established custom, unless some essential advantage may be derived from it. For if we do not prescribe

certain bounds to the spirit of innovation, the whole will in time be altered and new modelled: from which much confusion may ensue, and little benefit.

We find the simple *i* used long in some words, for the sake of distinguishing them from others of the same sound. For example: *Das Fieber*, the fever, to be discerned from *die Fieber*, the fibre; *wider*, against, to be different from *wieder*, again.

When more than one consonant follow after *ie*, the sound becomes short: as in *der Dienstag*, the Tuesday; *das Viertel*, the quarter; *vierzehn*, fourteen; *vierzig*, forty; *Ich gieng*, I went; *ich hieng*, I hung; *Er giebt*, he gives: though it would be more regular, in such instances, to make use of the simple *i*.

O,

has the sound of the English O, viz. when long, that which is heard in *bone*, *stone*, *over*, *obedient*; or of *oa* in *boat*, *oat*, *coal*: when short, it resembles the *o* in *lot*, *got*, *trot*.

The German O always keeps its genuine sound, and admits of no such variations, as occur in some English words, for example in *son*, *come*, *done*, *attorney*; in which *o* is pronounced like a short or close *u*; or in *move*, *behave*, where it sounds like double *o*; or in *off*, where the sound is between *o* and *au*.

O is sometimes repeated, to show, that the sound is long; or *h* is added for that purpose. But

let it be particularly observed, that the German *oo* is different from the English, and nothing more than long *o*.

U.

This vowel is the same in the German, as in the Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese languages; that is to say, when long, it sounds like the English *o* in *to do, to move, to prove*; or like *oo* in *hoot, boot, cooler*; or like *ou* in *soup, youth*. When short, it resembles the obtuse *u** of the English, in *bull, full, bushel*.

It is in no instance pronounced like the long *u* in *use, mule, fuel*; nor like the short in *dull, gull, custard*.

U, as a vowel, by itself, has the sound of the French *u*, and the German *ú*, of which see below. Thus it is generally pronounced in words derived from the Greek, in which it stands for the *υ* ψ λ $\omicron$ ν τ . It occurs, however, but seldom, and, I believe, only in foreign terms, and proper names. The Dutch have it in their language, and pronounce it as the long English *i*. The French assign to it the sound

* See Lindley Murray's English Grammar, p. 16.

† It is probable, the Romans pronounced it in the same manner. For they confounded it with the vowel *u*, which seems to have had the sound of the French *u*. This we see in the word *Sylla*, which was also spelt *Sulla*; and in *lacryma*, which was likewise written *lacryma*, from the Greek *δακρυα*.

of their *i*, (English *ee*,) and call it the Greek *i*, *I grec*. In imitation of them, it is by some Germans spoken in the same manner, viz. like *i*. But the other mode is, in my opinion, to be preferred.

Most frequently the *y* is seen in coalition with the vowel *e*, and it thus forms a diphthong, equivalent to the German *ei*, or the long *i* of the English. As it expresses no other sound than the last mentioned, for which the language already has a sign, it appears superfluous. And we may observe of this letter in the German alphabet, what Johnson * said of it in the English, namely, that "we might want it without inconvenience, but that we have it." It seems to have been introduced into German orthography as a substitute for long *i*, being originally written *ii* or * *ij*. Hence it is in the Lower Schools sometimes called *ii*, or double *i*; and by common penmen often marked with two dots *ij*. Thus they write *Julij*, instead of *Julii*, which properly is the Latin genitive case. The power of *i* being given to *y*, is evident in the following words: *Hoya*, *Hoyerswerda*, names of towns; and in the interjections *huy*, denoting a rapid motion; *psuy*, denoting shame, *fi* / which are pronounced as *hoia*, or *hoja*, *hoierswerda*, or *hoierswerda*, and *huü*, *psuü*. This explains the nature of the *y* in composition with *e*; and accounts at the same time, in some degree, for its use in the English language.

* Grammar of the English tongue.

But as we might do without this letter, would it not be advisable to discard it from the alphabet? We are obliged to keep it in proper names and foreign words, and on that ground it claims a place. And when it stands for *i*, custom pleads in its favour. It remains for us to ascertain, when it ought to be admitted in that capacity: and this we shall attempt, when we speak of the diphthong *ei* or *ey*.

DIPHTHONGS.

Closing with *e*: *Ae, De, Ue.*

With *i* or *y*: *Ai, Ay, Ei, Ey, Di, Ui.*

With *u*: *Au, Eu.*

THE Diphthongs are in German pronounced less broad than some of them are in other languages*. The sounds of which they are composed, are, for the most part, so melted together, that they bear the semblance of mere vowels. For this reason, the propriety of calling them diphthongs has been questioned; and those especially, which close with *e*, have been denied that name. But important as this argument may appear, from the zeal of those who are engaged in its discussion, it will be found, that nothing by it is altered in substance. For if,

* For example, the *au, aw, ou*, of the English; the *au, eu*, of the Italians; and the *ou* of the Portuguese.

in compliance with custom, any one chooses to distinguish in the alphabet the compound signs of vowels by the denomination of diphthongs, where can be the harm? Thus the French name their *ai*, though it hardly differs from their *é* or *è*; and the English bestow that appellation upon their *ae* and *oe*, the same in sound as *e*; and upon *ai*, *ay*, the same as *a*. It should be recollected, that an alteration in the terminology does not always profit the science, and may frequently embarrass it.

With respect to the diphthongs, that close with *e*, it is usual, in the German characters, to put the *e* above the small letters, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. In large letters, it is at the side. Instead of the *e* at the top, two dots are often employed to indicate the diphthong, as *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. These dots I hold to be a corruption of the *e*, from the current hand-writing, which, when hastily written, resembles two small perpendicular lines; and being transferred into the printed alphabet, it has thus degenerated.

Ä, Ö, Ü.

This diphthong, when long, that is to say, when spoken with the full accent, is like the English *a*, in *mane*, or like *ay*, in *day*, *pray*. Consequently, it coincides with the French *ai* in *j'aimai*, and the *é ouvert* of the same; likewise with the accentuated *è* of the Italians. We, therefore, find it to be the same with the open *e* of the Germans themselves. See before.

When two or more consonants follow after it, the broad sound is exchanged for the slender, equal to the English *e* in *held*, *ver*, *sell*, *rent*: as *die Hände*, the hands, pronounced *die Hende*; *er läßt*, he lets, or leaves, pr. *lest*; *er fällt*, he falls, pr. *felt*. The broad sounds are in such instances always abandoned, the accent of the word being supported by the double consonant, as will be shewn in the section on the accent.

De, ö, ö.

The English have nothing to answer this sound, when long. But when short, it resembles their *u* in *gull*, *dull*, *custard*, *us*, *concussion*; or their *i* in *flirt*, *bird*; or the *o* in *son*, *come*. Thus the German *ö* is pronounced, when it is followed by more than one consonant: as *die Hölle*, hell, pr. *Hulle*; *der Töpel*, the boor, pr. *Tulpel*; *der Rößel*, the mallet, pr. *Klupfel*.

The long sound of this diphthong is nearly the same as the French *eu*; and may be produced by the English long *a* being uttered with the lips rounded, and contracted: as *die Höle*, the cavern; *öde*, deserted, solitary.

Ue, ü, ii.

Here also the English language leaves us destitute of a comparison. This diphthong resembles the French *u*; and may be imitated in English by uttering the long *e* or *ee* with rounded and projecting lips.—In some provinces they pronounce *ü* like *i*, or the English long *e*; but this is erroneous.

It may be observed, that the two sounds last mentioned, *ô*, *û*, or the French *eu* and *u*, are acquired by the English with some difficulty. The reason is obvious, namely, because they have no corresponding sound in their own tongue. The only way to facilitate the attainment of them, seems to be that mode of uttering *a* and *e*, which has been pointed out.

Yi, or Wy,

sounds like the English *i* in *kite*, or like *y* in *sky*: and is therefore the same as the German *ei*, *ey*; though some maintain that it is different, and ought to be pronounced broader. It occurs only in a few words, such as: *der Kaiser*, the Emperor; *der Laie*, the layman; *der Main*, the river Main; *die Saite*, the chord or string of an instrument; *der Rain*, the brim or brink; *der Hain*, the grove; *die Waife*, the orphan; *Baiern*, Bavaria; *der Baier*, the Bavarian; *der May*, the month of May.

Sometimes we find this diphthong in, *der Weizen*, the wheat; *das Getraide*, the corn in general; *baissen*, to hunt, or bait; though *ei* in these instances is more usual.

Ei, or Ey,

is pronounced as the long *i* of the English in *fine*, *kind*.

Ey should be put: 1. at the end of words. 2. For the purpose of distinguishing words of the same sound, and of different significations, as *sein*, his, and *seyn*, to be. 3. In compounds, when the

component has the *y* before the composition, as *hey* *stehen*, to assist, from *hey* and *stehen*.

Oi,

the same as in English. It is only met with in a few proper names; for instance, *Groißsch, Boißenburg.*

Uu,

has by some writers been substituted for *ü*, with which it had the same sound: but, as the innovation was unnecessary, it very deservedly has been neglected.

Au,

approaches the sound of the English *ou*, or *ow* in *our*, *loud*, *cow*, *power*; and of the Italian *au*: yet it is neither so broad as the former, nor drawn out so much in pronouncing, as the latter. In the Italian *au*, both vowels may be distinctly perceived, whereas in German they coalesce so closely, as to produce one consolidated sound.

This, however, may not be sufficient to enable the reader to pronounce that diphthong with accuracy; and I must, therefore, refer him to the oral instruction of a native. In the mean time he may, without great error, give to it the sound of the English *ou*, or *ow*.

Neu, äu,

has the same sound as the German *eu*, resembling the English *oi*.

Eu,

similar to the *oi* and *oy* of the English, in *boil*, *toil*, *joint*, *point*, *boy*, *toy*; and to the *eu* of the Italians. Yet there is a difference between these and the German sound: for which the pronunciation of a native must be consulted.

CONSONANTS.

1. Simple: *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *i*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *t*.

2. Compound: *ch*, *ch*, *sch*, *ck*, *gn*, *kn*, *ph*, *pf*, *ps*, *th*, *ß*, *wr*.

B.

At the beginning of a syllable, or before a vowel *, it is like the English *b*. But when it ends a syllable, or stands next to the final consonant or consonants; it, generally, is pronounced like *p*; as *ab*, off, like *ap*; *ob*, whether, l. *op*; *daß Lob*, the praise, l. *lop*; *daß Kalb*, the calf, l. *kalp*; *er lebt*, he lives, l. *lept*; *er lobte*, he praised, l. *lopte*; *der Abt*, the abbot, l. *apt*; *der Krebs*, the crawfish, l. *krēps*; *der*

* This is to be understood of a vowel in the same word. It does not even apply to compounds; for in these the pronunciation of the components is, in a manner, distinct. Therefore *die Abart*, a variety in a species, composed of *Ab* and *Art*, is spoken *ap-art*. *Liebäugeln*, to interchange amorous looks, composed of *lieb* and *äugeln*, like *liep-äugeln*.

Herbst, the autumn, *l. herpst*; das Obst, fruit, *l. opst*; hübsch, pretty, *l. hüpsch*.

We meet with something similar in other languages; for instance the French, in which the compressed and close sound of *b*, at the end, is in pronouncing frequently exchanged for the more easy one of *p*.

The original sound, however, is retained, in German, at the end of a syllable, when the next begins with a *b*, as in die Ebbe, the ebb; die Krabbe, the crab: not *epbe*, *krapbe*, which would be offensive to the organs of speech. Likewise in words, in which the letter *e* after *b* is, by a contraction, omitted; as, das Diebsgesindel, a pack of thieves; die Schreibgebühr, the clerk's or copist's fee; die Schreibart, the style of writing; die Hebamme, the midwife; das Knäblein, the infant-boy; das Knoblauch, garlick; for das Diebsgesindel, die Schreibgebühr, die Schreibart, die Hebamme, das Knäblein, das Knoblauch. But when *t* follows after *b*, it is pronounced like *p*, though a similar omission of the *e* had taken place; for instance, Geliebter, for Geliebeter, a beloved person, sounds like *geliepter*; ich lobte, for lobete, I praised, *l. lopte*.

The sound of *b* may vary in the same word, when by an additional letter or syllable, its situation is altered: for example, das Lob, the praise, is spoken *lop*, because *b* concludes the syllable; the genitive case des Lobes, of the praise, is not to be pronounced *lopes*, but *lo-bes*, because a vowel follows after the *b*, and with this it begins a new syllable.

B, in the pronounciation of some English words, is left out before *t*, as in *debt*, *doubt*; but such elisions do not exist in German.

C

before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au*, and before a consonant, is pronounced like *k*: which is the same as in English.

Before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *ei*, *ey*, *ie*, like *ts*, and the same as the *z* of the German, and the sharp *z* of the Italian language. Thus *Centaur* sounds like *tsentaur*, *Cicero*, l. *Tsitsero*, *Cylinder*, l. *tsylinder*, *Ceylon*, l. *Tseylon*, *Cæsar*, l. *Tsæsar*; the Latin *cælum*, l. *tselum*.

In some proper names it is pronounced like *k* before *ä* and *ö*, as in *Carinthien*, *Carinthia*, *Cöln*, *Cologne*, *Cöthen*, *Cüstin*, *Cüstrin*, names of places. We also find *der Körper*, the body instead of *Rörper*, *c* having the power of *k*. In these instances it would perhaps be better to substitute *k*.

From the above it appears, that *C* partly shares the force of *K*, and partly that of *Z*; and consequently may be considered as superfluous in the alphabet. On this ground it has been condemned by some writers, who, in its room, adopt *k* and *z*, as the occasion requires. We must, however, preserve it in foreign words, and proper names; and it is also wanted for the composition of some double consonants: so that it cannot be entirely relinquished. We may, therefore, be less scrupulous in suffering it to remain, where we find it

established by long continued practice, though no other reason should be obvious.

This consonant is of the same nature with *B*, namely, it sounds like the English *d* at the beginning of a syllable, or before a vowel in the same word*; and like *t* at the end of a syllable. Therefore *das Bad*, the bath, is pronounced *bat*; *die Hand*, the hand, *hant*; *der Hund*, the dog, *hunt*; *der Handlanger*, *handlanger*; *der Advocat*, *avocat*.

When a word, ending with *d*, is in declining augmented, so that *d* no longer remains at the end, but begins the next syllable, then this letter resumes its real significancy. For instance, *die Hand* is pronounced *hant*; plur. *die Hände*, pr. *hän-de*, not *hän-te*: because *d* is no more at the end of the first syllable, but commences the second, or, which is the same, stands before a vowel in that word. Thus *der Hund*, pr. *hunt*; pl. *die Hunde*, pr. *hun-de*, not *hunte*.

It also keeps its primitive sound, when another *d* follows, as, *der Widder*, the ram; *Edders*, *Eddesse*, *Eddhausen*, names of places; *Flüßda*, *Flüßder*, names of rivers. And likewise when *e* or *i* is left out, by contraction, as, *du fandst*, thou didst find; *der Finder*, one who finds fault; *der Adler*, the eagle; *der Schuldner*, the debtor; *die Dindung*, or

* Provided the word is not a compound. For in these each component has its separate pronounciation; as *die Handarbeit*, the work of the hand, i. *hant-art*; *die Mundart*, the dialect, i. *munt-art*. See note to letter *B*.

der, arrangement; die Handlung, the deed, action; dem würdigen, to the deserving, &c. for fandest, Tadelser, Adelaar, Schuldener, Ordnung, würdigen: in which it would be false to pronounce *d* like *t*. To these may be added some words ending in *ling*; as der Findling, the foundling; blindlings, blindly; in which *d* usually retains its soft sound.

It was formerly written in many words that, by the present age, are spelt with *t* or *tt*, as das Brodt, the bread; das Schwerdt, the sword: which are now expressed by Brot, Schwert. The double letter is only continued in a few words; for instance, in todt, dead; die Stadt, the town (to distinguish it from die Statt, the place;) and in such as have suffered an elision between *d* and *t*; for instance gesandt, sent, from gesendet; ein Gesandter, an ambassador; beredt, eloquent, from beredet; gewandt, versed in a thing, from gewendet; verwandt, related to, from verwendet.

F,

perfectly the same as the English in *full*, *find*.

It is sometimes pronounced like the English *f* in *of*, which is equivalent to *v*. This, for instance, is done in the following words: die Briefe, pl. the letters or epistles; die Wölfe, the wolves; der Schwefel, the brimstone; der Hafen, the harbour; der Hafer, oats; zwölf, twelve. Without deciding on the propriety of this mode of pronunciation, we have to remark, that it is not uncommon, even among those, who value themselves on their correctness of speech.

This letter has been mentioned in the introduction, p. 19 and 21. Its true sound is that of the English *g*, in *go, gum, get, give, frog*. Thus it should be pronounced in every instance: but, nevertheless, we have to notice some exceptions.

At the end of a syllable, after a vowel, it is frequently spoken like the German *ch**: as *der Tag*, the day; *er fragte*, he asked; *wir klagten*, we complained; *er bog*, he bent; *er trug*, he bore; *der Weg*, the way; *ewig*, eternal; *selig*, blessed: like *tach, frächte, wächten, bóch, trúch, wech, ewich, selich*. This is most peculiar to the inhabitants of Lower Saxony.

Between the vowels *i* and *e*, it is scarcely heard: for example, *die Seligen*, the blessed, sounds almost like *seli-en*; *die Meinigen*, my family, *l. meini-en*; *die Fittige*, the wings, *l. fitti-e*.

When preceded by *n*, it is, at the end of some words, pronounced like *k*, as in *der Ring*, the ring; *der Gesang*, the song, or hymn; *das Ding*, the thing; *der Klang*, the sound; *ich fing*, I caught; *ich ging*, I went; *der Gang*, the walk, or passage; *jung*, young; *lang*, long: like *rink, gesank, klank, fink, gink, gank, junk, lank*.

Whether it would not be an improvement to reduce those exceptions, and abide by the original sound, is a question I may be allowed to propose; though I am not inclined to determine it.

G, in the middle of a word, cannot begin a syl-

* See below.

lable. Therefore, *der Finger*, the finger, must be pronounced, *fing-er*; *Dinge*, things, *ding-e*; *Hoffnungen*, hopes, *hoffnung-en*.

When *n* follows after it, in the middle of a word, that letter is in pronunciation repeated before the *g*. This applies chiefly to foreign words; for instance, the Latin *magnus*, which is spoken as if written *mang-nus*; *lignum*, as if *ling-num*.

In the word *das Genie*, the genius, it has the soft sound of the French *g*, which somewhat resembles the English *sh*. For the word itself is French, though it is generally received.

h is aspirated, as in the English words, *have*, *hold*, *helmet*.

Between two vowels the aspiration is less strong, and sometimes hardly perceptible, as in *die Mühe*, the trouble; *blühen*, to flourish; *die Schuhe*, pl. the shoes.

When it ends a word, it has no sound at all, as in *früh*, early; *der Schuh*, the shoe; *der Floh*, the flea; *das Stroh*, the straw. But its power returns, when the word increases by declension, as *die Schuhe*, *die Stöbe*. I say by declension, not by composition: for the latter alters nothing in the pronunciation. For example, in *die Stroharbeit*, straw-work, composed of *Stroh* and *Arbeit*, and in *das Frühhobst*, fruit produced early in the season, of *Früh* and *Obst*, the *h* is void of sound.

Besides its quality as a letter, *h* is used as a sign, by which the length of vowels is indicated. It is

in this capacity chiefly joined to vowels (and sometimes to diphthongs) when a liquid (l, m, n, r,) follows: as *der Stahl*, the steel; *das Mahl*, the meal or banquet; *der Stuhl*, the stool or chair; *jahm*, tame; *die Bahn*, the path or career; *die Fahne*, the ensign or standard; *die Ehre*, the honour; *mehr*, more; *ihm*, to him; *ihr*, him; *ih*, you; *die Uhr*, the clock or watch; *fühlen*, to feel. In all these examples the *h* shews that the vowels are long.

When a *t* is in the same syllable, *h* is generally united with this letter, preserving its influence over the next vowel, either antecedent or subsequent, as in *thun*, to do; *der Muth*, the spirit, courage; *roth*, red; *die That*, the deed.

It may be asked, how it happened that such an extraordinary power was assigned to this letter? I do not know whether what I have to offer will be thought satisfactory in answer to that question. The lengthening *h* is observed to have been introduced into writing, since the 15th century, and to have gradually obtained authority, till in the 17th it was universally established. It most probably arose from the aspirate, or full breath; which, when inserted in the middle of a syllable, must naturally prolong it. Some thing like this may be perceived in the elocution of the Irish, and perhaps existed in the ancient Greek*. After the German language had begun to be cul-

* The *spiritus asper*, in Greek, is, for instance, expressed in the middle of a syllable, before or after *g*.

tivated, it seems to have been one of the successive improvements, to divest it of many of its rough, and guttural sounds. This appears in several instances; for example, words which had formerly been expressed with a strong guttural *ch*, were, by degrees, written without it; for *das Viech*, the cattle, was substituted *das Vieh*; *rauch*, rough, was succeeded by *rauh* &c. In the same manner the original sound of *h*, in the middle or at the end of a syllable, whatever it might be, whether a guttural, or a mere aspirate, seems to have been given up; and though it was preserved in writing, nothing of its nature remained, except what before was only adventitious, I mean, the attribute of making the adjoining vowel long. Even now we may trace this alteration in some words. We, for instance, pronounce *schmähen*, to chide, without giving any sound to the *h* between *ä* and *i*; but it is ascertained, that this word was formerly *schmäheten*, with the second *h* aspirated, being derived from *schmähen*; with which *die Schmach*, contumely, is connected.

Such was, in my opinion, the origin of the prolonging *h*. It was afterwards appropriated as a

* A striking illustration of the above is furnished by the adjective *hoch*, high; which, in its first or adverbial form (see adjectives) retains the *ch*, but in the other forms exchanges it for the simple aspirate, as *höher*, *hohes*, *höbe*; *der hohe*, &c. In compound words the *ch* remains, as in *der Hochmuth*, haughtiness, *der Hochverrath*, high treason, &c.

grammatical sign of length, without any regard to derivation. Yet it is not admitted as such throughout the language. The orthography of many words was too firmly established to receive it. Of this kind are the monosyllables, *das fisch*, already; *die Flur*, the fields, the plain; *die Esur*, the vestige; *der Plan*, the plan; and others, which, though pronounced long, reject the *h* as an index of their quantity. With these may be joined such as double their vowels, for the purpose of making them long; as *der Aal*, the eel; *das Meer*, the sea; *das Boot*, the boat, &c.

Some writers, who confounded innovation with improvement, and fancied the last must be a necessary consequence of the first, have relegated this *h* from the German language. But their authority has not been of sufficient weight to effect the change proposed.

J (consonant)
resembles the English *y*, in the beginning of a word, and before a vowel, as in *ye*, *year*, *yes*, *youth*, or the Italian *j*. It chiefly occurs at the commencement of words; as *ja*, yes; *jagen*, to chase; *jeder*, each; *das Joch*, the yoke.

R,

like the English. When a double sound is required, *r* is put before it, as in English. This can be necessary only after a vowel; as *der Rachen*, the neck behind; *das Becken*, the basin; *der Ruck*,

the stick; and even then, not always. But after a consonant it is a useless addition, and ought to be excluded, where general usage does not defend it. It is, accordingly, erroneous to write *das Mark*, for *das Mark*, the marrow; *das Werk*, for *das Werk*, the work. In proper names this, as other offences against orthography, must be suffered to remain.

We have to notice the alteration of some reformers, who have dismissed the *ck*, and substituted *f* simple, or occasionally *ff*, as their fancy directed.

L, M, N, P, are pronounced the same as in the English, and other languages.

Q is always joined with the vowel *u*; it then has the sound of *k*, in every language, the *u* being more or less heard. In English the pronunciation dwells long on the *u*, and produces a broad, or extended sound: this is also the case in Italian; but the Germans utter it short, which makes the sound of *qu* more slender than it is in those tongues. Yet the *u* is not entirely omitted, as is done in French.

R. This consonant is deprived of much of its force, and shrillness by the English mode of pronunciation: but it has the same full and entire in Ger-

man, where it is uttered with a strong vibration of the tongue. In English this sound is particularly slight at the end; whereas the Germans pronounce it very distinctly.

S

has two sounds, as in English,

the sharp, and

the soft.

The sharp sound is that which is heard in *sink, sit, salt, so*; and at the end, in *this, thus, yes, surplus, stress, bliss, ass, fuss*.

The soft sound resembles the English *s* in the words *bosom, wisdom, desire, present*; and at the end of *eyes, trees*; or the *z* in *zeal, zone, brazen, freeze, prize*. But the German *s* is not so close and compressed as the English *z*. It may be said to lie between the sharp *s* of the English, and their *z*.

The sharp sound takes place before a consonant, and at the end of words and syllables. The English pronounce the final *s*, for the most part, soft, as in *was, is, eyes, trees*; which is the reverse in German.

Before a vowel or diphthong, in the beginning of a word, or between two, in the middle, *s* is always soft, as, *die Seele, the soul; sagen, to say; dieser, this; die Rose, the rose*.

The sharp sound may be doubled, and is then expressed by *ss* in the middle, or *ß* at the end of a word or syllable; as *das Wasser (Was-ser), the*

water; lassen, to leave, or let; wissen, to know; beissen, to bite; der Haß, hatred; das Schloß, the castle, also the lock; häßlich, ugly; er ißt, (for isst) he eats.

The vowels and diphthongs before *ß*, as before any double consonant (see the next section) are generally short. But in many instances this double *f* is employed in the middle of words, with the power of the simple sharp *f*; where, namely, if *f* were put by itself, the sound would be soft. In those cases the vowels keep their natural quantity. For example, wir äßen, we did eat, pronounced like *äs-en*; die Größen, the great people, *l. grös-en*; die Müße, the leisure, *l. Mús-e*; fließen, to flow, *l. flies-en*; grüßen, to greet, *l. grüs-en*.

Some have considered this as so peculiar a modification of the letter *f*, that they have marked it with a distinct sign, *ß*, and a particular appellation, calling it *sz*. And such a distinction does not seem to be amiss, though the name may be deemed objectionable. Let us therefore write *ß*, wherever the letter *f* departs from the rule, in the manner described; for instance, aßen, Müße, fließen, grüßen.

S appears frequently in the beginning of a word, united with *ch*; and thus produces a strong hissing sound, equal to the English *sh* in *shade*, *she*, *show*. But even when single, that sound is given to it by many, if a *p* or *t* follow. They pronounce *sprechen*, to speak, as *shprechen*; der Spaß, the jest, as *shpass*; der Speer, the spear, *shpeer*; das Spiel, the play, or game, as *shpiel*; stehen, to stand, as *shtehen*.

der Stein, the stone, as *shtein*. They do not confine themselves to those two letters; but speak, in the same manner, in words beginning with *sk*, *sl*, *sm*, and *sc* (when *c* sounds like *k*). For instance, Das Skelet, the skeleton, as *shkelet*; der Slave, the Slavonian, as *Shlave*; der Smaragd, an emerald, as *Shmaragd*; der Sclave, the slave, as *Shclave*; der Scudo, an Italian coin, as *shcudo*. Likewise in the middle and at the end of words, between the letters *r* and *t*; as Der Durst, the thirst, similar to *Dursht*; die Bürste, the brush, as *Bürsht*; die Gerste, the barley, as *Gersht*; der Fürst, the prince, or sovereign, as *Fürst*; garstig, nasty, as *garstig*. To this latter, however, there are some exceptions, as the second person of certain verbs, du warst, thou wast, du wirst, thou becomest, du lehrst, thou teachest; and the ending of the superlative degree in *ste*, der erste, the first, der schwerste, the heaviest, &c. This way of pronouncing the *S* is chiefly prevalent among the inhabitants of Upper Saxony; but it has also been adopted by others, who have thought it a peculiarity of the High German. It is, in fact, nothing more than a provincial mode of speaking, in Upper Germany. There, that strong hissing sound is attached to the *S*, not only in the instances mentioned, but in many others; such as *whi*, *büht*, *Chrishtus*, *Versh*, *Marsh*, for *ist*, *bist*, *Christus*, *Marſ*. Hence it has transmigrated into the High German; but it should be more considered as an unwelcome intruder, than a desirable guest. It has nothing to recommend it to favour: for there is neither analogy nor euphony in thus pronouncing

that letter. The Lower Saxons, in their native idiom, are ignorant of this hissing sound: and it would, in my opinion, be for the advantage of the pronunciation of the High German, if their example were universally imitated, with respect to the case in question.

Before *i*, with a vowel following, it is sounded like *ts*, as *gratia*, *i. gratsia*, except when *s* precedes, as *questio*, where *t* keeps its own sound.

There is not the smallest difference between this letter and *F*: so that one of them might be removed from the Alphabet. We, therefore, see words of the same origin promiscuously spelt with one letter and the other; for instance, *voll*, full, and *füllen*, to fill; *vor*, before, and *für*, for.

Between two vowels, or diphthongs, it is by some pronounced like the English *W*, as in *der Trevel*, the crime; *der Stüver*, a German coin; *der Slave*, the slave.

Hence it has been migrated into the High German; but it should be more considered as resembling the *V* of the French, Italians, Spaniards and others, but not so exactly that of the English. For the *V* of the latter has in it a considerable mix-

ture of the *f**, of which the German *V* is destitute. The English *V* is emitted with a strong pressure of the upper teeth to the lower lip, but the *V* of the Germans comes forth with only a slight touch of the teeth to the lip. It is very different from the English *W*, which is uttered with the lips contracted or rounded, without touching the teeth, and sounds nearly like *oo*.

The sound of the German *W* seems to be between the *v* and *w* of the English. It requires particular attention; for the inhabitants of this country often fail in its pronounciation. Examples: *Das Wasser*, the water; not to be spoken as *Fasser*, nor as *Wasser*, English; but the German *W* to have a sort of middle sound between the English *V* and *W*,—thus, *der Weg*, the way; *die Welt*, the world; *die Wolle*, the wool; *das Wunder*, the wonder; *ewig*, eternal, &c.

W is mute in English before the letter *r*, as in *write*, *wrap*, *wrong*; and in some other instances, as *answer*, *sword*, *wholesome*; but it is never so in German.

W is also mute in English before the letter *t*, as in *write*, *wrap*, *wrong*; and in some other instances, as *answer*, *sword*, *wholesome*; but it is never so in German.

W is also mute in English before the letter *t*, as in *write*, *wrap*, *wrong*; and in some other instances, as *answer*, *sword*, *wholesome*; but it is never so in German.

* Hence it is by a secret and accurate Germanian, Lindsay Murray, described as the flat *f*, and as bearing the same relation to this letter, as *b* to *p*, *c* to *t*, *h* to *k*, and *x* to *s*.

is without any exception pronounced as *ts*; for instance, *die Zahl*, the number; *zu*, to; *zehn*, ten: like *tsal*, *tsu*, *tschen*. Consequently it resembles the *z* of the Italians.

ẞ is prefixed to *ß* to double its sound; therefore *ß* is equivalent to *zz*, which the Italians make use of. This consideration will determine, when *ß* ought to be employed. It is never required after a consonant, because there can be no need of a double letter: but it may, in most cases, be admitted after a vowel. It is proper to write *feszen*, to put; but it would be less accurate to insert a *t* in *das Herz*, the heart, *Hertz*, because in the latter a consonant precedes the *z*. The occasions, where *z* and *ß* should be used, have not always been justly distinguished; and some degree of confusion has thence arisen, respecting this letter. But the matter is very plain, if considered in the point of view, which we have above stated. Some, in the mean time, have by these irregularities been provoked, entirely to deprive the *ß* of its function; and where the double sound of *z* is unavoidably to be expressed, they write *zz*. But it will appear, from what has been said, that they have been too hasty in their proceedings.

Ch.

The English language furnishes nothing, with which the sound of this character may be com-

pared. I can, therefore, not hope, in describing it, to be understood by those, who are barely acquainted with their native tongue.—This sound is twofold

guttural, and
palatick.

The guttural is entirely formed in the throat, or larynx, and answers, in a great degree, to the Welch *c* or *ch*, the Scotch *ch*, in *Loch*, and the Irish *gh*, in *Lough*; also to the Spanish *x*, in *dejar*, and the *j* of the same, in *lejos*.

The German *Ch*, however, is not so deeply guttural, as the examples adduced. It takes place, when joined to the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au*. Examples: *ach*, alas! *das Dach*, the roof; *nach*, yet; *das Joch*, the yoke; *hoch*, high; *das Buch*, the book; *der Geruch*, the smell; *der Strauch*, the shrub; *der Rauch*, the smoke.

The palatick sound arises from a strong appulse of the breath against the palate, and is assigned to *Ch*, when in conjunction with *e*, *i*, *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*. Examples: *der Ficht*, the pike; *schlecht*, bad; *das Licht*, the light; *der Dichter*, the poet; *die Dächer*, the roofs; *die Löcher*, the holes, from the singular, *das Loch*; *die Bücher*, the books; *die Sträucher*, the shrubs.

Between *i* and *e* it is scarcely audible; for instance, *dem herrlichen*, to the magnificent, is almost spoken as *herrli-en*; *dem trefflichen*, to the excellent, as *treffli-en*.

In some words, at the beginning, it sounds like *k*; as in *Christus*, Christ; *der Christ*, the Christian;

christlich, christian, adjective; *die Charwoche*, passion-week; *das Chor*, the quire; *Christoph*, Christopher; *die Chronick*, the chronicle; *die Chronologie*, chronology; *der Churfürst*, a Prince Elector of the German empire: and in old writings it is often put for *k*. Foreigners, who are not acquainted with the true purport of this character, or unable to pronounce it, in the manner before mentioned, generally attribute to it the sound of *k*. This sound it has always when an *s* follows. For

Chs

is precisely the same as *ks* or *cks*. We perceive this, for instance, in the words, *das Wachs*, the wax; *der Dachs*, the badger; *der Fuchs*, the fox; *das Flachs*, the flax; *die Büchse*, the box; *die Achsel*, the shoulder; which are pronounced like *Waks*, *Daks*, *Fuks*, *Flaks*, *Bückse*.

But it is to be understood, that the three letters must constitute one character, and consequently all belong to the same syllable. For they may by chance meet, and have the same appearance; but, being without those requisites, their pronunciation differs, as in *wachsam*, vigilant; *nachsehen*, to connive at: where the *s* does not appertain to the same syllable in which the *ch* stands. For these words are read *wach-sam*, *nach-sehen*.

When an elision of any vowel has happened between *ch* and *s*, these characters must likewise be spoken separately: for example, *des Buchs*, for *Budies*, gen. case, from *das Buch*, the book; *des*

*Loch*s, for *Loche*s, from *das Loch*, the hole; *er sprach*s, for *sprach es*, he said it: which are not to be pronounced *bucks*, *locks*, *spraks*, but with the guttural, and *s* following, *Buch-s*, *Loch-s*, *sprach-s*.

Es

like the English *sh*, in *she*, *shine*, *dish*, *dashing*. The vowels before this character are often pronounced long, as in *sie wüschen*, they washed; *sie drüschen*, they threshed; but more frequently short, as in *wäschen*, to wash; *drüschen*, to thresh; *die Tische*, the tables; *die Muschel*, the shell, or muscle.

Of see f.

On and fn

are not to be spoken through the nose, as foreigners are apt to do; but in such a manner as if a very slight *e* were inserted before the *n*; for instance, *die Gnade*, the mercy, as if *Génade*; *der Knabe*, the boy, as if *Kénabe*. This *e* will, at first, be a great assistance in the acquirement of those letters, and may afterwards easily be laid aside.

Ph

is equivalent to *F*, as *der Philosoph*, the philosopher, *l. Filoso*f.

The pronunciation of

Pf, Pf and Wr,

may be facilitated by an insertion of a very short *e*, in the same way, as was shewn in *gn* and *fn*: for example, *der Pfad*, the path; *das Pferd*, the horse; *der Psalm*, the psalm; *Wrisberg*, a proper name, similar to *Pesad*, *Peserd*, *Pesalm*, *Werisberg*.

Of **Th** and **Te**, see **H** and **Z**.

SECT. III.

ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF WORDS, OR THE ACCENT.

AFTER speaking of the pronunciation of the letters singly, the next thing to be considered is the relation they bear to each other, and the force with which they are uttered, when put together in syllables and words.

This was by the Greeks and Romans, in a great measure, regulated by the inherent nature of the letters and syllables themselves, or by what is called *quantity*. In the modern languages of Europe, it chiefly depends upon *the accent*.

The accent is the stress which is laid upon any particular syllable in pronouncing it: for instance, in *iron*, *fulness*, *haggard*, it dwells on the first syllable; in *upon*, *relent*, *behind*, it rests on the last.

Every language seems to have a favourite place for its accent. The English prefers, in general, the prior syllables, the French the last, and the Italian likes to delay on the middle.

As to the German tongue, it has been asserted by a Grammarian of great eminence, that the accent is always placed on a radical syllable: and that hence it is known, which was the original syllable, and which are adventitious. Allowing this notion to be fully confirmed by a strict enquiry into the composition and origin of German words, though it seems to be liable to numerous exceptions and limitations, it is not such as would be suited to our purpose. It is too abstruse and far-fetched for the incipient scholar, with whom we are in this work concerned, however ingenious and satisfactory it may appear in the eyes of the critical enquirer. Besides, it cannot be maintained, that this is the only point of view, in which the subject may be contemplated. We will, therefore, pursue that method, which seems to be most fit for the present capacity of the student, and if he should, hereafter, observe a coincidence between the way pointed out by the learned writer alluded to, and that which we follow, no disadvantage can arise from a comparison and combination of the two systems.

Syllables are either accented or not. The accent itself is of two kinds. 1. The complete or full accent, which is assumed by the principal sound in a word; 2. Or, the half, or demi-accent, which

Mr. Adeling

gives to the syllable, to which it is assigned, a more distinct and forcible pronounciation, than those possess, which are devoid of all accent; though it is inferior in energy to those, to which the full accent is applied. For example, in *méntal*, *mér*cy, *há*ller, the first syllable bears the full accent, but the last has none: in *meekness*, *softness*, *ointment*, the first has likewise the full accent, but the last is pronounced more distinctly than in the former words. This would, according to the German, be called the *demi-accent*.

We shall first treat of

THE FULL ACCENT (').

I. In *monosyllables* it does not exist, if considered separately. But when two or three monosyllables meet together, one of them, which by its meaning is distinguished above the others, may be said to have the main or full accent. For instance, *der Mann, die Frau, das Kind*: here the article and substantive constitute, as it were, one word; and the accent is affixed to the latter, being superior in signification. If the stress were laid on *der, die, das*, it would be understood, that the attention was to be chiefly directed to those words, consequently that they were used pointedly, or as demonstratives. We see this farther exemplified in the following: *Er ist hier, Sie sind da, Er hat das*: each of which phrases may be looked upon as a word of three syllables, and may therefore receive the full accent: but where it is to be placed, depends upon

the intention of the person speaking. For, *Er ist hier* may be accentuated in three diverse manners, at the option of the speaker. If the pronoun is the principal object of attention, it will be thus: *Er ist hier*, he is here: if the verb, thus, *Er ist hier*, he is here: if the place, it will be, *Er ist hier*, he is here. It is the same with the other instances: as *Sie sind da*, they are there; *Sie sind da*, they are there; *Sie sind da*, they are there. So *Er hat das*, he has that; *Er hat das*, he has that; *Er hat das*, he has that.

II. Words of two syllables have the full accent on the first: as *das Fenster*, the window; *die Felder*, the fields; *die Gasse*, the street; *die Stube*, the chamber.

Except:

1. Words derived from the Greek or Latin, which have suffered a change in their termination, to make them German. Such are *Virgil*, *Homer*, *Horaz*, *Montan*, &c. proper names. Likewise, *die Natur*, nature; *die Person*, the person; *der Poet*, the poet; *der Doctent*, the teacher; *der Student*, the student; *der Canal*, the canal, or channel; *das Organ*, the organ (of speech, hearing, &c.); *die Cultur*, civilization; *der Barbar*, the barbarian; *der Baron*, the baron, &c. from *Virgilius*, *Homerus*, *Horatius*, *Montanus*, *natura*, *persona*, *poeta*, *docens*, *studens*, *canalis*, *organon*, *cultura*, *barbarus*, *baro*. These words have the accent on the last; *Pindar*, from *Pindarus*, has it on the first. The word *Pastor*, denoting a parish

priest, is commonly pronounced with the accent on the last, though it does not come under the description of the above.

2. Some other words, not of German growth, have the accent on the last; *der Kapäun*, the capon; *der Soldat*, the soldier; *der Altan*, the balcony; *der Bombast*, bombast; *der Husar*, the hussar; *das Stadet*, the railing or palisadoes; *der Morast*, the morass; *der Krafet*, the quarrel; *der Lackey*, the waiter, or footman; *der Spion*, the spy; *der Rubin*, the ruby.

3. Certain adverbs, and conjunctions, which are properly compounds, receive the accent on the last. They are such as begin with *all*, *als*: *allein*, *alhier*, *allda*, *alsbald*, *alsdenn*, *an*: *anbey*, *anheim*, *anher*, *anjest*, *annoch*, *bey*, *bis*: *beyfelt*, *bisher*.

da: *dafern*, *dahem*, *daselbst*, *darauf*, *daraus*, *dabey*, *davor*, *daran*.

der, *die*: *derEinst*, *diemeil*.

ein, *emp*, *ent*: *einher*, *empör*, *entweg*.

fort: *fortan*, *forthin*.

für: *fürwahr*.

gleich: *gleichwie*.

hier: *hierher*, *hierhin*.

hin: *hinab*, *hinan*, *hinauf*, *hinaus*, *hindurch*, *hinein*, *hinfert*, *hinweg*.

in: *indem*.

je: *jedoch*, however (but *jemaß*, ever; and the pronoun *jemand*, any one, or some one, have the accent on the first.)

mit: *mithin*.

nach, *nun*: *nachdem*, *nachher*; *mannichr.* (sometimes pronounced *männichr.*)
ob: *obgleich*, *obschön*, *obwohl*.
um: *umher*, *umhin*, *umsonst*. Add *fürzum*, *wardum*.
vor: *voran*, *vorbey*, *vorher*, *vorhin*.
zu: *zuerst*, *zuletzt*, *zunächst*, *zuvor*.

It sometimes happens, that the accent varies in similar words, according to the view of the person speaking; for instance, in those beginning with *da*, *hier*, *wo*: as, *daher*, *hieraus*, *wdraus*. The accent being laid on the first makes them strong demonstratives.

4. As the prefixes, *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*, are, as will be mentioned in its proper place, not susceptible of any accent; it is clear that in words of two syllables, beginning with such a prefix, the accent must be on the last, as, *beträf*, *empfang*, *entsprach*, *erschraef*, *geföbt*, *verzög*, *geräth*.

A caution is necessary in the application of this rule, respecting *be* and *ge*. In some words they are not prefixes, but original syllables, and consequently cannot be deprived of their accent. Of this kind are, *beben*, to tremble; *beten*, to pray; *der Besem*, the broom; *geben*, to give; *gegen*, against; *gehen*, to go.

III. Words of three syllables have the full accent on the first.

Except:

1. The following: *balzamisch*, *lebendig*, *parthien*, *stolzten*.

2. Words from the Greek and Latin, whose termination is changed, as: *das Axiom*, the axiom;

die Action, the action; die Million, the million; der Elephant, the elephant; der Patriot, the patriot; der General, the general; Epicur, a proper name, &c. from *actio*, *millio*, *elephantus*, *patriota*, *generalis*, *Epicurus*.

3. Some proper names, as Ulysses, Achilles, &c.

4. Certain compounds, that have no accent at all on the first syllable. They are such as begin with

all: allwissend, allgemein, allbereit, allemahl, allenfalls, allerdings, allerley, allererst, allerhand, allerwärts, allesamt, allezeit, allernächst, Allweisheit, allmächtig, allmählig, alltägig, allzuviel, allzufehr.

aus: ausdrücklich, ausnehmend, ausdrücklich.

bey, bis: beyfammen, bisweilen.

da: dahinter, darunter, darüber, dawider, dazwischen.

der, des: derhalben, dermahlen, dermahlenst, deshalben, desgleichen.

durch: In compound verbs inseparable, it never takes the accent, as durchgehen, durchlaufen, durchreisen, durchstreichen; but when separable, it has the full accent, as durchreisen, durchlaufen. See the compound verbs.

ehe, ein, einst: ehedem, einander, einstmalen, einstweilen.

je, im, in: jedennoch, ingleichen, (also, ingleichen) unmittelbar, indessen, inzwischen.

miss: in mißrathen, mißlingen, two verbs neuter; otherwise this prefix always bears an accent in composition.

über: überaus, überet, überein, überhand, überhin.

vor: vornehmlich, vornehm, vorzüglich, and

other words ending in *lich*. Else it takes an accent in composition, as in *Vorſehung*, *Vorſicht*, *Abſicht*, *Vergängig*, *inzuſehen*, *zuſehen*. In other compounds it has the demi accent.

Note. It has been remarked before, that from a particular emphasis, at the discretion of the speaker, syllables may receive an accent, which are commonly destitute of it.

5. Certain compounds, with the demi accent on the first. They are such as begin

a. With the syllable of a noun (or verb?) as: *ſchön*, *großmüthig*, *hödmüthig*, *langweilig*, *leicht*, *denkend*, from *ſchön*, *groß*, *hoch*, *lang*, *leicht*, adjectives; *nothwendig*, from *die Noth*, a substantive; *käuflich*, *merkwürdig*, from *der Kauf*, *das Werk*, substantives; or *haben*, *merken*, verbs.

b. With the particles, *ab*, *un*, *auf*, *aus*, *bey*, *der*, *ein*, *fort*, *für*, *her*, *hin*, *los*, *mit*, *nach*, *ob*, *vor*, *zu*, as *abwendig*, *abspenſig*, *aufkommen*, *aufklären*, *aussagen*, *beſuchen*, *darbiethen*, *Darleihe*, *eingeben*, *entkommen*, *hingehen*, *loſſprechen*, *mitnehmen*, *nachſehen*, *nachſichtig*, *obliegen*, *obwaſtend*, *vorſtellen*, *verſichtig*, *zuwenden*, *zuſchlinglich*.

6. The prefixes *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*, as already mentioned, never admit of an accent, as *befehlen*, *empfinden*, *entfallen*, *erbrechen*, *gehören*, *verderben*, *zerreißen*.

IV. Words of four syllables, and more, may be bisected: this means, they may be divided into halves, and each half have its own accent, as a word by itself, according to the foregoing rules.

If they are compounds, the section is to be made where the components are joined, as in *Verf-würdigkeit*, *Noth-wendigkeit*; *Erdbeer-bäume*, *Gastnachts-spiele*; *Unaus-töschlichkeit*, *Unaus-sprechlichkeit*.

If they are not compounds, the section should be equal in words of four syllables, as in *Gesell-schaften*, *offen-bären*, *tadel-haſte*, *Alter-thümer*, *König-reichen*, *väter-lichen*, *Winter-liche*, *inſon-derheit*. In words of five syllables it must naturally be unequal, as in *veränder-lichen*, *Verthei-digungen*. And thus it would be in words of six or seven syllables.

In words of four syllables the partition does not take place, when the two first are totally void of accent, as in *Agamemnon*; the main accent is then settled upon the third, or the last syllable but one; nor, when the first and third syllable are unaccented: for in this case the main accent rests on the second, as in *Metan-thius*, *Teſemachus*, *verführer-iſch*. In other instances it seems necessary to have recourse to a division, in order to arrive at the true sound of long words. If it be insisted, that in words of four, or even more, syllables, there is but one main accent, I do not mean to provoke a contest by dissenting from this opinion: as my object in laying down that theory, only was, to point out a way, by which the pronunciation might be facilitated.

We now proceed to

THE DEMI-ACCENT (').

It has been explained before, what is meant by the above term: namely, a syllable, which, though it has not the main sound in a word, is yet pro-

nounced more forcibly and distinctly than others, which are said to be totally void of accent. We have exemplified it by some English words, such as *rùdimént, caùstíck, fùlnéss, ídlenéss, outlét*; to the last syllables of which we assign the demi-accent, because they are very distinctly uttered in pronunciation: whereas in the following, *heàry, tēporàry, mòral, càndour, tēple*, the last syllables are slurred over, so as not to produce a distinct sound of the vowels therein contained.

The demi-accent, in German, is peculiar to

1. All monosyllables, whether terminating with a vowel, or consonant. It will be recollected from the foregoing, that when two or three monosyllables meet, one of them may assume the full accent.

2. The vowels at the end of words, as *Minerová, Sophá, álso, dèro, jèso, Ubu*. Except *e*, which is unaccented, as *Freude, lobe*.

3. The syllables *ast, al, ar, ei, ey, eit, ing, inn, iss, um, ung*, being terminations of words, as, *Gesellschaft, tadelhaft, Schicksal, offenbar, Tandelen, Kaiserin, Freiheit, Jüngling, Königin, Finsternis, Fürstenthum, Handlung*.

4. The same syllables, not being terminations, as *Schicksale, Freheiten*; unless from their situation, the full accent fixes on them, as in *Gesellschaften, Tandelenen*. See the words of four syllables.

5. Some other syllables, either as terminations, or in the middle, as *Heiland, Heimath, Bastard, Bastarde, Dheim, Dheime, Herold, Herolde, Ahorn, Geriden*.

6. The prior syllables of certain compounds, alluded to before, as *häufällig*, *merkwürdig*, *lechtsinnig*, &c.

VOID OF ACCENT, are

1. The prefixes *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*.— We will not trouble the reader with examples, as they have been adduced in a former page. But it may not be amiss to repeat, that the prefixes *be* and *ge* ought not to be confounded with the original syllables of the following words, *Besem*, *beben*, *beten*, *geben*, *gegen*, *gehen*, *Geridon*.

2. The syllables *e*, *el*, *ell*, *en*, *end*, *er*, *ern*, *et*, *ig*, *ich*, *icht*, being terminations, as in *Farbe*, *Matthiel*, *haben*, *Jugend*, *Vater*, *Febern*, *lobet*, *zwanzig*, *glücklich*, *fleischicht*.

3. The same syllables, in the middle (unless they become liable to the full accent) as *rathschäft*, *lobete*, *fleischichte*.

Before we quit this subject, it will be necessary to say a few words concerning the vowels and diphthongs.

The sound of the vowels and diphthongs

is either broad and long, or elevated and short. *A*, for instance, is broad or long in the English words *all*, *call*, *fall*; and elevated or short in *father*, *fancy*, *glass*. The *i* is long in *field*, and short in *fill*, *fin*. The *o* long in *note*, *bone*, *over*, and short in *lot*, *trot*, *got*. This difference is also observable in diphthongs, as in the words *receive*,

seize, in which *ei* is long, and in *forfeit*, where it is short. Having explained the meaning of a long or broad sound, and of a short or elevated one, we will proceed to state, when the vowels (and diphthongs) in German are long, and when they are short.

The vowels have a *long* or *broad* sound

I. At the end of a syllable, as in *haben*, *beten*, *loben*, *Jugend*. The *e* at the end of words is excepted.

II. When a sign of length is added. This may be either a reduplication of the same vowel, as in *Naal*, *Meer*, *Boot*; or an adjection of another vowel, as *e* to *i*, in *spiel*, *spielt*; or the letter *h* (see the 2d sect.) in *haben*, *Fahne*, *sehr*, *ihm*, *ihr*; &c. However, *vierzig* and *wahrlich* are commonly pronounced *währlich* and *vörrzig*.

III. In monosyllables, as in trāt, wēr, schōn, nūn.

Except as it is not a true subject and object

2011 The following, ab, an, bis, daß, des, es, glé,
groß, hat, hin, im, in, man, mit, ob, Schmid, um,
von, was, weg, zum. 2A. noisiz amtes leinib

2. And when two consonants follow after the vowel, as in hard, gold, wolf, Schuld.

Note. Before *ß* the vowels are frequently long as *Fuß*, *Größ*, *Luß*. Before *sch* they are long in some words, as in *Schmach*, *hōch*, *Büch*; and short in others, as in *Rache*, *Koch*, *sprechen*, *Küche*. And thus before *sch*, long in some, as *drāschen*, *wūschen* but short in many others, as *wāschen*, *drēschen* &c.

IV. In the last syllable of foreign words, where the main accent is at the end, as *Natin*, *Organ*, *Homér*, *Horáz*, &c. See above.

The vowels have a *short* or *elevated* sound

Before two consonants, as *alt*, *Gästel*, *Este*, *oft*, *Huld*, *Händ*, *Hände*, *Glänz*, *glänzen*, *völlig*.

Except,

1. The following words, *der schönste*, *gehrst*.

2. When a sign of length accompanies the vowels.

SECT. IV.

ON PROSODY.

It is not our intention, under this head, to give an account of the German metres, or to enter fully into the mechanical part of versification: we introduce the subject only as far as it is connected with the former sections. We confine ourselves, therefore, to the pronunciation of the words, in metrical composition. As for the composition itself, this is not the proper place to speak of it.

Every metre consists of a certain number of syllables, and these either long or short. It is the object of the present section, to shew, which are to be used as long, and which as short. We have first of all to notice a mistake, which has caused a great deal of confusion in this branch of the grammar. Namely, the length or brevity of syllables, or in one word, the quantity, has been confounded with the broad and elevated sounds of the vowels and

diphthongs, of which we have been treating just now. That, however, is a great error: for the quantity in German does not in the least depend on the sound of the vowels, but on the accent alone. From this we may derive the following rules:

1. A syllable is long in prosody, which has the full accent.

2. A syllable is common, that is to say, may be used either as long or short, which has the demi-accent.

3. A syllable is short which is devoid of accent. —From this rule the poets deviate sometimes, and use an unaccented syllable long. *Ge*, for instance, is liable to this exception: in Voss's translation of Homer's *Odyssee*, 12th book, v. 124, it is used long in *ängestrenge*, v. 166, in *gelingte*.

I will now, for the purpose of giving the reader an opportunity to apply and compare those rules, put down a few verses, with the quantities marked.

Freund! vërsaumẽ nicht zü lebẽ,
 Deim diẽ Jähre fliehn,
 Und es würd dër Gäst dër Nebẽ
 Uns nicht längẽ blühn.

Läch dër Nertz' und ihrẽ Ränfẽ:
 Tød und Kränkheit laürt,
 Weim män bei dẽm Gröschgẽtränkẽ
 Seinë Zeit vërräurt.

ist gut: Mößer Wein, der Sörgenbrücher, noch
 Schaff' gesundes Blut. Now, I have now
 Trinkt aus dem beträngten Becher quantity
 Glück und frohen Muth! on the sound of
 So! noch eins—Siehst du Läden rules:
 Und die Freude nimm! 1. A syllable is
 Bald wirst du auch Amörn sehen, full accented
 Und auf Rosen rühn. 2. A syllable is con-
 used either as long or short, which has the demi-

Kleist.

3. A syllable is short which is devoid of accent.
 —From this rule the poets deviate sometimes, and
 use an unaccented syllable long. (See, for instance,
 is liable to this exception: in Voss's translation
 of Homer's *Odyssey*, 12th book, v. 124, it is used
 long in *unvergleichlich*, v. 166, in *Ähnliche*.)

I will now, for the purpose of giving the res-
 der an opportunity to apply and compare these
 rules, put down a few verses, with the quantities
 marked.

Ständ' ich nicht an, so wär' ich schon
 Fern im Lande hien
 Und ich wär' ein
 Und ich wär' ein
 Und ich wär' ein
 Und ich wär' ein
 Und ich wär' ein
 Und ich wär' ein

CHAP. II.

ON THE NOUN.

CONTAINING

1. The Article.
2. The Gender.
3. The Declension of Substantives.
4. The Declension of Adjectives.
5. The Comparison of Adjectives.
6. The Numerals.

SECT. I.

THE ARTICLE.

THERE are two articles in German, as in English, the *definite*, which answers to the English *the*, (the man;) and the *indefinite*, answering to *a* or *an*, (a house, an oak.)

The English articles are not declined; but the German are varied in their terminations by four cases, the *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, and *accusative*.

The definite article has two numbers, the singular and the plural. The indefinite can from its nature only have the singular number.

In the singular, both the articles have distinct terminations for the three genders of grammar, the masculine, feminine, and neuter. In the plural of the definite, one termination serves for all.

DEFINITE ARTICLE.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nominative.	Der,	Die,	Das,	the (man).
Genitive.	Des,	Der,	Des,	of the.
Dative.	Dem,	Der,	Dem,	to the.
Accusative.	Den,	Die,	Das,	the.

Plural.

Nom.	Die,	} for all Genders.
Gen.	Der,	
Dat.	Den,	
Acc.	Die,	

INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	Ein,	Eine,	Ein,	a (man.)
Gen.	Eines,	Einer,	Eines,	of a.
Dat.	Einem,	Einer,	Einem,	to a.
Acc.	Einem,	Eine,	Ein,	a.

No Plural.

SECT. II.

THE GENDER.

The Nouns Substantive are distinguished by three genders, the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter: each of which, as has been stated in the foregoing section, has in the singular number its appropriate article. We can, therefore, not join a substantive with an article; nor, as afterward will appear, with an adjective or a pronoun, unless we are certain of its gender. It serves besides, as will be seen, as a criterion for the declension. For these reasons it seems to be proper, previously to discuss that subject, before we speak of the substantives, the adjectives, and pronouns.

It is an unfortunate circumstance, that this part of Grammar, which is so important and necessary for correctness of speech, should be so little encompassed by general rules, as it actually is in the German language. The rules are very few, while the exceptions and irregularities are exceedingly numerous.

The student will therefore not derive great satisfaction from what we have to say; nor find his labour much diminished by the rules exhibited. It will remain for him to learn the gender of most words by use and practice, and to content himself with that little assistance which is here afforded. Hence we recommend to him, to be particularly attentive to the gender of every word he meets with: and to consider it as an inseparable qua-

lity, the knowledge of which is indispensibly necessary.

I. *Of the Masculine Gender, are,*

1. All male names and appellations (as *der Mann*, the man; *der Vater*, the father; *der König*, the king, &c.) Except diminutives, which are neuters; and some compound words, in which the last component is of a different gender*, as *das Mannsperſon*, and *das Mannsbild*, both denoting a man; from *die Perſon*, the person, feminine, and *das Bild*, the figure, neuter.

2. The name of God; the names of angels and demons, (as *der Engel*, the angel; *der Teufel*, the devil, &c.) of winds, (as *der Nordwind*, the north wind; *der Südwind*, the south wind, &c.); of seasons, (as *der Frühling*, the spring; *der Sommer*, the summer, &c.); of months and days, (as *der Januar*, January; *der Februar*, February; *der Montag*, Monday; *der Dienstag*, Tuesday, &c.) — *Das Jahr*, the year, is neuter, and *die Jahreszeit*, the season, feminine.

3. The names of stones, as *der Rieſ*, the flint; *der Diamant*, or *Demant*, the diamond; *der Smaragd*, the emerald; *der Onyx*, the onyx; *der Saphir*, the sapphire; *der Rubin*, the ruby, &c.

4. All words ending in *ing* and *ling*; except *das Ding*, the thing; *das Meſſing*, brass, (by some called *der Meſſing*.)

* See general remarks on the gender.

5. Most ending in *er*. Except, among others, the following: *Das Messer*, the knife; *das Ruder*, the oar; *die Folter*, the rack, an engine of torture; *die Halfter*, a cord or strap to tie up horses; *die Feder*, the pen; *die Kelter*, the winepress; *die Klammer*, a hook for holding things together; *die Klapper*, the rattle, an instrument; *die Leiter*, the ladder; *die Schleuder*, a sling to throw with; *die Ziter*, the guitar, &c.

6. Many words ending in *en*. Exceptions numerous. *a*. The following: *Die Fassen*, lent, fem. *das Almosen*, alms; *das Becken*, the basin; *das Eisen*, the iron; *das Kissen*, the cushion; *das Leben*, the life; *das Wappen*, the coat of arms; *das Zeichen*, the sign. *b*. The infinitive moods, which have been turned into substantives. They are of the neuter gender, as *Das Gehen*, the going, or walking; *das Reiten*, the riding; *das Essen*, the eating, or the meal; *das Trinken*, the drinking, or drink, &c. To which may be added, *das Erdbeben*, the earthquake; *das Gebrechen*, the falling; *das Leiden*, the suffering; *das Vergnügen*, the pleasure; *das Vermögen*, the power of doing a thing, also the estate or fortune; *das Verhalten*, the demeanour, conduct; *das Vorhaben*, the purpose, intention; *das Wesen*, the being. For these are, properly speaking, the infinitives of certain verbs. *c*. The diminutives in *en* are neuters.

7. Some words beginning with the prefix *ge*, and being derivatives, as *Der Gedanke*, der *Gefahrte*, der *Gehülfe*, der *Gebrauch*, der *Gehalt*, der *Gehorsam*, der *Gelass*, der *Genosse*, der *Genuß*, der *Gerach*, der

Geschmack, der Gestank, der Geselle, der Gewinn, der Gewinnst, der Gespann, der Gespieler, der Gebrauch, der Gesang, der Gevatter.

II. Of the Feminine Gender, are,

1. All female names and appellations (as die Frau, the woman; die Mutter, the mother; die Fürstin, the princess, &c.) Except *a*. The diminutives, which are neuters. *b*. Das Weib, the woman, or wife; das Mensch, an expression of contempt, denoting a low, common woman. And these compounds, Das Weibsbild, the female; das Frauenzimmer, a polite term for a female, a lady; das Weibestück, a contemptible expression for a woman.

2. The names of fruits and flowers, as Die Birne, the pear; die Pflaume, the plum; die Rose, the rose; die Nelke, the pink. Except *a*. Der Apfel, the apple. *b*. Foreign names of flowers, which keep their original gender, as das Geranium, the geranium, &c.

3. The names of rivers, as Die Elbe, the Elbe; die Weser, the Weser; die Donau, the Danube; die Themse, the Thames; die Tiber, the Tiber, &c. Except the following: Der Dnjeper, der Dniester, der Don, der Douro, der Ebro, der Euphrat, der Inn, der Lech, der Main, der Minho, der Neckar, der Nil, der Po, der Rhein, der Tejo.

4. All words, ending in *ey* (or *ei*) *heit*, *keit*, *schaft*, and *ung*, as Die Rasery, madness; die Freiheit, freedom, liberty; die Lustbarkeit, the enter-

tainment; party of pleasure; die Gesellschaft, company, society; die Zeitung, the tiding. Except, Der Bren, the pap, pulp; das Ey, the egg; das Geschrey, the clamour; der Schaft, the wooden part of a spear, also the stock of a gun; der Sprung, the leap.

5. All substantives, ending in *e*, which are derived from adjectives, as Die Länge, the length, from lang, long; die Größe, the magnitude, size, from groß, great; die Güte, the goodness, from gut, good; die Schwere, the weight, heaviness, from schwer, heavy, &c.

6. Many other words in *e*; as Die Scheere, the scissars; die Raße, the cat; die Krähe, the crow; die Mütze, the cap; die Weste, the waistcoat, &c.

7. Words in *ucht*, as Die Bucht, the bay; die Flucht, the flight; die Frucht, the fruit; die Eucht, unreasonable zeal, or passion, mania; die Zucht, discipline, the breeding of cattle.

8. Words in *muth*, as Die Armuth, poverty; die Großmuth, magnanimity; though some express them by different genders, as das Armuth, der Großmuth. Der Hochmuth, haughtiness, is, I believe, always used as a masculine.

9. Several in *niss*, as Die Bedrängniß, distress or embarrassment; die Begegniß; die Besorgniß apprehension; die Betrübniß, sorrow; die Empfangniß; die Erkenntniß, the knowledge; die Erlaubniß, the permission; die Ersparniß; die Fahrniß; die Fäulniß; die Kenntniß, knowledge; die Kummerniß; die Finsterniß, the darkness; die Verdammniß; die Wüdniss, the wilderness. But as

many, or more, of this termination are neuters; and in some the gender is ambiguous.

10. Some words, beginning with *ge*, being, for the most part, derivatives; as *Die Gebühr*, the fee; *die Geburt*, the birth; *die Geduld*, patience; *die Gefahr*, the danger; *die Gefährde*; *die Genüge*; *die Geschichte*, the history; *die Geschwulst*; *die Gestalt*, the form or shape; *die Gewalt*, the force or power; *die Gewähr*, *die Gebreite*, &c.

III. Of the Neuter Gender, are,

1. The letters of the alphabet, as *Das A*; *das B*. &c.

2. The names of metals, as *Das Gold*, the gold; *das Silber*, the silver; *das Kupfer*, the copper, &c. Except, *der Stahl*, the steel; *der Zinnbeck*, the pinchbeck.

3. The names of countries and places, when the gender is discernible from the word joined with them, which may be the article, the adjective, or the pronoun; as *Das aufgeklärte Europa*, enlightened Europe; *das gesittete Deutschland*, refined Germany; *das reiche London*, the rich town of London, &c. Except, *die Schweiz*, Switzerland; *die Pfalz*, the palatinate; and those which end in *ey*, as *die Türkei*, Turkey, &c.

4. Words ending in *thum*; as *Das Fürstenthum*, the principality; *das Christenthum*, christianity, &c. Except, *der Irrthum*, the error; *der Reichthum*, the riches.

5. The infinitive moods, which have acquired the nature of substantives by the article prefixed,

as *Das Gehen*, *das Reiten*, *das Essen*, the going, the riding, the eating, &c.

6. All parts of speech, not being substantives, when accompanied with the article, to point them out, are assigned to this gender; as *Das Ich*, the (word) I; *das Und*, the (word) and; *das Grün*, the (colour) green; *das Schwarz*, the (colour) black; *das Rund der Erde*, the round (*i. e.* the globe) of the earth; *das Lebewohl*, the farewell.

7. All diminutives are neuters: to which belongs *das Mädchen*, the girl, or maid; being the diminutive of *die Magd*, the maid. (How the diminutives are formed, will be shewn in the second declension.)

8. Several words beginning with *ge*, as *Das Gehalt*, *das Gebet*, *das Gebiet*, *das Gebot*, *das Gebirg*, *das Gebiß*, *das Gedicht*, *das Gefäß*, *das Gefühl*, *das Geheiß*, *das Gehör*, *das Gerübe*, *das Gemach*, *das Gemälde*, *das Gemurmel*, *das Gemüth*, *das Geschöpf*, *das Geschöß*, *das Gespräch*, *das Gesuch*, &c.

9. Several ending in *niss*; as *Das Aergermiß*, *das Befugniß*, *das Begräbniß*, *das Verhältniß*, *das Bekenntniß*, *das Bildniß*, *das Bündniß*, *das Einverständniß*, *das Erforderniß*, *das Geheimniß*, *das Gedächtniß*, *das Geständniß*, *das Gleichniß*, *das Hinderniß*, *das Mißverständniß*, *das Verhältniß*, *das Verhängniß*, *das Verlöbniß*, *das Vermächtniß*, *das Versäumniß*, *das Vergleichniß*, *das Verständniß*, *das Zeugniß*.

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE GENDER.

I. If we investigate the origin of gender, it will appear, that it is to be looked for in an assimilation of the objects, signified by words, to the animated part of creation. As in this there are two sexes, so the infant mind of man distinguished those objects by two genders. Some, to which might be attributed qualities like those that are observed in the male sex of living beings, such as greatness, strength, activity, &c. were marked by the male, or masculine gender: others, in which properties, opposite to the former, such as inferior size, comparative weakness, passiveness, &c. were noticed, had the female, or feminine, gender assigned to them. Thus two divisions were made, under which nouns substantive might be classed. Several nations, and the German, among others, added a third, called the neuter gender; comprehending words that did not exactly coincide with the characteristic of the two former. It contained, for instance, those with which the comparison of the male and female sex could not well be associated. Of this kind are, in German, the specifick names of some animals, of which the male and female are discriminated by appropriate denominations. For example, *das Pferd*, the horse, is of the neuter gender, being the appellative for the equine species, of which the male is called *der Hengst*, the stallion, and the female *die Stute*. Thus *das Kind*, denoting the

bovine kind, has the same gender; the male being termed *der Stier*, (or *der Bulle*) the bull, and the female *die Kuh*, the cow. Likewise *das Schwein*, the swine; *der Eber*, (or *der Kempe*) the boar; *die Sau*, the sow; *das Huhn*, the fowl; *der Hahn*, the cock; *die Henne*, the hen. There is a similar appellative for the human species, viz. *Der Mensch*, *Lat. homo*; the subdivisions are, *der Mann*, the man; *die Frau*, the woman. This, however, as appears from the article prefixed, is not of the neuter, but of the masculine gender; which seems to be a pre-eminence given to it above the brute creation. We may, upon this occasion, remark a singularity in the word *das Weib*, a woman, which is a neuter. I conjecture, that it was introduced into the language subsequent to another word of the same signification; and that for this reason, it was not received in the class of feminines, its place being already occupied: or a particular idea might originally be annexed to it, for which it was deemed unworthy of that gender. As those words, of which we have been speaking, were referred to the neuter gender, because a comparison of sex was not combined with them: so the following belong to the same, as general names, the male and female sex being expressed by subordinate appellations. *Das Kind*, signifying, the offspring of the human species, without implying the sex; *das Lamm*, the young sheep; *das Füllen*, a young one of the equine kind; *das Kalb*, a young one of the bovine species; *das Ferkel*, a young pig; *das Küken*, a chicken, or young fowl. In all these

words no regard is had to sex, and, therefore, they are of the neuter gender.

The diminutives are neuters, without any exception. The notion, upon which this circumstance is founded, seems to be, that, as the diminutives are not quite the same as their primitives, whether masculine or feminine, but differ in their qualities, by being smaller, a different gender should be allotted to them.

Abstract terms cannot easily be made to square with the idea of sex. In consequence of this they are ascribed to the neuter gender, as *das Gehen*, the going; *das Reiten*, the riding.

Those notions were partly modified, and partly set aside, when language became more cultivated, and the human mind more enlarged. We must, however, have recourse to them, if we wish to unravel, in some degree, the intricacies, with which this subject is accompanied.

II. The gender, we have said, had its source in considering all objects as animate, and in personifying them according to the sexes existing in creation. But it does not thence follow, that different individuals, or different nations, should associate the same idea with the same object, or personify it in the same manner. My imagination may represent to me as most striking such properties in the object, as qualify it for one sex; while the perception of my neighbour may be attracted by those characteristic, which induce him to refer it to the other. The grammatical genders will consequently be different. This observation will tend

to solve some problems in the German tongue, which otherwise it would be difficult to explain.

The Sun, for instance, is in every language, I know, of the masculine; and *the Moon* of the feminine gender. In the German it is the reverse: *die Sonne*, the sun, is feminine; and *der Mond*, the moon, masculine. How is this to be accounted for? It would be as unsatisfactory as unphilosophical, to say, that it is accidental, and that no reason can be given for so strange an anomaly. The fact seems to be this. Most nations personified the sun as a male, and the moon as a female being: but the Germans have inverted it. The thing, therefore, depends upon the mode, in which the object was originally conceived, or imagined. We see this in another instance, namely, the names of rivers. The greatest number of them are, in German, of the feminine gender; and why? because the imagination represented them as female beings. The German language accordingly would suggest Goddesses of rivers, where the Greek, Roman, and others exhibited Gods. In these we may hear of *Father Tiber*, *Father Thames*, while in the former it would be proper to say, *Alma Mater*, *Mother Tiber*, and *Mother Thames*.—This might perhaps be farther illustrated by an enquiry into the early history of the German nation, and their customs, if it were consistent with our purpose to dwell on the subject any longer.

III. It has been stated, concerning the names of animals, that where there is an appellative for the

species, besides the sexual denomination of the individuals, that appellative is always of the neuter gender. But when there is no such appellative, the species takes the name of one of the individual sexes; that is to say, is either of the masculine, or of the feminine gender. This seems to be regulated on the principles alluded to: namely, where the idea of strength, greatness, and superiority may be attached, it is the masculine; and, on the other hand, where comparative weakness, and inferiority is intimated, it is the feminine gender. Thus, when a dog and a cat are compared, the former will deserve the masculine, and the latter the feminine gender; and of a hawk and a pigeon, the first should be the masculine, and the second the feminine. This comparison may not be traced in every instance, but it seems nevertheless to be the basis upon which the gender is founded, in words of a similar nature.

The name of the species, therefore, includes at the same time one of the two sexes; the other must then be distinguished by a particular ending, or by the addition of a characteristick term, such as of birds, *der Hahn*, the cock; *die Henne*, the hen; or of all animals, birds and quadrupeds, *das Männchen*, the male; *das Weibchen*, the female; and the adjectives *männlich*, *weiblich*, male, female.

With respect to the endings, which denote the sexes, they only are applicable to quadrupeds; and it is *inn* for the feminine, when the masculine constitutes the name of the species. That termi-

nation answers to the English *ess*. Examples: *Der Löwe*, the lion; *die Löwin*, the lioness; *der Hund*, the dog; *die Hündin*, the female; *der Wolf*, the wolf; *die Wölfin*, the she wolf; *der Esel*, the ass; *die Eselin*, the she ass, &c. In some, however, it is not usual, as in *der Fuchs*, the fox; *der Hase*, the hare; *der Bär*, the bear: of which it is not the common practice to say, *die Füchsin*, *die Häsin*, *die Bärin*. Consequently the terms, above mentioned, *Männchen*, *Weibchen*; *männlich*, *weiblich*, or similar words of discrimination, must be called in aid.—If the feminine gender serves for the appellation of the species, the male sex assumes the termination *er* or *rich*; as *Die Taube*, the dove, or pigeon; *der Tauber* (or *Tauber*) the male; *die Gans*, the goose; *der Ganser*, or, *Ganserich*, the gander; *die Ente*, the duck; *der Enter*, or *Enterich*, the drake; *die Katze* (old *die Kat*) the cat; *der Kater*, the he cat.

IV. From the above the termination *in* has been transferred to certain attributes and titles, (and occasionally even to proper names) to denote the feminine gender. Examples: *Der König*, the king; *die Königin*, the queen; *der Herzog*, the duke; *die Herzogin*, the duchess; *der Fürst*, the prince; *die Fürstin*, the princess; *der Prinz*, the son of a sovereign, the prince; *die Prinzessin*, the daughter of a sovereign, the princess; *der Schäfer*, the shepherd; *die Schäferin*, the shepherdess. And as it is the custom in Germany for the wife to share the title of her husband, the ending *in* is adapted to that purpose; for instance, *Der Doctor*,

the doctor; *die Doctorin*, the doctor's wife; *der Professor*, the professor; *die Professorin*, the professor's wife; *der Rath*, the counsellor; *die Rathin*, the counsellor's wife. In addressing the gentlemen we should say, *Herr Doctor*, *Herr Professor*, *Herr Rath*, &c. and the ladies, *Frau Doctorin*, *Frau Professorin*, *Frau Rathin*, *Mrs. Doctor*, *Mrs. Professor*, *Mrs. Counsellor*.

V. It may be observed, that many words follow the gender of their common appellative. For example, the names of flowers are feminine, because the word *die Blume*, the flower, is of that gender: and the names of stones are masculine, on account of *der Stein*, the stone, the common appellative, being the same.

VI. Compound words have the gender of their last component, if it be a substantive; as *Der Kirchenthath*, the ecclesiastick council, from *die Kirche*, the church, and *der Rath*, the council; *das Rathhaus*, the council-house, the senate-house, from *der Rath*, and *das Haus*, the house; *der Maasstab*, a ruler for measuring, from *das Maas*, the measure, and *der Stab*, the ruler; *der Eichenbaum*, the oak tree, from *die Eiche*, the oak, and *der Baum*, the tree; *die Mannsperson*, a man, from *der Mann*, the man, and *die Person*; *das Mannsbild*, the man, from *der Mann*, and *das Bild*; *das Frauenzimmer*, the female, the lady, from *die Frau*, and *das Zimmer*; *das Reitpferd*, the saddle horse, from the verb *reiten*, to ride, and *das Pferd*, the horse. There are, however, some exceptions, as *Das Tagelohn*, wages for a day's labour; *das Wackerlohn*, wages for

making any thing, such as clothes; *das Druckerlohn*, the printer's wages: which words are used as neuters; although the last component, *der Lohn*, the wages, is of the masculine gender. Yet in others, composed with the same, its gender is retained; as *Der Arbeitslohn*, wages for work; *der Gnadenlohn*, the pension for past services; *der Hüterlohn*, wages of a person who watches or guards any thing; *der Dienstlohn*, wages for service. Likewise some words compounded with *der Muth*, the disposition of the mind, deviate in their gender; as *Die Großmuth*, magnanimity; *die Kleinmuth*, pusillanimity; *die Sanftmuth*, gentleness of disposition; *die Schwermuth*, the melancholy; *die Wehmuth*, tenderness of feeling; *die Demuth*, humility; *die Langmuth*, forbearance. Others of the same kind do not change the gender of their primitive; as *Der Hochmuth*, haughtiness; *der Edelmuth*, nobleness of disposition; *der Gleichmuth*, equanimity; *der Wankelmuth*, a wavering disposition; *der Heldemuth*, an heroic disposition; *der Löwenmuth*, a lion like spirit; *Zweifel-muth*, a disposition to despair.

VII. Words, adopted from foreign languages, ought to preserve the gender of their originals; as *Der Canal*, the canal, from the Latin *canalis*, masculine; *das Sacrament*, the sacrament, from the Latin *sacramentum*, neuter; *die Periode*, the period, from *periodus*, feminine. But this is not always regarded; for we say *Das Labyrinth*, neuter, though it comes from *labyrinthus*, masculine; *das*

Chor, the quire, which is derived from *chorus*, masculine.

VIII. The gender marks in several words a difference of signification. For example:

Der Band signifies the binding of a book, and a volume.

Das Band, a ligament, bond, union.

Der Bauer, the peasant.

Das Bauer, a birdcage.

Der Buckel (or **Puckel**,) the back, also the hump.

Die Buckel, the stud or knob.

Der Bulle, the male of a cow.

Die Bulle, a letter published by the Pope.

Der Bund, a covenant, league, confederacy.

Das Bund, things tied together, a sheaf.

Der Erbe, the heir.

Das Erbe, the inheritance.

Der Geißel, an hostage.

Die Geißel, a scourge.

Der Geschoss, the tax, impost.

Das Geschoss, a missile weapon.

Die Gift, the gift.

Das Gift, the poison.

Der Harz, the Hercynian forest.

Das Harz, rosin.

Der Heide, the pagan.

Die Heide, the heath.

Der Raper, a privateer.

Die Raper, the caper, a vegetable, *Caparis Spinosa*.

Linn.

Der Kiefer, the jaw.

- Die Kiefer, a sort of fir.
 Der Leiter, the guide.
 Die Leiter, the ladder.
 Die Mandel, the almond.
 Das Mandel, a number of fifteen.
 Der Mangel, the want, deficiency.
 Die Mangel, a machine for dressing linen.
 Die Mark, the mark, boundary.
 Das Mark, the marrow.
 Der Marsch, the march.
 Die Marsch, a marsh, fen.
 Der Mast, the mast of a vessel.
 Die Mast, the fruit of the oak and beech, and the feeding of the swine thereon.
 Der Mensch, one of the human species.
 Das Mensch, an opprobrious term for a female.
 Der Messer, he that measures.
 Das Messer, the knife.
 Der Mohr, a moor, a black man; also a sort of silk.
 Das Mohr, the fen, bog.
 Der Ort, the place.
 Das Ort, a certain coin, also a certain measure.
 Der Ohm, (for Oheim) the uncle.
 Das Ohm, a certain measure for wine.
 Der Schild, the shield.
 Das Schild, the sign of a house.
 Der See, the lake.
 Die See, the sea.
 Der Sprosse, the shoot, sprout.
 Die Sprosse, the round of a ladder.
 Der Stift, a piece of wire, a thin peg or bolt.

Das Stift, an ecclesiastical establishment, ecclesiastical territory

Der Thor, a foolish, silly person.

Das Thor, the gate.

Der Zoll, the toll.

Das Zoll, an inch.

IX. The provinces differ in the gender of some words; as in *der Mittwoch*, Wednesday, and *die Mittwoche*; *der Altar*, the altar, and *das Altar*; *der Gyps*, plaster, made of lime chalk, and *das Gyps*, &c. but it would not be worth our while to enumerate all these deviations.

SECT. III.

THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

THE nouns substantive are reducible to four declensions, of which the following table will present a concise view.

FIRST DECLENSION,

containing all the feminines.

Singular number.—The terminations remain unaltered.

Plural.—To the termination of the singular is added, in all cases,
n, if the singular ends in *e*, *el*, *er*.
en, if it ends in a vowel, except *e*, or in a consonant, except monosyllables, and the terminations *el* and *er*.

e, in the dative *en*, in monosyllables, ending with a consonant.

Note. The plural of these two words, *die Mutter*, and *die Tochter*, is irregular. See the examples.

SECOND DECLENSION,

containing all the masculines and neuters, ending in *el*, *em*, *en*, *er*; and the neuters in *e*.

Singular.—In the genitive *s* is added to the termination; the other cases are like the nominative.

Plural.—In the dative *n* is added; the other cases like the nominative singular.

Note. If the word ends in *en*, no additional *n* is required in the dative plural.

THIRD DECLENSION,

containing the masculines, ending in *e* and *st*, of more than one syllable; and some other words of the same gender, which will be specified.—Only one neuter belongs to this declension, viz. *das Herz*, the heart.

Singular.—From the nominative the remaining cases are formed by adding *n*, if it ends in *e*; and *en*, if in a consonant.

Plural.—All the cases are made by adding *n* to the nominative singular, if it ends in *e*; and *en*, if in a consonant.

Note. Sometimes we find *ns* and *ens* in the genitive singular.

FOURTH DECLENSION,

containing all those masculines and neuters, which are not comprehended in the second and third declension.

Singular.—The genitive, by adding *es* to the nominative; the dative, by adding *e*; the accusative like the nominative.

Plural.—Most words form their plural by an addition of *e*, in the dative of *en*, to the nominative singular.

Many neuters, especially those of one syllable, and a few masculines, by an addition of *er*, and of *ern*, in the dative.

Note. In the genitive singular *s* only may be added instead of *es*, and in the dative *e* be omitted, if the flow of speech, or euphony, justifies this abridgment.

GENERAL RULES.

I. The dative plural in all declensions terminates with the letter *n*.

II. The vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au*, of the singular number, are in the plural changed into the diphthongs, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, and *äu*. This applies

a. To the monosyllables of the first declension, which form the plural in *e*; as *die Hand*, pl. *die Hände*; *die Faust*, *die Fäuste*.

b. To several words of the second declension. See the examples and observations.

c. To all those nouns of the fourth, which make their plural in *er*, and to many of the same, which have *e* in that number. See the observations.

III. The vocative case is always like the nominative of the same number.—I shall therefore forbear mentioning it in the following examples.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

It comprises all the nouns substantive of the feminine gender.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. Die Schale, the saucer.	N. Die Schalen, the saucers.
Gen. Der Schale, of the	G. Der Schalen, of
Dat. Der Schale, to	D. Den Schalen, to
Acc. Die Schale, the saucer.	A. Die Schalen, the saucers.

Nom. Die Gabel, the fork	N. Die Gabeln, the forks
Gen. Der Gabel, of	G. Der Gabeln, of
Dat. Der Gabel, to	D. Den Gabeln, to
Acc. Die Gabel, the fork.	A. Die Gabeln, the forks.

Nom. Die Feder, the pen	N. Die Federn, the pens
Gen. Der Feder, of	G. Der Federn, of
Dat. Der Feder, to	D. Den Federn, to
Acc. Die Feder, the pen.	A. Die Federn, the pens.

Nom. Die Frau, the woman	N. Die Frauen, the women
Gen. Der Frau, of	G. Der Frauen, of
Dat. Der Frau, to	D. Den Frauen, to
Acc. Die Frau, the woman.	A. Die Frauen, the women.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. Die Gefahr, the danger N. Die Gefahren, the dangers
 Gen. Der Gefahr, of G. Der Gefahren, of
 Dat. Der Gefahr, to D. Den Gefahren, to
 Acc. Die Gefahr, the danger. A. Die Gefahren, the dangers.

Nom. Die Hoffnung, the hope N. Die Hoffnungen, the hopes
 Gen. Der Hoffnung, of G. Der Hoffnungen, of
 Dat. Der Hoffnung, to D. Den Hoffnungen, to
 Acc. Die Hoffnung, the hope. A. Die Hoffnungen, the hopes.

Nom. Die Hand, the hand N. Die Hände, the hands
 Gen. Der Hand, of G. Der Hände, of
 Dat. Der Hand, to D. Den Händen, to
 Acc. Die Hand, the hand. A. Die Hände, the hands.

Nom. Die Noth, the necessity N. Die Nothe, the necessities
 Gen. Der Noth, of G. Der Nothe, of
 Dat. Der Noth, to D. Den Nothen, to
 Acc. Die Noth, the necessity. A. Die Nothe, the necessities.

Nom. Die Frucht, the fruit N. Die Früchte, the fruits
 Gen. Der Frucht, of G. Der Früchte, of
 Dat. Der Frucht, to D. Den Früchten, to
 Acc. Die Frucht, the fruit. A. Die Früchte, the fruits.

Nom. Die Faust, the fist N. Die Fäuste, the fists.
 Gen. Der Faust, of G. Der Fäuste, of
 Dat. Der Faust, to D. Den Fäusten, to
 Acc. Die Faust, the fist. A. Die Fäuste, the fists.

Nom. Die Mutter, the mother N. Die Mütter, the mothers
 Gen. Der Mutter, of G. Der Mütter, of
 Dat. Der Mutter, to D. Den Müttern, to
 Acc. Die Mutter, the mother. A. Die Mütter, the mothers.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Die Tochter, the daughter	N. Die Töchter, the daughters
Gen. Der Tochter, of	G. Der Töchter, of
Dat. Der Tochter, to	D. Den Töchtern, to
Acc. Die Tochter, the daughter	A. Die Töchter, the daughters.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. By the above all the rules of this declension have been exemplified. It would be superfluous to recapitulate them, as they have been stated with a sufficient degree of precision in the general table.

2. Monosyllables, ending in a consonant, should, according to rule, form the plural in *e*, but the following are excepted: Die Art, the kind; die Bahn, the career; die Bay, a bay; die Birn, the pear; die Brut, the brood; die Bucht, an opening in the land, a bay; die Chur, the election; die Cur, the cure; die Dirn, the damsel; die Fahrt, the conveyance; die Flur, a field, a plain; die Fluth, the flood; die Form, the form; die Fracht, the freight; die Gluth, a vehement fire; die Jagd, the chase; die Last, the burthen; die List, the cunning, deceit; die Mark, the boundary, and a species of coin; die Pflicht, the duty; die Pracht, the pomp; die Post, the post, post office; die Quaal, the torment; die Schaar, the crowd, troop; die Schlacht, the battle; die Schrift, the writing; die Schuld, the debt; die Spur, the trace, track; die Stirn, the forehead; die That, the deed; die Thür, the door; die Tracht,

the mode of dress; die Trift, the pasture; die Uhr, the clock, the watch; die Wahl, the choice; die Welt, the world; die Zahl, the number; die Zeit, the time; die Zier, the ornament.—All these make the plural in *en*; as die Arten, die Birnen, die Thüren, die Uhren, &c. Several of them occur sometimes with an additional *e* for the termination of the singular, and then do not come under this exception. They are Birne, Dirne, Stirne, Thüre; also Uhre, and Spure, though not so frequently.

3. The monosyllables in the foregoing exception, as they do not assume the termination *e* in their plural, so do they not admit a change of the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and *au*, which, according to the general rules, should be transformed in the plural of monosyllables, ending in a consonant, into the diphthongs *â*, *ô*, *û*, and *au*.

4. The word, die Sau, a female pig, a sow, makes the plural die Säu; but when the female of a wild boar is understood, it is by sportsmen expressed in the plural die Sauen. Die Bank, signifying a bench, has *e* in the plur. die Bänke; but when it means a bank, where pecuniary concerns are transacted, it takes *en*, die Banfen.

5. Some compound words of two syllables form the plural in *e* with a change of vowels; as Die Armbrust, the cross-bow; die Auskunft, information, intelligence; plur. Armbrüste, Auskünfte. The reason of this is, because they are composed of monosyllables.

6. It seems, that formerly the termination *en* was given to the singular number, in the declension

of feminines. For we still find remains of it in common life, and even in some phrases, adopted by the best authorities. Under this description come the following: *auf Erden*, on earth, for *auf der Erde*; *zu Ehren*, in honour of; *von Seiten*, on the part of; *vor Freuden*, for joy; *zu Schanden werden*, to fall into dishonour, or disgrace, to be disgracefully disappointed. That termination may be said to supply the place of the article; which power it has in proper names, as will afterwards be shewn.

7. Some words of the first declension are not used in the plural number. They are, for the most part, abstracted terms, and words of general import, or such others, for which our ideas require no plural. As this subject will be mentioned in the general remarks, it is unnecessary to say any thing farther about it here.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

This comprehends all those nouns of the masculine and neuter gender, which end in *el*, *em*, *er*; and those of the neuter gender, which end in *e*.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. Der Himmel, the heaven	N. Die Himmel, the heavens
Gen. Des Himmels, of	G. Der Himmel, of
Dat. Dem Himmel, to	D. Den Himmeln, to
Acc. Den Himmel, the heaven.	A. Die Himmel, the heavens.

Singular. *Plural.*

Nom. Der Busen, the bosom. N. Die Busen, the bosoms.
Gen. Des Busens, of. G. Der Busen, of.
Dat. Dem Busen, to. D. Den Busen, to.
Acc. Den Busen, the bosom. A. Die Busen, the bosoms.

Nom. Der Vater, the father. N. Die Väter, the fathers.
Gen. Des Vaters, of. G. Der Väter, of.
Dat. Dem Vater, to. D. Den Vatern, to.
Acc. Den Vater, the father. A. Die Väter, the fathers.

Nom. Der Bruder, the brother. N. Die Brüder, the brothers.
Gen. Des Bruders, of. G. Der Brüder, of.
Dat. Dem Bruder, to. D. Den Brüdern, to.
Acc. Den Bruder, the brother. A. Die Brüder, the brothers.

Nom. Das Gebirge, the mountain. N. Die Gebirge, the mountains.
Gen. Des Gebirges, of. G. Der Gebirge, of.
Dat. Dem Gebirge, to. D. Den Gebirgen, to.
Acc. Das Gebirge, the mountain. A. Die Gebirge, the mountains.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Very few words remain with the ending *em*; for instance, *der Athem*, the breath; *der Besem*, the broom; and in these *n* is now frequently substituted for *m*. Though *em* should be retained, the dative plur. would be *en*.

2. To this declension may be added nouns compounded with the verb *seyn*, as *Das Bewußtseyn*, consciousness; *das Wohlfeyn*, the state of good health. Also the French words ending in *ier*, and *eur*.

3. Der Kerl, a familiar appellation for a man, answering to the English *fellow*, is reckoned to this declension; viz. singular nom. Der Kerl, gen. des Kerls, dat. dem Kerl, acc. den Kerl; plur. nom. die Kerl, gen. der Kerl, dat. den Kerln, acc. die Kerl. It was perhaps contracted from Kerel.

4. The following, in the plural number, change the vowels *a, o, u*, into the diphthongs *ä, ö, ü*. (a) Such as end in *el*: Der Apfel, the apple; der Hammel, a castrated sheep; der Handel, an affair, a concern; der Mangel, the deficiency; der Mantel, the mantle; der Nabel, the navel; der Sattel, the saddle; der Schnabel, the beak; der Vogel, the bird. (b.) Such as end in *en*: Der Faden, the thread; der Graben, the ditch; der Garten, the garden; der Hafen, the haven, harbour; der Laden, the shop: but when it means the shutter of a window, the vowel is not changed. (c.) Such as end in *er*: Der Aker, a field, or an acre; der Hammer, the hammer; der Schwager, the sister's husband, the brother in law; der Vater, the father; der Bruder, the brother. These have in the plural, Sättel, Vögel, Gärten, Brüder, &c.

5. All diminutives belong to this declension. — Any substantive may be formed into a diminutive, by adding the termination *chen*; for instance, das Väterchen, das Brüderchen, from Vater, Bruder. The vowels *a, o, u*, and the diphthong *au*, are generally changed into *ä, ö, ü, äu*, as is seen in the two examples, just adduced, and others, as das Söhnchen, from der Sohn, the son; das Bäumchen, from der Baum, the tree. In the Upper

German dialect, the syllable *lein* serves for the formation of diminutives; for instance, *das Männlein*, from *der Mann*, the man; *das Fräulein*, from *die Frau*, the woman; *das Büchlein*, from *das Buch*, the book. In the High German, the ending *chen* predominates: yet *lein* is adopted, when the other appears too colloquial; for example, in poetry. It also remains in particular words; as *das Fräulein*, which is the title of a young lady of noble extraction; *das Muthlein*, denoting a revengeful disposition; *das Büchlein*, a book of small compass. When a word, ending in *e*, *el*, *en*, is to be converted into a diminutive with *lein*; the terminations *e* and *en*, and of *el* the letter *l*, are mostly left out; as *das Knäblein*, from *der Knabe*, the boy; *das Küchlein*, from *der Kuchen*, the cake; *das Englein*, from *der Engel*, the angel. When the word ends in *ch*, and is to become a diminutive with *chen*, the syllable *el* must be interposed; as *das Bücheldchen*, from *das Buch*. For, the concurrence of the same letters should, if possible, be avoided. On that account it is better to say *Seelelein*, than *Seelelein*, from *die Seele*, the soul; *Schnällein*, than *Schnällein*, from *die Schnalle*, the buckle; or still more preferable to substitute *chen* for *lein*; *Seelchen*, *Schnälchen*.—That all diminutives are neuters, has been mentioned in the section concerning the gender. Their leading signification is that of littleness, which is differently modified, assuming in the object sometimes the idea of prettiness, sometimes that of smallness only, and also, occasionally that of ridicule and contempt;

and in the person speaking or writing, the use of them frequently implies fondness, or flattery.

6. Some words of the second declension, take their plural from the third; such as *Der Bailer*, a Bavarian; *der Bauer*, the peasant; *der Pantoffel*, the slipper; *der Stachel*, the sting; *der Vetter*, a male relation, a cousin; *das Auge*, the eye; *das Ende*, the end. These make in the plural, *Baiern*, *Bauern*, *Pantoffeln*, *Stacheln*, *Vettern*, *Augen*, *Enden*. It would perhaps not be a very great impropriety, if they were altogether, both in the singular and plural, consigned to the third declension.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

To this declension are referred all masculines ending in *e* and *st* (of more than one syllable); and some others, of diverse terminations, to be enumerated in the observations: one neuter *das Herz*.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>Der Knabe</i> , the boy	N. <i>Die Knaben</i> , the boys
Gen. <i>Des Knaben</i> , of	G. <i>Der Knaben</i> , of
Dat. <i>Dem Knaben</i> , to	D. <i>Den Knaben</i> , to
Acc. <i>Den Knaben</i> , the boy.	A. <i>Die Knaben</i> , the boys.
Nom. <i>Der Herr</i> , the lord, or master	N. <i>Die Herrn</i> , the masters
Gen. <i>Des Herrn</i> , of	G. <i>Der Herrn</i> , of
Dat. <i>Dem Herrn</i> , to	D. <i>Den Herrn</i> , to
Acc. <i>Den Herrn</i> , the master.	A. <i>Die Herrn</i> , the masters.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. Der Scholiast, the scholiast	N. Die Scholiasten, the scholiasts
Gen. Des Scholiasten, of	G. Der Scholiasten, of
Dat. Dem Scholiasten, to	D. Den Scholiasten, to
Acc. Den Scholiasten, the scholiast.	A. Die Scholiasten, the scholiasts.
Nom. Der Infantrist, the foot soldier	N. Die Infantristen, the foot soldiers
Gen. Des Infantristen, of	G. Der Infantristen, of
Dat. Dem Infantristen, to	D. Den Infantristen, to
Acc. Den Infantristen, the foot soldier.	A. Die Infantristen, the foot soldiers
Nom. Der Hirt, the herds- man	N. Die Hirten, the herds- men
Gen. Des Hirten, of	G. Der Hirten, of
Dat. Dem Hirten, to	D. Den Hirten, to
Acc. Den Hirten, the herds- man.	A. Die Hirten, the herds- men.
Nom. Das Herz, the heart	N. Die Herzen, the hearts.
Gen. Des Herzen, of	G. Der Herzen, of
Dat. Dem Herzen, to	D. Den Herzen, to
Acc. Das Herz, * the heart.	A. Die Herzen, the hearts,

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The genitive case singular is sometimes formed in *ens*. This may be done, when it is

* It is remarkable, that in all languages, which vary the terminations in declension, the accusative case of the neuters is like the nominative.—Das Herz is sometimes expressed by *Herze*, for instance, in poetry.

placed before the word, by which it is governed, as *des Knaben Vater*, the boy's father, instead of *der Vater des Knaben*, the father of the boy; and should always be done when the genitive is not indicated by the article; as *Herzens Gut*, goodness of heart. But to admit that additional *s*, without a peculiar motive, is inaccurate. In the following words, however, it is authorized by the best grammarians*: *Der Friede*, peace; *der Funke*, the spark; *der Fußstapfe*, the footstep; *der Gedanke*, the thought; *der Glaube*, the faith, the belief; *der Haufe*, the crowd; *der Karpfe*, the carp; *der Name*, the name; *der Same*, the seed; *der Schade*, the hurt, injury, damage; *der Wille*, the will. The reason is, because these words may likewise, in the nominative case, be expressed by *Frieden*, *Funken*, *Fußstapfen*, *Gedanken*, *Glauben*, *Haufen*, *Karpfen*, *Namen*, *Samen*, *Schaden*, *Willen*; and thus they would belong to the second declension, in which *s* is the necessary characteristic of the genitive. But notwithstanding this circumstance the *s* is in these words frequently omitted. — The letter *e* after *r* is often left out; as *Des Herrn*, for *Herren*; *des Barbarn*, for *Barbaren*.

2. We have stated, that the masculines, ending in *e* and *st*, come under this declension, if they be of more than one syllable. Therefore monosyllables; as *Der Thee*, the tea; *der Zwist*, discord, are not of that description. Yet *der Christ*, the christian, and *der Fürst*, the prince, are included: but *der Adelung*, commonly after the dative,

might, perhaps, be *der Chrifte*, *der Fürste*; and thus they would lie within the rule. *Der See*, the lake, is in the singular of the fourth, and in the plural of the third declension.

3. To the third declension belong the following words: *Der Advocat*, the advocate; *der Barbar*, the barbarian; *der Basiliff*, the basilisk; *der Bär*, the bear; *der Brunn*, the well, (also *Brumen*, after the second;) *der Buchstab*, the letter, or character of the alphabet; *der Cadett*, a young soldier; *der Camerad*, the comrade; *der Candidat*, the candidate; *der Catholik*, the Roman catholic; *der Client*, the client; *der Ducat*, a species of coin; *der Elephant*, the elephant; *der Fels*, the rock, (also *der Felsen*, second declension;) *der Fürst*, the prince, (before mentioned;) *der Geck*, a ridiculous man; *der Gefell*, the associate; *der Graf*, the count; *der Hagestolz*, a bachelor, an unmarried man; *der Hase*, the scoundrel; *der Heiduck*, a sort of footman; *der Held*, the hero; *der Herr*, the lord, or master; *der Hirt*, the herdsman; *der Husar*, the hussar; *der Insaß*, the inmate; *der Mensch*, man, a human being; (*das Mensch*, an abject female, is of the fourth;) *der Mohr*, the moor, or negro; *der Monarch*, the monarch; *der Narr*, the fool; *der Ochse*, the ox; *der Paragraph*, the paragraph; *der Patriarch*, the patriarch; *der Pfriem*, the awl, (also *der Pfriemen*, second;) *der Poet*, the poet; *der Potentat*, the potentate; *der Präsident*, the president; *der Prälat*, the prelate; *der Prinz*, the prince; *der Psalm*, the psalm; *der Schmerz*, the pain, (more commonly after the fourth;) *der Schöps*, the dunce,

(also after the fourth;) *der Soldat*, the soldier; *der Student*, the student; *der Thor*, a silly person; *der Tropf*, a simpleton, (to be distinguished from *der Tropf*, of the fourth declension, which signifies a drop;) *der Tyrann*, the tyrant; *der Vorfahr*, the ancestor; *der Zack*, any thing pointed and projecting. Add some derivatives, ending in *it*; as *der Adamit*, a descendant of Adam; *der Jesuit*, a Jesuite; *der Hussit*, &c. Also the appellatives of some nations; such as *Der Kalmuß*, *der Kosack*, *der Kroat*, *der Malabar*, *der Uhtan*, &c.

4. Some words are dubious as to the termination of the nominative case; for example, *der Brunn*, the well, also *der Brunn*, second; *der Daum*, the thumb, better *der Daumen*, second; *der Fels*, the rock, and *der Felsen*, second.

5. The third declension lends the plural number to nouns of the second, which have been before enumerated, and likewise to some of the fourth. See below.

6. One masculine in *e* does not follow this, but the second declension, namely, *Der Käse*, the cheese, gen. *Des Käses*, &c. Plur. *die Käse*, dat. *den Käsen*, &c. But it may be observed, that the word is also written *Käse*, in which shape it would belong to the fourth declension, without, any where, occasioning an exception. And this is, in my opinion, the best mode of writing it, however common the other may be; for it is as awkward to eject it from the third, as it is irregular to force it upon the second declension.

7. The termination *e* of the nom. case sing. we see now and then omitted in words of this declension, where it ought to be put; and poets sometimes use the liberty of cutting off the termination in other cases; as *Dem Held, dem Feis, den Fürst*, for *dem Helden, Feisen, Fürsten*.—If these deviations are to be excused, they certainly must not be imitated.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

It embraces all those masculines and neuters, which are not included in the two foregoing declensions.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural, in e.</i>	
Nom.	Der Tisch, the table	N.	Die Tische, the tables.
Gen.	Des Tisches, of	G.	Der Tische, of
Dat.	Dem Tische, to	D.	Den Tischen, to
Acc.	Den Tische, the table.	A.	Die Tische, the tables.
Nom.	Das Gesetz, the law	N.	Die Gesetze, the laws.
Gen.	Des Gesetzes, of	G.	Der Gesetze, of
Dat.	Dem Gesetze, to	D.	Den Gesetzen, to
Acc.	Das Gesetz, the law.	A.	Die Gesetze, the laws.
Nom.	Der Sohn, the son	N.	Die Söhne, the sons.
Gen.	Des Sohnes, of	G.	Der Söhne, of
Dat.	Dem Sohne, to	D.	Den Söhnen, to
Acc.	Den Sohn, the son.	A.	Die Söhne, the sons.

*Singular.**Plural in e.*

Nom. Der Baum, the tree	N. Die Bäume, the trees.
Gen. Des Baumes, of	G. Der Bäume, of
Dat. Dem Baume, to	D. Den Bäumen, to
Acc. Den Baum, the tree.	A. Die Bäume, the trees.

Plural in er.

Nom. Der Geist, the ghost	N. Die Geister, the ghosts
Gen. Des Geistes, of	G. Der Geister, of
Dat. Dem Geiste, to	D. Den Geistern, to
Acc. Den Geist, the ghost.	A. Die Geister, the ghosts.

Nom. Das Kind, the child	N. Die Kinder, the children
Gen. Des Kindes, of	G. Der Kinder, of
Dat. Dem Kinde, to	D. Den Kindern, to
Acc. Das Kind, the child.	A. Die Kinder, the children.

Nom. Der Mann, the man	N. Die Männer, the men
Gen. Des Mannes, of	G. Der Männer, of
Dat. Dem Manne, to	D. Den Männern, to
Acc. Den Mann, the man.	A. Die Männer, the men.

Nom. Das Buch, the book	N. Die Bücher, the books
Gen. Des Buches, of	G. Der Bücher, of
Dat. Dem Buche, to	D. Den Büchern, to
Acc. Das Buch, the book.	A. Die Bücher, the books.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. In the genitive case singular we sometimes find *s* only added, instead of *es*, and *e* in the dative omitted. This is, in a great degree, left to the discretion of the person writing or speaking: but it should not be done unless a reason can be assigned for it. In prose, the harmony of a sentence, or some other law of euphony, and in poe-

try the metre may require it; otherwise it is more accurate to abide by the prescribed form. In some instances it would be unpardonable to use this licence; for example, it would greatly offend the ear to say *Geseß*, instead of *Geseßes*; *Plasß*, instead of *Plasßes*; *Tischß*, instead of *Tischeß*, &c.—Of *Gott*, God, denoting the supreme being, the genitive is hardly ever found otherwise than *Gottes*, and the dative *Gott*: but when it signifies a heathen deity, or an idol, it may be *Gotts* in the genitive, and *Gotte* in the dative. Words ending in *ar* and *or*, and some in *am*, are generally used without the *s*; as *Der Nachbar*, the neighbour; gen. *des Nachbars*, dat. *dem Nachbar*; *der Pastor*, the priest; gen. *des Pastors*, dat. *dem Pastor*; *der Bräutigam*, the bridegroom, gen. *des Bräutigams*, dat. *dem Bräutigam*; *der Gehorsam*, obedience, gen. *der Gehorsams*, dat. *dem Gehorsam*.

2. The following is a list of those nouns, which make the plural in *er*. (a.) Of the masculine gender: *Der Gott*, a god, a heathen idol; *Geist*, *Hundsfott*, *Irthum*, *Leib*, *Mann*, *Hand*, *Reichthum*, *Vormund*, *Wald*. (b.) Of the neuter gender: *Das Aas*, (plur. *Aeser*,) *Ant*, *Augenlied*, *Bad*, *Bild*, *Bis, *Blatt*, *Bret*, *Buch*, *Dach*, *Dorf*, *Ey*, *Fach*, *Faß*, *Geib*, *Gemach*, *Gemüth*, *Gespens*, *Stas*, *Glied*, *Grab*, *Gras*, *Gut*, *Haupt*, *Haus*, *Holz*, *Hospital*, *Huhn*, *Kalb*, *Kind*, *Kleid*, *Kraut*, *Lamm*, *Licht*, *Lied*, *Loth*, *Maul*, *das Mensch*, (a bad woman,) *Nest*, *Pfand*, *Rad*, *Regiment*, *das Schild* (the sign of an inn,) *Schloß*, *Schwert*, *Spital*, *Thal*, *Volk*, *Wammes*, *Welb*.*

3. All those, which have *er* in the plural, change the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au*, in the same number, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *äu*; as *Mann*, pl. *Männer*; *Loch*, pl. *Löcher*; *Buch*, pl. *Bücher*; *Haus*, plur. *Häuser*. And of those in *e*, the following transform them: (a) Masculines: *Der Abt*, plur. *die Aebte*; *der Abdruck*, pl. *die Abdrücke*; *der Altar*, pl. *die Altäre*; *Anfang*, *Antrag*, *Arzt*, *Ast*, *Auftrag*, *Ausdruck*, *Bach*, *Balg*, *Ball*, *Band* (the volume of a book,) *Bart*, *Baß*, *Bauch*, *Baum*, *Bischof*, *Block*, *Bock*, *Brand*, *Brauch*, *Bruch*, *Busch*, *Canal*, pl. *Canäle*; *Capellan*, pl. *Capelläne*; *Cardinal*, pl. *Cardinäle*; *Castellan*, pl. *Castelläne*; *Choral*, *Damm*, *Dampf*, *Darm*, *Diebstahl*, *Dunst*, *Eindruck*, *Fall*, *Fiscal*, *Floh*, *Fluch*, *Flug*, *Frosch*, *Fuchs*, *Fund*, *Fuß*, *Gang*, *Gast*, *Gaul*, *Geruch*, *Gesang*, *Grund*, *Gras*, *Guß*, *Hahn*, *Halß*, *Hof*, *Hut*, *Kahn* (a boat,) *Kampf*, *Karst*, *Kauf*, *Kauß*, *Klang*, *Kloß*, *Kloß*, *Knopf*, *Koch*, *Kopf*, *Korb*, *Krampf*, *Kranz*, *Kropf*, *Krug*, *Kuß*, *Laß*, *Lauf*, *Markt*, *Marſch*, *Marſchall*, pl. *Marſchälle*; *Morast*, pl. *Moräfte*, *Maß*, *Pallaß*, pl. *Palläfte*; *Papst*, *Pastor*, pl. *Pastöre*; *Paß*, *Pflock*, *Pflug*, *Maß*, *Pocal*, pl. *Pocäte*; *Propst*, *Puff*, *Ranft*, *Ranft*, *Raum*, *Rauſch*, *Rock*, *Rumpf*, *Saal*, pl. *Säle*; *Sack*, *Saft*, *Sarg*, *Saß*, *Saum*, *Schacht*, *Schaft*, *Schalf*, *Schall*, *Schag*, *Schamm*, *Schlaf* (the temple of the head,) *Schlag*, *Schlauch*, *Schlund*, *Schluß*, *Schmauß*, *Schooß*, pl. *Schöſe*; *Schopf*, *Schrank*, *Schurz*, *Schuß*, *Schwamm*, *Schwan*, *Schwank*, *Schwanz*, *Schwarm*, *Schwung*, *Schwur*, *Sohn*, *Spaß*, *Spruch*, *Sprung*, *Spund*, *Stab*, *Stall*, *Stamm*, *Stand*, *Stoß*, *Storch*, *Stoß*, *Strang*, *Strauch*, *Strauß*, *Strom*, *Strumpf*, *Stahl*, *Sturm*, *Sturz*, *Cumpſ*,

Tanz, Thurm, Ton, (the tone,) Topf, Trank, Traum, Trog, Trumpf, Vogt, Vorhang, Vorrath, Vortrag, Wall, Wanst, Wolf, Wulst, Wunsch, Wurf, Wurm, Zahn, Zaun, Zaun, Zoll, (toll) Zopf, Zug, Zwang.
 (b.) Neuters: Das Arsenal, pl. die Arsenale; das Boot, pl. die Böte, (but also die Boote) das Chor, pl. die Chöre; das Floß, pl. die Flöße.

4. Several nouns of this declension borrow the plural number from the third. They are, Der Affect, the affection of the mind, passion, pl. die Affecten; der Aspect, the aspect, pl. die Aspecten; der Diamant (or Demant) the diamond, pl. die Diamanten; das Insect, the insect, pl. die Insecten; der Nachbar, the neighbour, pl. die Nachbarn; das Ohr, the ear, pl. die Ohren; der Schmerz, the pain, pl. die Schmerzen; der See, the lake, pl. die Seen; der Sporn, the spur, pl. die Spornen; der Staat, the state, pl. die Staaten; der Strahl, the ray or beam, pl. die Strahlen, (but its compounds have the regular plural in *e*; for example, der Dreystrahl, Fünfstrahl, Sechsstrahl, terms of mineralogy;) der Ungar, the Hungarian, pl. die Ungarn; der Unterthan, the subject of a sovereign, pl. die Unterthanen; der Zierrath, the ornament, pl. die Zierrathen.

5. Some assume different terminations according to a difference in signification. (a.) *E* and *en*: Das Bett, the bed, pl. die Bette, the beds—the Betten, the parts composing the inside of a bed, feather-beds, &c. das Stück, the piece, plur. die Stücke, pieces—die Stücken, pieces of artillery. (b.) *E*, *en*, and *er*: Das Band, the bond, ligament, ribbon, pl. die Bande, the bonds, fetters—

die Bänder, the ribbons; das Ding, the thing, pl. die Dinge, the things, in a general sense;—die Dinger, individual things; der Dorn, the thorn, pl. die Dornen, the thorns in general—die Dörner, the single thorns; the prickles; das Gesicht, the sight, the vision, the face, pl. die Gesichter, the visions, the sights—die Gesichter, the faces; das Horn, the horn, pl. die Hörne, species or kinds of that substance—die Hörner, individual horns; das Land, the land, or country, pl. die Lande, territory, dominions; die Länder, individual countries; der Ort, the place, pl. die Orte, places, in a general sense, also passages from books—die Orter, individual places; der Stahl, the steel, pl. die Stähle, kinds of steel—die Stähler, certain instruments made of steel; das Tuch, the cloth, pl. Tuche, klods of cloth—die Tücher, parts of dress, such as neckcloths; das Wort, the word, pl. die Worte, words in general, in Latin *verba*—die Wörter, words of the vocabulary, Latin *vocabula*.

6. In this, as in the other declensions, we meet with words that are only used in one number, either singular or plural: of which see the general remarks.

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE SUBSTANTIVES.

I. Most of the nouns substantive have both numbers, the singular as well as the plural. But as there are some, that from the nature of their signification, or from the peculiar usage of the German tongue, occur only in one number, it is

incumbent upon us to take these latter into our consideration. There are but few that want the singular; the greatest number is deficient in the plural.

Those which have no plural, are partly such as fail both in English and German, and partly such as are wanting in German alone.

Those which take the plural number neither in the English, nor in the German language. Of this description are,

a. The names of certain material substances, and of qualities inherent in them. For example: *Das Gold*, gold; *Silber*, silver; *Eisen*, iron; *Rupfer*, copper; *Zinn*, tin; *Bley*, lead; *das Elfenbein*, ivory; *die Erde*, earth; *der Thon*, the clay; *der Staub*, dust; *das Holz*, wood; *das Fleisch*, flesh; *der Speck*, bacon; *das Schmalz*, lard; *der Talg*, tallow; *das Mark*, the marrow; *das Mehl*, meal; flower; *das Malz*, malt; *das Getraide*, corn; *die Butter*, butter; *die Milch*, milk; *das Honig*, honey; *das Wachs*, wax; *der Speichel*, spittle; *der Mist*, dung; *der Ruß*, soot; *der Rost*, rust; *der Schlamm*, mire; *der Schimmel*, mould; *der Schmutz*, dirt; *der Schnee*, the snow; *der Regen*, the rain; *der Hagel*, hail, &c.—Of some the plural may be used technically, to denote the species; as *die Silber*, *Rupfer*, *Zinne*, *Bleye*, *Hölzer*, &c. the silvers, coppers, tins, leads, woods, i. e. the species or kinds of silver, copper, tin, lead, wood, &c.

b. General and abstract terms. For example: *Der Ruhm*, the glory; *der Raub*, pillage; *die Beute*, booty; *der Pöbel*, the populace; *das Vieh*, the cat-

tle; der Fuß, finery; die Vernunft, human reason; der Wille, the will; die Stärke, strength; die Hitze, heat; die Wärme, warmth; die Kälte, the cold; die Gehorsam, obedience; die Gewalt, force, violence; die Mühe, trouble; der Geiz, avarice; der Neid, envy; der Stolz, pride; der Hochmuth, haughtiness; die Armuth, poverty; die Jugend, youth; das Alter, old age; der Hunger, hunger; der Durst, thirst; der Schlaf, sleep; das Glück, luck, happiness; der Zorn, anger; der Eifer, zeal; die Eile, haste; der Fleiß, industry; &c.

2. Such as admit the plural in English, but not in German.

a. The following words: Der Rath, the counsel or advice; der Dank, thanks; der Verstand, the understanding; der Lohn, the reward; der Kummer, sorrow; der Jammer, affliction, misery; der Mund, the mouth; der Sand, the sand; die Liebe, the love; die Furcht, the fear; der Bräutigam, the bridegroom; das Lob, the praise; der Mord, the murder; der Tadel, reprehension; der Zwang, the constraint; das Leben, the life; der Tod, death; das Unglück, the misfortune; der Zank, the quarrel; der Streit, the contest; die Ankunft, the arrival; die Flucht, the flight, escape; der Anfang, the beginning; das Ende, the end or conclusion; der Empfang, the receipt, the act of receiving; der Unterricht, the instruction; das Gemurmel, the murmuring; der Urlaub, leave, permission; der Genuß, the enjoyment, &c.—If the plural number of the above, or similar nouns be required, it must be supplied by a synonymous word. For instance, of the plural of

der Rath, the advice or counsel, be wanted, the language furnishes us with *die Rathschläge*, from *der Rathschlag*, the advice; for *der Dank*, we have the plural *die Danksagungen*, from *die Danksagung*; for *Lohn*, plur. *Belohnungen*, from *die Belohnung*, the reward; for *Mund*, the mouth, if the organ of speech be alluded to, *die Zungen*, the tongues, from *die Zunge*; if the instrument of eating, *die Mäuler*, from *das Maul*, the mouth; for *Lob*, praise, pl. *die Lobeserhebungen*, the praise, from *die Lobeserhebung*, or *die Lobreden*, from *die Lobrede*; for *Tod*, death, pl. *die Todesfälle*, deaths, from *der Todesfall*, the event of death, or *die Todesarten*, from *die Todesart*, the manner of dying, the kind of death; for *Zank*, the quarrel, pl. *die Zänkereyen*, from *die Zänkerey*, the quarrel; for *der Streit*, the contest, pl. *die Streitigkeiten*, from *die Streitigkeit*, the contention; for *Unglück*, the misfortune, pl. *die Unglücksfälle*, from *der Unglücksfall*; for *Unterricht*, the instruction, pl. *die Unterweisungen*, from *die Unterweisung*, the instruction, or *die Belehrungen*, from *die Belehrung*, the information; for *Urtaub*, permission, pl. *die Erlaubnisse*, from *die Erlaubniß*, the permission, &c.

b. Some names of plants; as *der Kohl*, the cabbage; *der Hafer*, the oats; *der Hopfen*, hops; *das Schilf*, the reed; *die Kresse*, cresses. Others are likewise unusual in English; for instance, *der Klee*, clover; *Knoblauch*, garlick; *der Spargel*, asparagus; *der Flachs*, the flax; *der Hanf*, hemp; *die Gerste*, the barley; *der Weizen*, the wheat, &c. If the plural is to be expressed, some adjunct must be

made use of; for example, *Die Art*, the kind; *die Pflanze*, the plant; as *zwey Pflonzen Kohl*, two cabbages; *die Kohlarten*, the kinds of cabbage; *die Kleeplanzen*, plants of clover; *die Kleearten*, or *Arten Klee*, different kinds of clover. When the name of the plant ends in a simple *e*, and the adjunct is to follow it, the letter *n* is generally inserted; as *Gerstenarten*, *Kressenplanzen*.

b. Words, implying a measure of weight, quantity, or extent, are hardly ever put in the plural, though numerals, exceeding *one*, should be before them. Of this kind are the following:

Der Acker, the acre; for example, *zehn Acker Land*, ten acres of land.

Das Buch, a quire of paper; ex. *drey Buch Papier*, three quires of paper.

Das Duzend, the dozen; ex. *zwanzig Duzend Wein*, twenty dozen of wine.

Das Faß, the cask; ex. *zwölf Faß Bier*, twelve casks of beer.

Die Faust, the hand; *vierzehn Faust hoch*, fourteen hands high.

Der Grad, a mathematical degree; *hundert Grad*, hundred degrees.

Das Haupt, the head; *vier Haupt Rindvieh*, four heads of cattle.

Das Klafter, the fathom; *neun Klafter*, nine fathoms.

Das Mahl, as in *ein Mahl*, once; *zwey Mahl*, twice; *drey Mahl*, three times; *vier Mahl*, four times; *sechs Mahl*, six times, &c.

Der Mann, as *die Compagnie* ist *hundert Mann* stark, the company is a hundred men strong.

Die Mark, the mark, a weight; as *zehn Mark Gold*, ten marks of gold.

Das Paar, the pair; *drey Paar Schuhe*, three pair of shoes; *sechs Paar Strumpfe*, six pair of stockings. *Note.* *Ein Paar* also signifies a few; as *ein Paar Tage*, a few days.

Das Pfund, the pound; *vier Pfund Zucker*, four pounds of sugar.

Das Schock, a number of sixty; *zwey Schock Aepfel*, six score of apples.

Der Stein, the stone; *vierzehn Stein schwer*, fourteen stone weight.

Das Stück, the piece; *sieben Stück Tuch*, seven pieces of cloth.

Das Zoll, an inch; *fünf Zoll breit*, five inches broad, &c.

A few words are excepted from this rule, such as *die Elle*, an ell; *die Meile*, the mile; *die Unze*, the ounce; and some others, which must be learned by use.—It may be observed, that the substantives which follow those nouns of measure or quantity, are not declined, unless either a pronoun or an adjective is joined with them. When joined with a pronoun, they are put in the genitive case, or the dative with the preposition *von*, of; as *sechs Pfund dieses Zuckers*, or *von diesem Zucker*, six pounds of this sugar; *vier Faß jenes Weines*, or *von jenem Weine*, four casks of that wine: when with an adjective, they remain in the nominative, if no other word be in the sentence

to govern them; or if there is such a word, for instance, a verb or preposition, they are put in the case which is required by that word; as *Schicken sie mir drey Duzend guten Wein, und sechs Pfund feinen Zucker*, send me three dozens of good wine, and six pounds of fine sugar—*guten Wein* and *feinen Zucker* are accusative cases, governed by the verb *schicken*, to send. Thus with a preposition, *mit zehn Faß gutem Biere, und mit sieben Stuck fettem Viehe*, with six casks of good beer, and seven pieces of fat cattle; here *gutem Biere, fettem Viehe* are in the dative, governed by the preposition *mit*.—An adjective between a numeral and the word of quantity, or measure, has, of itself, no effect upon that word; as *sechs geometrische Fuß*, six geometrical feet. But when a verb or preposition governs the adjective, the word of quantity, or measure, is likewise governed by it, as *ein Setz von hundert geometrischen Fuß*. It would here be improper to say *Fuß*; because the adjective is governed by a preposition, and the substantive belonging to it must agree. The word *Paar* resists this rule, and continues invariable under those circumstances; as *geben sie mir vier gute Paar Schuhe*, give me four good pairs of shoes; *mit vier guten Paar Schuhen*, with four good pairs of shoes. But the substantive after it bears the influence of the governing word, as is seen in the last example, where *Schuhen* is put in the dative, on account of the preposition *mit*. Otherwise, when the word of quantity itself is governed, and varied in its case, the substantive after it may be put in the genitive,

or be left unaltered; as *von sechs geometrischen Fußes Landes*, or *Land*.—The English language furnishes some similarities to what has been said concerning the words of measure or quantity, though that usage is not so prevalent as in the German. We hear frequently *ten pound*, *twenty piece*, instead of *pounds*, *pieces*; but I believe this mode of expression is not, in general, approved.

III. The following words have no singular: *Die Gefälle*, the taxes; *die Einkünfte*, the revenue; *die Kosten*, the costs; *die Aeltern*, the parents; *die Ahnen*, the ancestors; *die Beinkleider*, the small cloths; *die Hosen*, the breeches; *die Waffen*, the arms; *die Schranken*, the bounds, the lists; *die Gebrüder*, the brothers; *die Geschwister*, the brothers and sisters; *die Kriegesläufe*, the course and events of war; *die Zeitläufe*, the course and events of the times; *die Leute*, the people; *die Mollen*, the whey; *die Truppen*, the troops; *die Slaumen*, the flay; *die Brieffschaften*, letters, papers; *die Franzosen*, a disease; *die Weihnachten*, Christmas; *die Ostern*, Easter; *die Wisingen*, Whitsuntide; *die Gliedmaßen*, the limbs; *die Kalbdaumen*, the entrails; and some foreign words, as *die Spenen*, the expences; *die Sporteln*, the fees; *die Annaten*, the annuity; *die Repressalien*, the reprisals; *die Insignien*, the insignia.

IV. The four declensions may be applied to proper names: but it will be necessary to add some observations upon these in particular.—The oblique cases of the proper names are either indicated by prefixing the definite article, or by vary-

ing the termination. In some instances the former, and in others the latter seems to be preferable.

The article merely serves as a sign for the oblique cases, that is to say, for the genitive, dative, and accusative, and is not wanted for the nominative. When this article is prefixed, the termination remains unvaried. Examples:

For the Masculine Gender.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	
Nom.	Homer, Homer	Nom.	Virgil, Virgil
Gen.	Des Homer, of	Gen.	Des Virgil, of
Dat.	Dem Homer, to	Dat.	Dem Virgil, to
Acc.	Den Homer, Homer.	Acc.	Den Virgil, Virgil.

For the Feminine Gender.

Nom.	Flora, Flora	Nom.	Sappho, Sappho
Gen.	Der Flora, of	Gen.	Der Sappho, of
Dat.	Der Flora, to	Dat.	Der Sappho, to
Acc.	Die Flora, Flora.	Acc.	Die Sappho, Sappho.

It is irregular to vary the termination of the genitive, as is sometimes done from inadvertency, as *des Homers*, *des Virgils*; when the article is employed for the sole purpose of shewing the case. Another deviation from the rule is the leaving out of the article in the accusative case, and saying, for instance, *Ich lese Virgil*, *ich lese Homer*, I read Virgil, I read Homer, for *den Virgil*, *den Homer*; *Ich sehe Sappho*, I see Sappho; *Ich liebe Flora*, I love Flora, for *die Sappho*, *die Flora*. This fault is

almost as common, and as reprehensible, as the former.

The second mode of declining proper names is by varying the termination of the oblique cases. The characteristick for the termination of the genitive is *s*, (sometimes *es*, *ns*, *ens*,) and for that of the dative and accusative *n*, when the word ends in a vowel, or in *l*, *r*, and *en*, when it ends in a consonant, except *l* and *r*. Female names ending in *a*, change this vowel, before the *n*, into *e*.

Examples:

For the Masculine Gender.

Singular.

Singular.

Nom. Beccaria, Beccaria
Gen. Beccarias, of
Dat. Beccaria'n, to
Acc. Beccaria'n, Beccaria.

Nom. Heyne, Heyne
Gen. Hennes, of
Dat. Heynen, to
Acc. Heynen, Heyne.

Nom. Jacobi, Jacobi
Gen. Jacobi's, of
Dat. Jacobi'n, to
Acc. Jacobi'n, Jacobi.

Nom. Cato, Cato
Gen. Cato's, of
Dat. Cato'n, to
Acc. Cato'n, Cato.

Nom. Jablonsky, Jablonsky
Gen. Jablonsky's, of
Dat. Jablonsky'n, to
Acc. Jablonsky'n, Jablonsky.

Nom. Fagel, Fagel
Gen. Fagels, of
Dat. Fageln, to
Acc. Fageln, Fagel.

Nom. Kant, Kant
Gen. Kants, of
Dat. Kanten, to
Acc. Kanten, Kant.

Nom. Schulz, Schulz
Gen. Schulzes, of
Dat. Schulzen, to
Acc. Schulzen, Schulz.

Examples:

For the Feminine Gender.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
Nom. Diana, Diana	Nom. Friderike, Frederica
Gen. Diana's, of	Gen. Friderikens, of
Dat. Dianen, to	Dat. Frideriken, to
Acc. Dianen, Diana.	Acc. Frideriken, Frederica.

Nom. Sappho, Sappho
Gen. Sappho's, of
Dat. Sappho'n, to
Acc. Sappho'n, Sappho.

Instead of the simple *s* in the genitive case, *es* must be added in words that end in *s*, *es*, *sch*, *st*, *x*, *z*, *tz*; as *Wylius*, gen. *Wyliuses*, or *Wylusses*; *Fuchs*, gen. *Fuchses*; *Frisch*, gen. *Frisches*; *Ernst*, gen. *Ernstes*; *Mar*, gen. *Mares*; *Schulz*, gen. *Schulzes*; *Franz*, gen. *Franzes*; *Moris*, gen. *Morises*. The addition of *s* alone, in these instances, would create an intolerable harshness.

We frequently find *ns* and *ens* as the characteristic termination of the genitive; and, indeed, always in female names ending in *e*, as *Friderike*, gen. *Friderikens*; and very often in those which end in *a*, as *Flora*, gen. *Florens*; *Europa*, gen. *Europens*. Nor is it uncommon in male names ending in *e*, or a consonant, except *l* and *r*. For example: *Heyne*, gen. *Heynens*; *Rant*, gen. *Rantens*; *Woff*, gen. *Woffens*; *Mar*, gen. *Marens*; *Schulz*, gen. *Schulzens*; *Fris*, gen. *Fritzens*. It is, how-

ever, more modern, and consequently preferable, to use *s* without the *n* before it.

Names ending in *as*, *es*, *os*, *us*, do not well bear the usual terminations of the genitive in *es* or *ens*; for the sound, that is thus produced, is uncouth, and harsh to the ear. It is therefore avoided, when it conveniently can be done. Most names of those endings are from the Latin; and not unfrequently the Latin termination of the genitive is adopted: as *das Leiden Christi*, the sufferings of Christ; *das Leben Alcibiadis*, the life of Alcibiades; where *Christi* and *Alcibiadis* are the Latin genitives, from *Christus*, *Alcibiades*, instead of the German *Christusseß*, *Alcibiadesseß*, or *Christusens*, *Alcibiadesens*. Another method of avoiding the awkward sound of the latter, is, not to give any distinctive termination to the genitive at all; and to say *Christus Leiden*, *Alcibiades Leben*; or *das Leiden Christus*, *das Leben Alcibiades*: yet the last is more unusual; for the genitive, void of any other mark of discrimination, may, in a manner, be distinguished by being placed before the noun, of which it is governed. Sometimes the preposition *von*, *of*, may be of service, though it is not always applicable; and occasionally we find an irregular abbreviation, as *Acheloens*, from *Achelous*, which should be *Acheloussens*. But the most obvious and best mode is the use of the article, which we have before explained.

As there are two ways of forming the oblique cases of proper names, it remains to be asked

which deserves the preference, or how each of them may be most properly employed.

The first mode, with the article, answers almost every purpose, except when the genitive case is to be put before the word, by which it is governed. Then the variable terminations ought to be used; as *Homers Ilias*, the Iliad of Homer; *Virgils Aeneis*, Virgil's Aeneid; not *des Homers Ilias*, *des Virgil Aeneis*. If the article were to be prefixed in this instance, the genitive of the name must still have the termination *s*; else it would be against the idiom of the language. The article would therefore be superfluous and useless. It is different after a demonstrative pronoun; where the genitive of male names should always have the termination *s*, when that case is put before the word, by which it is governed; as *Dieses Ciceros Schriften*, the writings of this Cicero; *jenes Virgils Gedichte*, the poems of that Virgil.—As for the ending *n* or *en*, in the dative and accusative, it is more fit for the language of common life, than for refined writing and speaking; and by those, who wish to write and speak with accuracy and elegance, it is generally exchanged for the article. Yet it may be retained in particular circumstances; for example, as a familiar manner of expression, or for other reasons. In some provinces the characteristic *n* is even added to the dative and accusative of common substantives, instead of the article; as *Sage es Vatern*, tell the father, *dat. for dem Vater*, rufe *Brudern*, Mutter, call the brother, the mother, *for den Onkel*.

der, die Mutter. But this is by no means to be imitated.—Some, who are not very scrupulous in discriminating the cases, make the dative and accusative like the nominative, without either the article preceding, or the termination being altered; as *Ich habe es Schlegel gesagt*, I have told Schlegel, for *dem Schlegel*, or *Schlegeln*; *haben sie Cicero gelesen*, have you read Cicero; *haben sie Pitt gesehen*, have you seen Pitt, for *den Cicero*, or *Ciceron*, and *den Pitt*, or *Pitten*. We cannot, however, recommend this as just and accurate, though it may, in particular situations, be excused.—When a substantive, whether a title or other appellative, with the article, stands before a proper name, the latter remains undeclined; as *des Philosophen Kant*, of the philosopher Kant; *des Dichters Bürger*, of the poet Bürger; *des Kaisers Joseph*, of the Emperor Joseph. But, if the substantive is not attended with an article, the proper name must be varied in its termination, at least in the genitive case; as *König Friedrichs Siege*, king Frederick's victories; *Herrn Leisers Schriften*, Mr. Leiser's writings. In the dative and accusative it is, in general, not necessary; as *Ich habe König Georg gesehen*, I have seen King George; *ich habe mit Herrn Best gesprochen*, I have spoken with Mr. Best. Here are the dative and accusative without their peculiar termination.—The word *Herr*, mister, generally is put in its oblique case, which makes *n*, according to the third declension; as *mit Herrn Best*.—When two or more proper names, relating to the same person, are joined together, if an oblique case, for instance, the genitive, be required,

the last only of the names is to stand in that case; for example, Emanuel Rams Werke, the works of Emanuel Kant; Johann Georg Heinrich Febers Schriften, the writings of John George Henry Feder. When the surname is preceded by the word von, which is the emblem of nobility, the last christian name takes the termination; as Carl Friedrichs von Wangenheim Güter, the estates of Charles Frederick of Wangenheim; Wilhelm Gottfrieds von Leibniz Schriften, the works of William Godfrey de Leibnitz.—A common substantive, or appellative, being placed after the proper name, and referring to the same person, must be in the same case with the latter; as das Leben Karls des zwölften, Königes von Schweden, the life of Charles the twelfth, King of Sweden.

The names of countries and places admit the *s* in the genitive, but not *n* in the other cases; as Deutschlands blühender Zustand, the flourishing state of Germany. The dative and accusative are, therefore, like the nominative. Sometimes the dative may end in *e*, when the word is referred to the fourth declension; as in dem volkreichen Deutschlande, in the populous country of Germany. The article never can be prefixed to such names, unless an adjective intervenes, as in the last example. The genitive is sometimes expressed by the preposition von; as die Könige von England, the kings of England.

A male name may be converted into a female by the addition of the syllable *inn*: as Henne; die Heyninn, Heyne's wife. Yet this is not a very

elegant manner of conveying the idea, and is generally superseded by some other mode of expression.

We have hitherto spoken of the singular number only: if the plural of a proper name be wanted, it is, according to the gender and ending of the word, to be made after one of the four declensions; namely, the feminines after the first; the masculines in *el*, *en*, *er*, after the second; those in *e* and *st* (of more than one syllable) after the third; and the rest after the fourth. Names from the Greek or Latin, ending in *er*, do not follow the second, but the fourth: as *die Homere*, the Homers; because *er* has in these the full accent.

Every proper name is, like a common substantive, formed into a diminutive, by the addition of *chen*, or *lein* (of which see above); for example, *Carlchen*, little Charles; *Dianchen*, little Diana. These diminutives belong all, without exception, to the second declension of substantives.

III. It may be observed, that, where the article cannot be employed, the genitive case is very often characterized by the letter *s*. We see this, for instance, in compound words; as *das Liebesband*, the bond of love, instead of *das Band der Liebe*; *das Hülfsmittel*, a means or expedient, from *das Mittel* and *die Hülfe*; and though it is not used in all compounds, yet in these and others the power of the *s* is clearly distinguished.

IV. Foreign words, which have been received into the German language, must be adapted to one of the four declensions, with a due attention to the laws of euphony.

SECT. IV.

THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

Nouns adjective are used in four different forms.
—Here follows a table of them.

FIRST FORM.

Adverbial, that is to say, without a declinable termination. In this form the adjective appears, when it is not placed before a substantive, nor preceded by an article, or a pronoun.

SECOND FORM.

When the adjective stands before a substantive, without an article preceding. It is declined, with three genders, in the singular number: the plural has only one termination for all genders.

*Singular.**Plural.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		
Nom.	er,	e,	es.	Nom.	e.
Gen.	es,	er,	es.	Gen.	er.
Dat.	em,	er,	em.	Dat.	en.
Acc.	en,	e,	es.	Acc.	e.

THIRD FORM.

With the definite article, *Der, die, das*; three genders in the singular.

*Singular.**Plural.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		
Nom.	e,	e,	e.	Nom.	en.
Gen.	en,	en,	en.	Gen.	en.
Dat.	en,	en,	en.	Dat.	en.
Acc.	en,	e,	e.	Acc.	en.

FOURTH FORM.

The indefinite article, ein, eine, ein, or a possessive pronoun, as mein, meine, mein, my, preceding. Three genders in the singular.

*Singular.**Plural.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		
Nom.	er,	e,	es.	Nom.	en.
Gen.	en,	en,	en.	Gen.	en.
Dat.	en,	en,	en.	Dat.	en.
Acc.	en,	e,	es.	Acc.	en.

THE FIRST FORM.

This seems to be the original form of the adjective, of which the following are modifications. In that form we always see the adjective, when it is not connected with either article or substantive. As it is not declined, it wants the termination, which serves for the purpose of declension. Examples: gut, good; groß, great; klein, little; roth, red; weiß, white, &c. In this shape it remains, when it is put after a substantive; as Cäsar klug und tapfer, Cäsar prudent and brave. The adjectives, klug

and tapfer, are in the first form, because they are not put before the substantive, nor is there an article preceding them. If either the one or the other were the case, a declinable termination would be added, according to the subsequent forms: for instance, fluger Cäsar, der fluge, ein fluger: and the same with the other, tapferer, der tapfere, ein tapferer. It makes no difference what number the substantive is in: if the adjective is placed after, it always remains in its first, or invariable form; as die Römer kühn und herrschsüchtig, the Romans bold and ambitious. Here kühn and herrschsüchtig, after the plural number, die Römer, are in the first form, without a declinable termination. And in the same it stands, when placed after a verb; as der Mann ist gut, the man is good; die Farbe heißt roth, the colour is called red; es ist kalt, it is cold; es ist heiß, it is hot. Thus it is, whether the verb be in the singular or in the plural; as Sie sind groß, they are great. The adjectives mentioned, gut, roth, kalt, heiß, groß, are here used in the first form, and without any declinable termination.

It may be observed, that most adjectives, in the first form, terminate in consonants; but some in the diphthongs au, eu, ey; as grau, grey; treu, faithful; frey, free; and several in e; as blöde, bashful; bange, anxious; enge, narrow; geschwinde, quick; böse, bad, naughty, or angry; trübe, not clear, troubled, &c.

THE SECOND FORM.

When the adjective stands before the substantive to which it belongs, without an article antecedent, it is placed in the second form, which is declined in the following manner:

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		
Nom.	Guter,	Gute,	Gutes.	Nom.	Gute.
Gen.	Gutes,	Guter,	Gutes.	Gen.	Guter,
Dat.	Gutem,	Guter,	Gutem.	Dat.	Guten.
Acc.	Guten,	Gute,	Gutes.	Acc.	Gute.

Examples: guter Wein, good wine; gute Milch, good milk; gutes Bier, good beer.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. When two or more adjectives come before the same substantive, without an article preceding them, they are all put in the second form. For example: Guter, alter, rother Wein, good, old, red wine; Gute, süße, frische Milch, good, sweet, fresh milk; Gutes, starkes, braunes Bier, good, strong, brown beer. But in the genitive and dative singular, and in the genitive plural, it often happens, that only the first adjective is placed in this form, and the rest are made to end in *en*. This is done to avoid the disagreeable repetition of the terminations *es*, *em*, and *er*. For instance, gen. sing. Gutes, alten, rothen Weines; Guter süßen Milch; dat. sing. Gutem, starken, braunen Biere; gen. pl. Guter alten

Meine. The iteration of *es* and *em* is deemed particularly offensive, and therefore should be prevented. In consequence of this, we find *es* superseded by *en*, though only before a substantive ending in *s*, in the following phrases: *guten Theils*, in a great degree; *andern Theils*, on the other hand; *meisten Theils*, for the most part; *größten Theils*, for the greatest part; *widrigen Falls*, in a contrary case; *folgenden Tages*, the day following; *den ersten Jun verwichenen Jahres*, the first of June of last year; *guten Muthes*, of good cheer; *trockenen Fußes*, with a dry foot; *stehenden Fußes*, without loss of time; *alten Ursprungs*, of old original; *eine Art wollenen Zeuges*, a kind of worsted, &c. The repetition of *er* is not so unharmonious; indeed it is less so than *en* twice following; and I think it preferable to say, *guter, süßer, frischer Milch*, instead of *guter, süßen, frischen Milch*. The termination *er* is, as we may observe, not always supplanted by *en*, and, perhaps, never need be. Nay, in some instances, the latter, if substituted, would produce a discordant sound, as in the following: *eine Reihe wohlklingender Deutscher Verse*, a series of harmonious German verses; *Uebersetzungen alter Griechischer, und Lateinischer Schriftsteller*, translations of ancient Greek and Latin authors. He who is competent to judge of the sound of the German language, would, in those examples, not prefer the termination *en* to that of *er*, in *Deutschen, Griechischen, Lateinischen*. For which reason it is greatly to blame, when we see the *er* unnecessarily exchanged, as in these instances: *Nach Bedä guten*

Anleitung, after the good precepts of Beda; mit deines Vaters gütigen Erlaubniß, with your father's kind permission; um Amaliens schönen Gestalt willen, for the sake of Amelia's beautiful countenance; Alcests weisen Ermahnung eingedenk, mindful of Alcest's wise admonition: where it should be, guter, gütiger, schöner, weiser.—The termination *en* is peculiar to the third and fourth forms, so that, when it is adopted, as in the above, an intermixture of the forms may be said to take place.

2. It is doubtful, whether after the following plurals, *alle*, all; *wenige*, few; *mehrere*, many, several; *etliche*, some; *einige*, some; *manche*, several; *solche*, such; *selbige*, such, the adjectives ought to be placed in the second, or in the following forms. And it is to be remarked, that in the nominative and accusative case the second form is generally used after *einige*, *etliche*, *viele*, *wenige*, *manche*, *mehrere*; and after *alle*, *selbige*, *solche*, it may be used; but in the genitive and dative, the termination *en*, of the subsequent forms, should always be employed. Examples:

Plural.

Nom. Einige gute Leute, some good people.

Gen. Einiger guten Leute, of some

Dat. Einigen guten Leute, to some

Acc. Einige gute Leute, some good people.

Nom. Alle gute Menschen, all good men.

Gen. Aller guten Menschen, of all

Dat. Allen guten Menschen, to all

Acc. Alle gute Menschen, all good men.

3. Words that are not declined, such as adverbs, some adjectives, and most of the cardinal numbers, have no influence upon the adjective. When, therefore, after such words, it is followed by a substantive, it will appear in the second form. For example: sing. masc. *sehr guter Wein*, very good wine; pl. *sehr gute Menschen*, very good men; sing. fem. *etwas kalte Milch*, some cold milk; sing. neut. *viel weißes Brot*, a great deal of (or much) white bread; *wenig starkes Bier*, a small quantity of (or little) strong beer. Plural, with numerals: *zwanzig tapfere Männer*, twenty brave men; *zehn schöne Frauen*, ten handsome women; *vier kleine Kinder*, four little children. Sing. and pl. *allerley buntes Papier*, all kinds of variegated paper; *allerley schöne Sachen*, all sorts of fine things. The same with *allerhand*, all kinds.

THE THIRD FORM.

With the definite article, or a pronoun demonstrative, relative, or interrogative, and the adjectives *jeder*, *jedweder*, *jeglicher*, *mancher*, preceding. It is thus declined:

1. *With the definite Article.**Singular.*

Nom.	Der gute,	die gute,	das gute.
Gen.	Des guten,	der guten,	des guten.
Dat.	Dem guten,	der guten,	dem guten.
Acc.	Den guten,	die gute,	das gute.

Plural.

Nom. Die guten.

Gen. Der guten.

Dat. Den guten.

Acc. Die guten.

Examples: nom. Der gute Mann, the good man; die gute Frau, the good woman; das gute Kind, the good child; gen. Des guten Mannes, der guten Frau, des guten Kindes, &c.

2. *With a Pronoun Demonstrative.**Singular.*

Nom. Dieser gute, diese gute, dieses gute.

Gen. Dieses guten, dieser guten, dieses guten.

Dat. Diesem guten, dieser guten, diesem guten.

Acc. Diesen guten, diese gute, dieses gute.

Plural.

Nom. Diese guten.

Gen. Dieser guten.

Dat. Diesen guten.

Acc. Diese guten.

Examples: Dieser gute Sohn, this good son; diese gute Tochter, this good daughter; dieses gute Kind, this good child, &c.

3. With a Pronoun Relative, or Interrogative.

Singular.

Nom.	Welcher gute,	welche gute,	welches gute.
Gen.	Welches guten,	welcher guten,	welches guten.
Dat.	Welchem guten,	welcher guten,	welchem guten.
Acc.	Welchen guten,	welche gute,	welches gute.

Plural.

Nom. Welche guten.

Gen. Welcher guten.

Dat. Welchen guten.

Acc. Welche guten.

Examples: Welcher gute Mann, which good man; welche gute Frau, which good woman; welches gute Kind, which good child, &c.—Welcher, as *which*, in English, is used both in a relative, and interrogative signification.

4. With the Adjectives jeder, jedweder, jeglicher, signifying each, every.

Singular.

Nom.	Jeder gute,	jede gute,	jedes gute.
Gen.	Jedes guten,	jeder guten,	jedes guten.
Dat.	Jedem guten,	jeder guten,	jedem guten.
Acc.	Jeden guten,	jede gute,	jedes gute.

No Plural.

Examples: Jeder gute Mann, every good man; jede gute Frau, jedes gute Kind, &c. In the like

manner, jedweder, jedwede, jedwedes, and jeglicher, jegliche, jegliches, mancher, many a —.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The demonstrative pronouns, as many as there are, (see the following chapter) govern the adjective in this form. Of relatives and interrogatives there are none, which can be joined with an adjective, besides the one mentioned.

2. Some participles, which are used in a demonstrative sense, seem to have the same power when prefixed. Of this description are, besagt, aforesaid; folgend, following; gedacht, aforementioned. For example: besagter alte Mann, the said old man; gedachtes neue Haus, the new house mentioned; folgendes schöne Werk, the following beautiful work. Sing. nom. besagter alte Mann, the said old man; gen. besagtes alten Mannes, of the said old man; dat. besagtem alten Manne, to —; acc. besagten alten Mann, the said old man. Plural, nom. besagte alten Männer, the said old men; gen. besagter alten Männer, of —; dat. besagten alten Männern, to —; Acc. besagte alten Männer, the said old men; &c.

THE FOURTH FORM.

After the indefinite article, after numerals, which are declined, after the negative adjective kein, none; and after pronouns personal and possessive. The declension is as follows:

1. With the Indefinite Article, and some Numerals.

Singular.

Nom.	Ein guter,	eine gute,	ein gutes.
Gen.	Eines guten,	einer guten,	eines guten.
Dat.	Einem guten,	einer guten,	einem guten.
Acc.	Einen guten,	eine gute,	ein gutes.

Examples: Ein guter Mann, a good man; eine gute Frau; ein gutes Kind. Gen. Eines guten Mannes, &c.

There is no plural to the indefinite article. It serves also for the numeral *one*, and is declined in the same manner. Of the other numerals, *zwei*, two, and *drei*, three, are alone declinable, in the genitive and dative, when put before adjectives, in this manner:

Plural.

Nom.	
Gen.	Zweyer (dreier) guten, of two (three) good, for instance, people.
Dat.	Zweyen, (dreien) guten, to —

Note. The word *beide*, both, may be considered as a numeral; and the adjective after it, be declined in the fourth form.

2. With the Negative *kein*, none.

Nom.	Kein guter,	keine gute,	kein gutes.
Gen.	Keines guten,	keiner guten,	keines guten.
Dat.	Keinem guten,	keiner guten,	keinem guten.
Acc.	Keinen guten,	keine gute,	kein gutes.

Plural.

Nom.	Keine guten.
Gen.	Keiner guten.
Dat.	Keinen guten.
Acc.	Keine guten.

Examples: *Kein guter Mann*, no good man,
keine gute Frau, *kein gutes Kind*, &c.

3. With a Personal Pronoun.

Singular.

Nom.	<i>Ich</i> armen,	<i>Ich</i> arme,	<i>Ich</i> armes.
Gen.	not usual, in the personal pronouns.		
Dat.	<i>Mir</i> armen,	<i>Mir</i> armen,	<i>Mir</i> armen.
Acc.	<i>Mich</i> armen,	<i>Mich</i> arme,	<i>Mich</i> armes.

Plural.

Nom.	<i>Wir</i> armen.
Gen.	not used.
Dat.	<i>Uns</i> armen.
Acc.	<i>Uns</i> armen.

The same with the other personal pronouns,
Du, thou; *Er*, he; *Sie*, she.

Examples : Ich armer Mann ; I poor man ; Ich arme Frau, I poor woman. Ich armes Kind, I poor child, &c.

4. With a Possessive Pronoun.

Singular.

Nom. Mein guter, meine gute, mein gutes.
 Gen. Meines guten, meiner guten, meines guten.
 Dat. Meinem guten, meiner guten, meinem guten.
 Acc. Meinen guten, meine gute, mein gutes.

Plural.

Nom. Meine guten.
 Gen. Meiner guten.
 Dat. Meinen guten.
 Acc. Meine guten.

The same with the other possessives, as Dein, thy ; sein, his, its ; ihr, her ; unser, our ; euer, your ; ihr, their.

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE ADJECTIVES.

I. When the adjective, in the first form, ends in *el* or *en*, the *e* before *l* and *r*, is in the other forms generally thrown out, for instance : Edel, noble,

2d form, edler, edle, edles.

Gen. edles, edler, edles, &c.

3d form, der edle, die edle, das edle.

Gen. des edlen, der edlen, des edlen, &c.

4th form, ein edler, eine edle, ein edles.

Gen. eines edlen, einer edlen, eines edlen, &c.

I. In the same manner: Lauter, pure, unmined

2d form, lauter, laute, lautes.

Gen. lautes, lauter, lautes, &c.

3d form der laute, die laute, das laute, &c.

4th form, ein lauter, eine laute, ein lautes.

Frequently the *e*, which remains, is put before *l* and *r*, when the termination is in *n*, as *edeln*, instead of *edlen*, *lautern*, instead of *lautren*. But this is not so consistent with the rule, as the other mode.

II. Some adjectives are never declined, and others only, when an article, or pronoun, is before them. Of the first description are, *etwas*, something of, some; *allerhand*, and *allerley*, both signifying of various kinds or sorts. Examples: *Etwas Bier*, some beer; *allerley Wein*, wine of various, or all kinds; *allerhand Sachen*, things of all kinds. Of the second class are, *ganz*, all, whole; *halb*, half. Examples: without an article or pronoun, *ganz Deutschland*, all Germany, or whole Germany; *halb Frankreich*, half France, that is, the half of France: with an article or pronoun, *der ganze Stamm*, the whole tribe, gen. *des ganzen Stammes*, &c. *diese ganze Stadt*, this whole town; *mein ganzes Dorf*, my whole village; *die halbe Welt*, half the world, &c.

III. The adjectives, *viel*, much, and *wenig*, little are frequently used in the first or adverbial form, before substantives; as *viel Wein*, much wine; *wenig Wein*, little wine, instead of *vieler*, *weniger Wein*. So in the other genders, *viel Milch*, *wenig*

Milch, much milk, *little milk*, instead of *viel*, *wenige*; *viel Bier*, much beer, *little beer*, instead of *vielen*, *weniges*. This does not correspond with the rule, yet it is very prevalent! Usage often predominates over regularity. It is particularly so in *wenig*, which is left in its adverbial state, even though a preposition should go before, as *mit wenig Geld*, with little money. When the definite article, or any pronoun, stands before them, they must be declined, as *das viele Geld*, the great quantity of money; gen. *des vielen Geldes*, &c. *dieses viele Geld*, this great quantity of money; *mein vieles Geld*, my great quantity of money; *das wenige Geld*, the small quantity of money; *jenes weniges Geld*, that small quantity of money; *dein wenig Geld*, thy small quantity of money, &c.

Nor is it usual to leave *viel* in the first form, after a preposition, as *mit vielem Gelde*, with much money. Those deviations should be as much limited as possible, and it is therefore advisable to abstain from them, as far as custom will allow. We may, for instance, without giving offence, say, *weniges Geld*, *vielen Geld*, instead of *wenig*, *viel*; *mit wenigem Gelde*, instead of *mit wenig*; and consequently we ought to say so, if we wish to speak with grammatical accuracy.—*Wenig* with the indefinite article before it, is always adverbial, that is to say, not declined, neither itself nor the article, as *ein wenig Wein*, a little wine; *mit ein wenig Wein*, with a little wine; *um ein wenig Weins willen*, for the sake of a little wine: but it has the declinable termination, after that article, when it is used as a

substantive by itself, as *ein Weniges*, a small quantity.—*Viel* and *wenig* sometimes govern the genitive case, as *viel Volkes*, a great multitude of people; *viel Viehes*, a great number of cattle; *wenig Wassers*, a small quantity of water. This is rather an antiquated mode of speaking: but it is not uncommon to use those words after the genitive case, in the following and similar phrases: *Es giebt der gottlosen Leute viel*, there is a great number of wicked people; *es sind unser viel*, there are many of us; *es sind ihrer wenig*, there are few of them. The words, *der gottlosen Leute*, *unser*, *ihrer*, are genitive cases, governed by *viel* and *wenig*. In a question, *viel* and *wenig* must naturally be placed before the genitive, as *wie viel sind ihrer*, how many are there of them; *wie wenig sind ihrer*, how few are there of them.—What has been said of *viel* and *wenig*, applies in every particular to their comparatives, *mehr*, more, and *weniger*, less. These also stand adverbially, or in the first form, before substantives, and have the same privileges, and the same limitations, as the former. We therefore meet with, *mehr Geld*, more money, and *weniger Geld*, less money; instead of *mehres*, *wenigeres*, &c. And like the others, they sometimes govern the genitive case, as *solcher Leute mehr*, more such people; *unser sind mehr*, there are more of us; *ihrer sind weniger*, there are fewer of them: where, *solcher Leute*, *unser*, *ihrer*, are genitive cases.

IV. Sometimes we find common adjectives used in the first, when they should be in one of the sub-

sequent forms: for instance *Schön Wetter*, fine weather, instead of *schönes Wetter*; *ein groß Stück*, a great piece of luck, instead of *ein großes Stück*; *ein reizend Weib*, a charming woman, instead of *ein reizendes Weib*; *ein gut Glas Wein*, a good glass of wine, for, *ein gutes Glas Wein*. But this is fundamentally wrong, and must not be imitated. Neither the authority of individuals, nor custom, are sufficient to defend it.

V. When two adjectives of the same termination are before one substantive, the termination of the first is sometimes, for the sake of brevity, suppressed, as *ein roth- und weißes Gesicht*, a red and white face, for *ein rothes und weißes*; *Personen männ- und weiblichen Geschlechtes*, persons of the male and female sex, for *männlichen*; *ein genüg- und arbeitsamer Mensch*, a contented and industrious man, for *genügsamer*; *bley- und kupferartiges Erz*, ore containing lead and copper, for *bleyartiges*; *ein gram- und sorgenfreies Gemüth*, a mind free from grief and sorrow, for *gramsfreies*. This abbreviation should not be unnecessarily adopted; but in particular instances it is convenient, and sounds well. We meet with it also in nouns substantive, as *Genüg- und Arbeitsamkeit*, contentment and industry, for *Genügsamkeit*. It is generally indicated by two small horizontal lines (-).

VI. All participles are of the nature of adjectives. They are capable of the same modifications, according to four forms, and subject to the same laws. See of them below.

VII. Adjectives may be converted into substantives. This is either done elliptically, or abstractedly.

1. *Elliptically*, when a substantive is understood. Examples: *Der Gelehrte* (supply *Mann*) the learned man, the scholar; *der Weise*, or *Weltweise*, (supply *Mann*) the wise man, the philosopher; *der Liebste*, or *der Geliebte*, (sup. *Mann*) the beloved man, the lover; (*der Liebste* also signifies the husband; *die Liebste*, the wife;) *der Oberste*, (sup. *Mann*) the man highest in command, the colonel; *der Gesandte*, (sup. *Mann*) the man sent, the ambassador; *der Bediente*, for *Bedienende* (sup. *Mann*) the waiting man, the man servant; *der Verwandte*, (sup. *Mann*) the man related, the relation; *der Bekannte*, (sup. *Mann*) the man, with whom we are acquainted, the acquaintance. *Die Schöne*, (sup. *Frau*, or *Frauensperson*) the fair lady, the fair one; *die Geliebte*, or *Liebste*, (sup. *Frau*, or *Frauensperson*) the beloved woman; *die Bekannte*, (sup. *Frau*, or *Frauensperson*) the female acquaintance; *die Verwandte*, (sup. *Frauensperson*) the female relation. *Das Große*, (sup. *Wesen*, being) that which is great; *das Schöne*, (sup. *Wesen*) that which is beautiful; *das Erhabene*, that which is sublime; *das Edle*, that which is noble. — Of these substantives it must be observed, that in their mode of declension they remain liable to the three last forms of adjectives; namely, when no article precedes, they follow the second form, as in the plural *Gelehrte*, gen. *Gelehrter*, dat. *Gelehrten*, acc. *Gelehrte*; when the de-

finite article, or pronoun demonstrative, &c. precedes, the third, as sing. nom. Der Bediente, the servant, gen. des Bedienten, dat. dem Bedienten, acc. den Bedienten. Plur. nom. Die Bedienten, gen. der Bedienten, dat. den Bedienten, acc. die Bedienten. After the indefinite article, or a pronoun possessive, &c. the fourth form, as, sing. nom. Mein Bekannter, my man acquaintance, gen. meines Bekannten, dat. meinem Bekannten, acc. meinen Bekannten. So in the feminine gender, sing. nom. Meine Bekannte, my woman acquaintance, gen. meiner Bekannten, dat. meiner Bekannten, acc. meine Bekannte. Plur. nom. Meine Bekannten, gen. meiner Bekannten, dat. meinen Bekannten, acc. meine Bekannten. In the same way all the rest are declined. But

2. Those which are made substantives *abstractedly*, follow a different manner. They represent the quality of the adjective abstracted, that means, as an object of itself, not as an adjunct to another; for instance, Das Blau, the quality of blue, the colour blue; das Weiß, the colour white; das Rund, the quality of round, rotundity, or a round substance. They are made of the first form, by prefixing the article in the neuter gender; and are varied after the second or fourth declension of substantives, as sing. nom. Das Blau, gen. des Blaus, dat. dem Blau, acc. das Blau, &c.

SECT. V.

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

QUALITIES, assigned to persons or things, may exist in them in a certain gradation; for which reason the words denoting qualities, are said to be capable of degrees of comparison. These words are the adjectives; and as we have treated of their declension, it remains to speak of their comparison.

The comparison, in a grammatical sense, is generally effected by two degrees, one of them, containing the idea *more*, is called the *comparative*; and the other, expressing the notion *most*, is denominated the *superlative*.

These degrees are in German, as in English, produced by the addition of certain letters or syllables to the adjectives: namely, the comparative by that of *er* or *er*, and the superlative by that of *st* or *est*.

This perfectly corresponds with the English language, and will be easily understood by the reader. If, for instance, in English, the comparative degree of the adjective *bold* is to be formed, it will be done by adding *er* to it, *bolder*; and if the superlative is required, the addition of *est* will answer that purpose, *boldest*. It is the same in German: and we shall, therefore, first consider

THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

Rule. Take the adjective in its first form (see Declension of Adjectives) and add to it *er*; or *r* only, when it ends in *e*: you will then have the comparative degree of the first form. Examples: Schön, handsome, comparative, schöner, handsomer; enge, narrow, comparative, enger, narrower.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are in the comparative degree changed into the diphthongs *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, as arm, poor, compar. ärmer, poorer; groß, great, compar. größer, greater; kurz, short, compar. kürzer, shorter; jung, young, compar. jünger, younger. *u* remains unaltered, as raub, compar. räuber. Also the following words are exempt from the transmutation: *a.* Bläß, bunt, fahl, falsch, froh, gerade, geschlank, glatt, hohl, hold, kahl, karg, knapp, lahm, laß (weary,) los (loose,) losc (wanton, frolicksome,) matt, morsch, nackt, platt, plump, roh, rund, sacht, sanft, satt, schlaff, schlank, starr, stolz, straff, stumpf, toll, voll. *b.* Those which end in *haft* and *sam*, as lasterhaft, tugendhaft, furchsam. *c.* The participles, and such as are shaped like participles, though we cannot conveniently deduce them from verbs. Of this description are, abgeschmactt, bejahrt, bekannt, betagt, bewandert, bewandt, gewogen, verwogen, verdammt, verbuhlt, verhaßt, verrucht, verschlagen, verwandt, vollkommen, wohlhabend.

2. In adjectives, which end in *el*, the *e* before the *l*, is ejected in the comparative degree, as *edel*, noble, compar. *edler* (for *edeler*) more noble; *dunkel*, dark, compar. *dunkler* (for *dunkeler*) darker. A similar omission takes sometimes place in those ending in *en* and *er*, as *trocken*, dry, compar. *trockner*, (for *trockener*) more dry; *offen*, open, compar. *offner* (for *offener*) more open; *vollkommen*, perfect, compar. *vollkommner* (for *vollkommener*); *bitter*, bitter, compar. *bitterer*; *tapfer*, brave, compar. *tapf-
rer*. But in the latter, (I mean those in *en* and *er*) the elision of the *e* is less necessary and less common; and should not be admitted, except where metre, or some other reason, requires it.

3. The comparative degree is used in the four forms of adjectives. *a.* In the first, or adverbial: as, *Homer ist schöner als Virgil*, Homer is more beautiful than Virgil; *die Schwester ist älter als der Bruder*, the sister is older than the brother; *das Kind ist weiser als der Vater*, the child is more wise than the father. *Die Römer waren mächtiger als die Griechen*, the Romans were more powerful than the Grecians. In these examples, the comparative stands in the first form, as being neither preceded by an article, nor followed by a substantive.—*b.* The second form, before a substantive without an article or pronoun antecedent. The terminations *er, e, es*, are added to the first form: as sing. nom. *Schönerer, schönere, schöneres*; *größerer, größere, größeres*; gen. *größerer, größerer, größeres*; dat. *größerem, größerer, größerem*; acc. *größerem, größere, größeres*. Plur. nom. *Größere*, gen. *größerer*, dat.

größeren, acc. größere. Examples: In Armuth zu
 seyn ist größerer Ruhm (größere Ehre—größeres
 Glück) als reich und lasterhaft zu leben, to die in
 poverty is greater glory (greater honour—greater
 happiness) than to live rich and vicious. Die
 Engländer sind größere Leute als die Franzosen, the
 English are taller people than the French. Here
 we have the second form, because a substantive
 follows.—c. The third form, with the definite ar-
 ticle, or a pronoun demonstrative or relative, pre-
 ceding. In this manner: sing. nom. Der schönere,
 die schönere, das schönere; gen. des schöneren, der
 schöneren, des schöneren; dat. dem schöneren, der
 schöneren, dem schöneren; acc. den schöneren, die
 schönere, das schönere. Plur. nom. Die schöneren,
 gen. der schöneren, dat. den schöneren, acc. die schö-
 neren. Examples: Der größere Mann, the greater
 man; die größere Frau, the greater woman; das
 größere Kind, the greater child. Dieser schönere
 Mann, diese schönere Frau, dieses schönere Kind.
 The fourth form, with the indefinite article, or a
 personal and possessive pronoun, going before:
 sing. nom. Ein größerer, eine größere, ein größeres;
 gen. eines größeren, einer größeren, eines größeren;
 dat. einem größeren, einer größeren, einem größeren;
 acc. einen größeren, eine größere, ein größeres. For
 example: Es ist ein größerer Verlust, eines Freundes
 beraubt zu werden, als vieler Schätze, it is a greater
 loss to be deprived of a friend, than of many trea-
 sures. So in the other genders: eine größere De-
 müthigung, a greater mortification, fem.—ein grö-
 ßeres Unglück, a greater misfortune, neuter.

4. In the general remarks on the adjectives an error has been noticed, which consists in using the first or adverbial form, where a declinable form ought to be employed. The same is to be met with in the comparative degree. We hear, and read, for instance, *Schöner Wetter*, instead of *Schöneres Wetter*, finer weather; *ein größer Glück*, for *ein größeres Glück*, a greater piece of luck. That this is wrong, and should be carefully avoided, is, I hope, sufficiently impressed upon the mind of the reader by what has been said above.

5. Of the adjectives, which are irregular in their comparison, and of those, which do not admit the terminations of the comparative, see the general remarks below.

THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

Rule. Add *st* or *est* to the first form of adjectives: this raises them to the superlative degree; as *schön*, fine, superl. *schönst*, finest; *groß*, great, superl. *größest*, greatest.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are changed into the diphthongs *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, with the exceptions adduced in the comparative degree. Obs. 1.

2. The adjectives in *e*, *b*, *ch*, *f*, *g*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *nd*, *r*, form the superlative in *st*: as *geschwinde*, sup. *geschwindest*; *leise*, sup. *leifest*; *grob*, sup. *gröbst*; *herrlich*, sup. *herrlichst*; *scharf*, sup. *scharfst*; *arg*, sup. *argst*;

jüng, sup. jüngst; schmal, sup. schmalst; furchsam, sup. furchsamst; schön, sup. schönst; reich, sup. reichst; heiter, sup. heiterst. — In those which end in *e*, this *e* is thrown out after the letters *b* and *g*, as herbe, sup. herbst; enge, sup. engst.

3. Those in *au*, *eu*, *ey*; and in *d*, *h*, *k*, *ck*, *ff*, *ll*, *mm*, *nn*, *rr*, *pf*, *s* or *ss*; *sch*, *st*, *t*, *z*, make the superlative degree in *est*. For example: blau, sup. blauest; neu, sup. neuest; frey, sup. freiest; wild, sup. wildest; roh, sup. rohest; schlant, sup. schlantest; stark, sup. stärkest; dick, sup. dickest; schlaff, sup. schlaffest; toll, sup. tolltest; dünn, sup. dünnest; dünn, sup. dünnest; dürr, sup. dürrtest; stumpf, sup. stumpfest; süß, sup. süßest; groß, sup. größest; morsch, sup. morschest; fest, sup. festest; hart, sup. härtest; kurz, sup. kürzest. Yet even in these the *e* before *st* is frequently thrown out, if euphony does not quite forbid it; as der dünnste, der dünnste, der stärkste, der beste; though it is better to adhere to the rule.

4. When *ss* precedes the termination of the superlative, *est* is sometimes changed into *t*. This is generally done in the word groß, great; of which the superlative is expressed by größt, instead of größest; in the third form, der größte, the greatest, for größteste. We observe the same contraction in other adjectives, though it is not so common; as in süß, sup. third form, der süßte, the sweetest, for süßeste; blaß, sup. der blasseste, the palest. Where it is not authorized by general practice, it should, as an irregularity, be avoided. The superlative of words ending in *isch*, having of itself a very dis-

greeable sound, is now and then supposed to be rendered less offensive by putting *t* for *est*; as of *viehisch*, beastly, sup. third form, *der viehischte*, the most beastly, for *der viehischeste*; of *baurisch*, clownish, *der baurischte*, for *baurischeste*. But even by this alteration such words do not become harmonious; and it is best to supersede them, if it can be done.

5. The superlative degree is, like the comparative, capable of the four forms of adjectives; though it is not usually met with in all of them. The most frequent is the third form, with the definite article, as *der schönste*, the handsomest; *der neueste*, the newest; gen. *des schönsten*, *des neuesten*; dat. *dem schönsten*, *dem neuesten*, &c. See the declension of adjectives. Next to the third, the first or adverbial form, is often used; but, properly speaking, not that form itself, but a substitute for it. This consists in the dative case singular of the third form, with the word *am* prefixed: as *am schönsten*, *am neuesten*. The following phrases, therefore, *it is finest*, *it is newest*, must be rendered by, *es ist am schönsten*, *am neuesten*. Such a circumlocution will appear singular, and requires an explanation. *Am* is put for *an dem*; *an* being a preposition which denotes *on*, *nearest*, or *next to*; and *dem*, the dative of the definite article; consequently *am schönsten* literally signifies *next to that, which is finest*; and afterwards simply expresses the superlative degree in its first form, without any collateral meaning. It will be useful to subjoin a few examples: *Dieses Frauenzimmer ist am schönsten, wenn sie*

sich nicht schminkt, this lady is handsomest, or most handsome, when she does not paint herself. *Jener Redner ist immer am größten, wenn er sich an die Leidenschaften wendet,* that orator is always greatest when he addresses the passions. *Es wird am besten seyn, heute zu Hause zu bleiben,* it will be best to stay at home to-day. *Derjenige Mann ist am weisesten, welcher ein ruhiges Leben führt,* that man is wisest, or the most wise, who leads a quiet life. *Diejenige Frau ist am klügsten, welche ihren Haushalt gut besorgt,* that woman is most prudent, who takes good care of her domestick concerns. *Dasjenige Kind ist am liebenswürdigsten, welches folgsam ist,* that child is most amiable, which is tractable and obedient. *Diejenigen Leute sind am vernünftigsten, welche Vorurtheilen am wenigsten unterworfen sind,* those people are most reasonable, who are least subject to prejudices. It is to be understood, that, instead of the former, the third form of the superlative may be adapted to the same idea. For instance, instead of *it will be best to stay at home,* we may say, *it will be the best to stay at home.* *Es wird das beste seyn, &c. for that woman is most prudent, who, &c.* we may express ourselves by saying, *that woman is the most prudent, who, &c.* *Diejenige Frau ist die klügste, welche, &c.*—We find the prepositions *auf*, upon, and *zu*, to, employed for a similar purpose with the superlative degree. They are then, like *an*, always contracted with the article: *auf das*, into *aufs*; *zu dem*, into *zum*. But their signification is not so extensive as that of *am*. They only describe the manner, in which a

thing is done, or exists: for example, *auf's schönste eingerichtet*, arranged in the finest manner; *auf's vollkommenste ausgeführt*, executed in the most perfect manner. *Auf* governs the accusative, and the adjective therefore ends in *e*, which is the termination of the neuter of that case, in the third form. *Zu* is joined with the dative, as *zum schönsten*, in the finest manner; *zum vollkommensten*, in the most perfect manner. The use of the two prepositions last mentioned is not so classical as the former, and more frequent in common conversation, and among those, who pay no great attention to their mode of speaking, than in good writing, or in refined and elegant circles of society.

—The first or adverbial form of the superlative degree, in its original state, perhaps only appears in the word *allerliebste*, most lovely of all: as *das ist allerliebste*, that is most lovely. But even here it is not quite genuine; for the word *aller* disguises it nearly as much as *am*, *auf*, or *zum*; for we could not say, *das ist liebste*. If it be remarked, that the following, *äußerste*, *höchste*, *jüngste*, *längste*, *meiste*, *gehorsamste*, *gnädigste*, *freundlichste*, *verbindlichste*, *verbundenste*, and others, are superlatives of the first form; it must be considered, that they are mere adverbs, when thus used, and have not the nature of adjectives. They will be mentioned in their proper place.—

The second form of the superlative chiefly occurs in the vocative case, which is like the nominative, as sing. *liebster Bruder*, dearest brother; *theuerste Schwester*, dearest sister; *schönstes Kind*, most charming child; plur. *würdigste Freunde*, most wor-

thy friends.—In the fourth form the superlative is to be met with after the personal and possessive pronouns, as *Ich ärmster Mensch*, I poorest man; *du theurster Bruder*, thou dearest brother; *du liebste Schwester*, thou dearest sister; *ihr schönsten Kinder*, ye most charming children; *mein liebster Bruder*, my dearest brother; *deine liebste Schwester*, thy dearest sister: and so with the rest. For the declension of this form we refer the reader to the foregoing section.

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

I. Some adjectives do not admit of a comparison by means of additional terminations. They are, *angst*, *elgedent*, *feind*, *gar*, *gram*, *recht*, *unrecht*, *theilhaft*. Others refuse it partly. Of this kind are the participles, and adjectives ending in *haft*, *ich*, *isch*, which only suffer the comparative degree in the first form. We may say, *gehärteter*, *gegründeter*, in the first form, more hardened, more grounded, from the participles *gehärtet*, *gegründet*; but the language would revolt at the sound of the following forms: *gehärteterer*, *gehärtetere*; *gehärteteres*; or *der gehärtetere*; *ein gegründeterer*, *eine gegründetere*, *ein gegründeteres*. So in the adjectives, *lebhaft*, *gewissenhaft*, *lächerlich*, *veränderlich*, *baurisch*, *verschwenderisch*, &c. it is allowable to make use of the first form, *lebhafter*, *gewissenhafter*, *lächerlicher*, *verändertlicher*, *baurischer*, *verschwenderischer*, &c. but euphony rejects the

other forms, *ein lebhafterer, der lächerlichere, &c.* The superlative degree is not deemed offensive in these instances. It is perfectly consistent with good language, to say *der lebhafteste, der lächerlichste*, and even, *der gegründetste, der gehärtetste*; though it does not sound so well, when the adjective ends in *isch*, as *der bäuerischste*, and is for this reason avoided, if a synonymous term can be obtained.

II. When the degrees of comparison are not expressed by the termination, certain adverbs are employed to convey the notion: namely, *mehr*, more, for the comparative; and *am meisten*, most, for the superlative. For example: *feind*, inimical; *mehr feind*, more inimical, *am meisten feind*; *theilhaft*, partaking, *mehr theilhaft*, *am meisten theilhaft*. It must be observed, that *mehr* may be used in all forms, but *am meisten* can only be joined with the first. Those adverbs are sometimes put to adjectives that are capable of the comparative terminations, when the sound of the word is not sufficiently harmonious. We see this, for instance, in *wahr*, true, which in the comparative makes *mahrer*, and in the superlative *wahrest*: instead of which we frequently find *mehr wahr*, *am meisten wahr*; as, *dieses ist noch mehr wahr als jenes*, this is still more true than that. But besides that, and the exceptions in the first observation, all adjectives form their degrees of comparison by means of the terminations, for which the adverbs *mehr*, *am meisten*, cannot be arbitrarily substituted. —However, one circumstance remains to be mentioned, which is, that when two different adjectives

tives are compared with one another, it is to be done by *mehr*: as, *Er ist mehr lustig als traurig*, he is more merry than sad; *Augustus war mehr glücklich als tapfer*, Augustus was more lucky than brave. Here is a comparison made between being merry and being sad; between being lucky and being brave; which must be rendered by *mehr*, not by the comparative degree of one adjective or the other.

III. The following words are irregular in their comparison: *gut*, good, compar. *besser*, superl. *am besten*; *viel*, much, compar. *mehr*, superl. *am meisten*, or *am meisten*.—The comparative degree, *mehr*, when put in a declinable form, generally receives, besides the usual terminations, the syllable *re* before them. The second form of *mehr* should be, *mehrer*, *mehre*, *mehres*, plur. *mehre*: but it is commonly expressed by *mehrerer*, *mehrere*, *mehrerer*, plur. *mehrere*. So *ein mehrerer*, for *ein mehres*. This arose probably from mistaking the declinable ending: and as the superaddition of *re* cannot pretend to euphonick beauty, those are not much to blame, who, in opposition to the prevailing custom, lay it aside, and say *mehres*, and *mehre*. Of the superlative *meist* and *meist*, the first may be preferred as more regular, though the last is more common.—The comparative and superlative degree of the adverb *bold*, are occasionally used as adjectives: the comparative is *ether*, and the superl. *am ehesten*.—*Hoch*, high, makes the comparative *höher*, exchanging the guttural, in the middle for the simple aspirate; but the superlative *am höchsten*.

fen. On the other hand *nahe*, near, has in the comparative *näher*, and in the superlative *am nächsten*, assuming in the latter the guttural instead of the mere *h*. This, however, can hardly be called an irregular comparison.

IV. Some adjectives have the appearance of the comparative degree, though their signification does not correspond with it. They are, *der mittlere*, the middle one; *der äußere*, the exterior; *der innere*, the interior; *der obere*, the superior; *der untere*, the inferior; *der vordere*, the anterior; *der hintere*, the posterior. They all take the superlative: as, *der mittellste*, *der äußerste*, *der innerste*, &c.

SECT. VI.

THE NUMERALS.

We treat of them, according to the old denomination, as *cardinal* and *ordinal numbers*.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| 1. Ein, eine, ein: or, einer, eine, eines. | 8. Acht. |
| 2. Zwei. | 9. Neun. |
| 3. Drey. | 10. Zehen, or Zehn. |
| 4. Vier. | 11. Elf, or Elf. |
| 5. Fünf. | 12. Zwölf. |
| 6. Sechs. | 13. Dreyzehen or dreyzehn. |
| 7. Sieben. | 14. Vierzehn. |
| | 15. Fünfzehn. |

16. Sechzehn. 41. Ein und vierzig.
 17. Siebenzehn, or acht und sieben, &c. sieben-
 siebzehn. 50. Fünfzig.
 18. Achtzehn. 60. Sechzig.
 19. Neunzehn. 70. Siebenzig, or
 20. Zwanzig. siebenzig.
 21. Ein und zwanzig. 80. Achtzig.
 22. Zwey und zwanzig. 90. Neunzig.
 23. Drey und zwanzig. 100. Hundert.
 24. Vier und zwanzig. 101. Hundert und ein.
 25. Fünf und zwanzig. 102. Hundert und
 26. Sechs und zwanzig. zwey, &c.
 27. Sieben und zwanzig. 200. Zwey hundert.
 28. Acht und zwanzig. 300. Drey hundert.
 29. Neun und zwanzig. 1000. Tausend.
 30. Dreißig. 10000. Zehn tausend.
 31. Ein und dreißig. 100000. Hundert tausend.
 32. Zwey und dreißig, &c. A million. Eine Million.
 40. Vierzig.

1799.

Ein tausend sieben hundert und neun und neunzig.

1800.

Achtzehn hundert.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Ein, eine, eine, one, is declined like the inde-
 finite article. It is, in fact, the same word, used
 with a different power. As a numeral it is pro-
 nounced with a stronger accent, as Ein Mann,
 eine Frau. When it stands by itself, but with a

reference to an antecedent substantive, the termination *er* is added in the nominative singular, for the masculine; and *es* for the neuter gender, in the nominative and accusative. For example: *Haben sie einen Hut?* have you got a hat? *Hier ist einer*, here is one: *Hut*, hat, is understood, which is of the masculine gender; and therefore it is *einer*. *Haben sie ein Messer?* have you got a knife? *Hier ist eines*, here is one: namely *Messer*, which being of the neuter gender, the numeral is expressed by *eines*. These additional syllables can, in such a connexion, never be dispensed with, though from carelessness, or ignorance, they are sometimes neglected. When the numeral has no reference to a foregoing substantive, but serves merely to count, they are not absolutely required: yet in simply telling the numbers, as, one, two, three, four, &c. it is usual to give to *Ein* the additional termination of the neuter, but generally contracted, as *Eins*, *zwey*, *drey*, *vier*, &c.—*Ein*, *eine*, *ein*, may have the definite article before it; then it is declined in the third form of adjectives.

Singular.

Nom.	Der eine,	die eine,	das eine,	the one.
Gen.	Des einen,	der einen,	des einen,	of
Dat.	Dem einen,	der einen,	dem einen,	to
Acc.	Den einen,	die eine,	das eine,	the one.

The plural is occasionally used for the purpose of distinguishing certain classes of individual objects; as the ones, and the others, that means, the one set, and the other. Nom. *Die einen*, the ones;

Gen. *der einen*; dat. *den einen*; acc. *die einen*. We also find pronouns prefixed, as, *my one*, *this one*, *which one*. Then *Ein* is considered as an adjective, and put in that form of declension, which is required by each respective pronoun. I have to notice, that the German numeral is never employed in a suppletive capacity, as the English *one*, *a good one*, *this one*, *that one*. Here the number is not meant, but *one* supplies the place of the substantive, which is understood, since those words, *a good*, *this*, *that*, in English, cannot well be put absolutely, without something following. This idiom is foreign to the German language; and the adjectives, as well as the pronouns, may be used by themselves, without any such support.

2. *Zwey* and *drey* frequently indicate the genitive and dative by additional terminations, *zweyer*, *dreyer*; dat. *zweyen*, *dreyen*. It is necessary, when those cases are not otherwise distinguished; as, *die Stärke zweyer Männer*, the strength of two men; *die Macht dreyer Könige*, the power of three kings. In these instances the genitive case could not be recognised, except by the termination of the numerals; but if the article, an adjective, or a pronoun were put, by whose endings the genitive were marked; it would be useless, and wrong, to vary the termination of the numeral: as, *die Stärke der zwey Männer*, the strength of the two men; *die Macht dieser drey Könige*, the power of these three kings; *die Treue zwey aufrichtiger Freunde*, the faith of two sincere friends. Here the genitive case is known by the article; the pro-

noun, and the adjective: the numerals therefore need not be declined. The termination of the dative is not required before substantives: for that case is always sufficiently expressed by the latter. But when the numeral stands without a substantive, the ending should be added as a sign of the dative; for instance, *Ich habe es zweyen gegeben*, I have given it to two; *ich habe es dreyen mitgetheilt*, I have communicated it to three. So after prepositions, *mit zweyen*, with two; *von dreyen*, from three. The other numerals all admit the termination of the dative, in the same circumstances; as *Ich habe es vieren gegeben*, I have given it to four; *ich habe es fiinfen gesagt*, I have told it to five; *ich habe es zwanzigen mitgetheilt*, I have communicated it to twenty, &c. And with prepositions; for example: *auf allen vieren*, upon all fours; *mit sechsen*, with six; *von achten*, by eight, &c. Those which end in *en*, do not receive the additional ending; as *sieben*, *zehn*, *drenzeben*, &c. The termination of the genitive is only peculiar to *zwey* and *drey*; and cannot be assumed by any of the rest. Its office must be supplied by a preposition, or some other mode of expression, when the case is not of itself discernible.—In *hundert*, and *tausend*, the dative cannot be signified by the addition of *en*, *hundert**en*, *tausend**en*: for this would make the number plural, and denote hundreds and thousands. Recourse must, upon this occasion, be had to the indefinite article, as in English; for instance, *Ich habe es einem hundert gegeben*, I have given it to a hundred; *ich habe es einem tausend mitgetheilt*, I have com-

municated it to a thousand: though, after all, this would not be so proper, nor so truly German, as to add some substantive for the sake of distinguishing the case; as *Ich habe es hundert Leuten gesagt*, I have told it to a hundred people; *ich habe es tausend Leuten gegeben*, I have given it to a thousand people.—In compound numbers the termination *en* is not added; as *vor tausend sieben hundert und neun und neunzig*, before the year 1799.

3. It is a peculiarity of the language of Upper Germany, to assign three genders to the second numeral, namely *zween* (or *zweene*) for the masculine; *zwei*, for the feminine; and *zwey*, for the neuter. But those are mistaken who transfer this idiom to the High German, by which no distinction of gender is admitted in the cardinal numbers, except in *one*.

4. In speaking substantively of the cardinal numbers, for instance, as the figures in cards, they are made to be of the feminine gender; as *eine Ein*, or *Eins*, a one; *eine Zwen*, a two, a figure two; *eine Drey*, *eine Vier*: and they end in the plural in *en*, according to the first declension of substantives, as *zwey Einen*, two ones; *zwey Vieren*, two fours, two figures of four; *drey Sechsen*, three sixes; *vier Neunen*, four nines; *alle Achten*, all the eights.

4. *Hundert* and *tausend* are used as substantives, with the neuter article: for instance, *Das Hundert*, the hundred; *das Tausend*, the thousand. This corresponds with the English mode of expression.

5. The reader will of his own accord take no-

tice, how the decimal numbers are composed: it will therefore not be necessary to detain him by any farther remarks.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

These are declined like adjectives, and may be put in the four forms. We will represent them in the third, with the definite article, as being the most common.

The first. Der erste.	The 20th. Der zwanzigste.
2d. Der zweyte.	21st. Der ein und zwanzigste.
3d. Der dritte.	22d. Der zwey und zwanzigste.
4th. Der vierte.	23d. Der drey und zwanzigste.
5th. Der fünfte.	24th. Der vier und zwanzigste.
6th. Der sechste.	25th. Der fünf und zwanzigste.
7th. Der siebente, or siebte.	26th. Der sechs und zwanzigste.
8th. Der achte.	27th. Der sieben und zwanzigste.
9th. Der neunte.	28th. Der acht und zwanzigste.
10th. Der zehnte.	29th. Der neun und zwanzigste.
11th. Der elfte, or elfste.	30th. Der dreißigste.
12th. Der zwölfte.	31st. Der ein und dreißigste.
13th. Der dreyzehnte.	
14th. Der vierzehnte.	
15th. Der funfzehnte.	
16th. Der sechzehnte.	
17th. Der siebenzehnte, or siebzehnte.	
18th. Der achtzehnte.	
19th. Der neunzehnte	

The 32d. Der zwey und dreißigste, &c. The 102d. Der hundert und zweyte.
 40th. Der vierzigste. 103d. Der hundert und dritte, &c.
 41st. Der ein und vierzigste, &c. 200th. Der zwey hundertste.
 50th. Der fünfzigste. 300th. Der drey hundertste.
 60th. Der sechzigste. 1000th. Der tausendste.
 70th. Der siebenzigste, or siebzigste. The one thousand se-
 80th. Der achtzigste. ven hundred and
 90th. Der neunzigste. ninety-ninth.
 100th. Der hundertste. Der tausend sieben hun-
 101st. Der hundert und erste. dert und neun und
 neunzigste.

OBSERVATIONS.

I. It appears, that, in the formation of the ordinals, the second and third numbers are irregular; but the rest follow a certain rule, which consists in adding the termination *te* to the cardinals, from two to nineteen inclusive; and *ste* from twenty to the last.

2. The student can find no difficulty in bringing the ordinals under all the forms of adjectives. The first, or adverbial, however, is not usual. For these numbers resemble the superlative degree in their nature, and do not allow that form. The idea, which, according to the English, should be expressed in the first, may in general be supplied by the third form. For example, instead of

saying, *he is second, third, fourth*, the same notion will be conveyed by turning this into the third form; *he is the second, the third, the fourth*. &c. The second form would be: *Erster, erste, erstes; zweyter, zweyte, zweytes*. Gen. *Erstes, erster, erstes; zweytes, zweyter, zweytes*, &c. Examples: *Erster Abschnitt, zweyte Seite, drittes Kapitel*, first section, second page, third chapter.—Fourth form: *Ein zweyter, eine zweyte, ein zweytes; ein dritter, eine dritte, ein drittes*. Gen. *Eines zweyten, einer zweyten, eines zweyten*, &c. In the same manner after personal and possessive pronouns, as, *Ich dritter Officier*, I, third officer; *mein vierter Irrthum*, my fourth error; *unser fünftes Glas*, our fifth glass; *ihre sechste Boutheille*, their sixth bottle. The third form of course follows after demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns. See Declension of Adjectives.

3. In compound numbers the last only assumes the shape of an ordinal, the foregoing remain cardinals, as *der sechs und neunzigste*, the ninety-sixth; *der tausend sieben hundert und sechs und achtzigste*, the one thousand seven hundred and eighty-sixth.

4. *Der andere* is used as a synonymous term for *der zweyte*. The adjective *ander* signifies both the Latin *alius*, other, and *alter*: and in the latter sense it serves for the second ordinal number.

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE NUMERALS.

Besides the two divisions, into cardinals and ordinals, the numbers suffer a variety of modifica-

tions, which I think proper to mention under the head of general remarks. Let us consider

I. The *partitive* numerals, which are in Latin expressed by *bini, terni, quaterni, quini, deni, &c.* and in English by *two and two, three and three, or two at a time, three at a time, four at a time, &c.* or *every two, every three, every four, every five, &c.* The Germans say, *zwey und zwey, drey und drey*; or *je zwey, je drey, je vier, je zehen, je zwanzig, je dreißig, je vierzig, je funfzig, &c.* Je is an adverb, signifying *ever*, and answers here to the English *at a time*.

II. *Distinctives*. These are in English, *firstly, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, fifthly*; or, *in the first place, in the second place, in the third place, &c.* In German: *Erstlich, or erstens; zweyten, dritten, vierten, fünften, sechsten, siebenten, or siebten; achten, neunten, zehnten, elften, zwölften, dreyzehnten, zwanzigsten, &c.* Also in this manner: *Zum ersten, zum zweyten, or zum andern; zum dritten, zum vierten, zum fünften, &c.* The first is the genitive case of the ordinal, third form, *s*, at the end, being added, instead of the article, *des ersten, des zweyten, des dritten, &c.* And some substantive may be understood after it, as *des ersten Ortes, or ersten Ortes; zweyten Ortes, &c.* in the first place, &c. The genitive case is sometimes put where a preposition ought to be supplied, as will be taught in the second part of this grammar. The other mode is in the dative case, with the preposition *zu* before it, being contracted with the article; *zum*

for *zu dem*. Here likewise a substantive may be understood.

III. *Dimidiatives*, or numbers that halve. They are composed of the ordinals, and the word *halb*, half. Their signification is extraordinary: for example, *drittehalb*, of *der dritte* and *halb*, means *two and a half*, two whole ones and the third half; *viertehalb*, of *der vierte* and *halb*, *three and a half*, or three whole ones and the fourth half*. It is not usual to say *zweitehalb*, but *anderthalb*, which is *one and a half*, or one whole and the second half. Therefore we proceed in this manner: *anderthalb* $1\frac{1}{2}$, *drittehalb* $2\frac{1}{2}$, *viertehalb* $3\frac{1}{2}$, *fünftehalb* $4\frac{1}{2}$, *sechstehalb* $5\frac{1}{2}$, *siebtehalb*, or *siebtehalb* $6\frac{1}{2}$, *achtehalb* $7\frac{1}{2}$, *neuntehalb* $8\frac{1}{2}$, *zehntehalb* $9\frac{1}{2}$, *elftehalb*, or *elftehalb* $10\frac{1}{2}$, *zwölfttehalb* $11\frac{1}{2}$, *dreizehntehalb* $12\frac{1}{2}$, *vierzigstehalb* $19\frac{1}{2}$, *ein und zwanzigstehalb* $20\frac{1}{2}$, &c. For example: *anderthalb Monate*, one month and a half; *drittehalb Wochen*, two weeks and a half; *viertehalb Jahre*, three years and a half; *sechstehalb Guineen*, five guineas and a half, &c. These numerals are not declined, except that, like the cardinals, they may perhaps admit the termination *en* of the dative, when they are put absolutely. In *anderthalb* the *e* is omitted before *halb*, in the rest euphony seems to require it, though some leave it out in all.

IV. *Variatives*, which denote a variety according to the number. These are made by adding *erley* to the cardinals, as *zweyerley*, of two kinds; *dreyer-*

* Something analogous to this exists in the Greek language.

ten, of three kinds; viererley, of four kinds; fünferley, of five kinds; sechserley, of six kinds; siebenerley, of seven kinds; zwanzigerley, of twenty kinds, &c. For example: Dreyerley Wein, wine of three different sorts; zweyerley Münze, coin of two different sorts; sechserley Bänder, ribbons of six different kinds. In the same manner we may say allerley, of all kinds, and eimerley, of the same kind. The latter, indeed, cannot be called a variative, though it belongs to the same class with the foregoing. The variatives are not declined.

V. We have to notice some adjectives, composed with numerals. Such are, Einsfach, simple un compounded; zweysach, twofold; dreysach, threefold; viersach, fünsach, sechsfach, achtsach, &c. Of nearly the same signification are those ending in fältig: as zweyfältig, dreysfältig, vierfältig, &c.; only einfältig denotes simple, artless, silly. Similar compositions are made from the cardinal numbers and substantives, as zweyppfundig, of two pounds; dreypfundig, of three pounds; vier und zwanzigpfundig, of twenty-four pounds; from zwey, drey, vier und zwanzig, and das Pfund, the pound. Dreyeckig, of three corners, or angles, three cornered, triangular; viereckig, of four angles, square; fünfeckig, of five corners; from drey, vier, fünf, and die Ecke, the corner. These, and others of the like description, are adjectives, and may be varied according to the four forms.

VI. The fractional numbers are, with the exception of halbh, half, made of the ordinals, by the addition of l to the nominative of the third form

For example: from *der dritte*, you derive *ein Drittel*, a third part, or one third; from *der vierte*, *ein Viertel*, a fourth part, a quarter. In the same manner, *ein Fünftel*, $\frac{1}{5}$ th; *ein Sechstel*, $\frac{1}{6}$ th; *ein Siebtel*, or *Siebtel*, $\frac{1}{7}$ th; *ein Zehntel*, $\frac{1}{10}$ th; *ein Zwanzigstel*, $\frac{1}{20}$ th, &c. So in the plural: *zwei Drittel*, $\frac{2}{3}$ ds; *drei Viertel*, $\frac{3}{4}$ ths; *fünf Sechstel*, $\frac{5}{6}$ ths; *sieben Zehntel*, $\frac{7}{10}$ ths, &c. They are regarded as substantives, and of the neuter gender. *Halb* is an adjective, not declinable, but from it a substantive is deduced; namely, *die Hälfte*, one half. The additional *l*, before mentioned, is a corruption of the word, *das Theil*, the part; and it should properly be *das dritte Theil*, the third part; *das vierte Theil*, the fourth part. This was contracted into one word, *Drittheit*, *Viertheit*; and at last into *Drittel*, *Viertel*.

CHAP. III.

ON THE PRONOUN.

CONTAINING:

1. The Personal and Reciprocal Pronouns.
2. The Possessive.
3. The Demonstrative.
4. The Relative and Interrogative.
5. Miscellaneous Pronouns.

SECT. I.

OF THE PRONOUNS PERSONAL AND
RECIPROCAL.

First Personal, Ich, I; plur. Wir, we.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. Ich, I.

Nom. Wir, we.

Gen. Meiner, or mein, of me.

Gen. Unser, of us.

Dat. Mir, to me.

Dat. Uns, to us.

Acc. Mich, me.

Acc. Uns, us.

Second Personal, Du, thou; plur. Ihr, you.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. Du, thou.

Nom. Ihr, you.

Gen. Deiner, or dein, of thee.

Gen. Euer, of you.

Dat. Dir, to thee.

Dat. Euch, to you.

Acc. Dich, thee.

Acc. Euch, you.

Third Personal, Er, masc. he; Sie, femin. she; Es, neuter, it; plur. Sie, they, for all genders.

Singular.

Nom.	Er, he;	Sie, she;	Es, it.
Gen.	Seiner, or sein, of him;	Ihrer, or ihr, of her;	Seiner, or sein, of it.
Dat.	Ihm, to him;	Ihr, to her;	Ihm, to it.
Acc.	Ihn, him;	Sie, her;	Es, it.

Plurals.

Nom.	Sie, they, for all genders.
Gen.	Ihrer, of them.
Dat.	Ihnen, to them.
Acc.	Sie, them.

*Reciprocal for the third Person.**Singular.*

Nom.	None.
Gen.	Seiner, or sein, of himself; Ihrer, or ihr, of herself; Seiner, or sein, of itself.
Dat.	Sich, to himself, to herself, to itself.
Acc.	Sich, himself, herself, itself.

Plural.

Nom.	None.
Gen.	Ihrer, of themselves.
Dat.	Sich, to themselves.
Acc.	Sich, themselves.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The genitive case of these pronouns, in both numbers, is limited as to its use. It occurs after

certain verbs; for example: *Er lachet mich*, he laughs at me; *Er spottet ihrer*, he mocks them; *Ich schäme mich deiner*, I am ashamed of thee; *Er barme dich meiner*, have mercy upon me. It is likewise joined with some prepositions, viz. *wegen*, *halben*, *willen*, denoting *on account of*. Then it generally coalesces with them into one word, by means of connecting letters, as *meinetwegen*, on my account; *deinetwegen*, on thy account; *seinetwegen*, on his account; *ihrerwegen*, on her account; *unsererwegen*, on our account; *eurerwegen*, on your account; *ihrerwegen*, or *ihrerwegen*, on their account. So *meinet halben*, *deinet halben*, *meinet willen*, or *um meinet willen*, &c. Otherwise the preposition *von*, with the dative, is employed to signify *of*, as *von mir*, of me; *von uns*, of us; *von dir*, of thee; *von euch*, of you; *von ihm*, of him; *von ihr*, of her; *von ihnen*, of them.

2. In addressing one another in conversation, the Germans do not confine themselves to the second personal; but, like the Italians, Spaniards, and Portuguese, make also use of the third. Besides this, they apply the plural to a single person. If it is contrary to nature, and grammatical precision, to speak to one, as if he were more than one, which is done in English, by saying *you*, instead of *thou*; it is still more irregular to address him, as if he were not the person we spoke to, which is the case, if we use the third personal. How can it, for instance, be supposed, that in this question, *what is he doing?* the person is meant,

of whom that question is asked, and that it stands for, *what art thou doing?* And if it is but one person, how inconsistent, to address him in the third pronoun plural, *what are they doing?* as is done in German; or if it is a man, to apply to him the third personal in the feminine gender, *what is she doing?* as in the Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese languages. I mention the latter, because they will tend to illustrate the usage of the German. To explain this strange peculiarity, it is necessary to enquire into the origin of it.—About the period of the fall of the Roman empire, when not only its political power, but good taste and manners were sinking, it became the fashion to substitute for substantial qualities fine sounding titles, and pompous appellations. Of this kind were *Majestas*, *Celsitas*, *Serenitas*, *Eminentia*, *Excellentia*, *Gratia*, and others; and of a similar descent is the Spanish *merced*, in *Vuessa merced*, or *Usted*; your mercy, your grace; and the Italian *signoria*, in *Vossignoria*, your Lordship, or your Ladyship. The propensity to adulation, or, if we call it by a milder name, to excessive politeness, made the people of that age desirous to express, by their language, the respect they entertained of the rank and character of those, with whom they were engaged in conversation. Hence arose a particular mode of address. The person was confounded with his title and quality: and these were spoken to as personified. Yet it was not the title and quality of themselves, that were considered;

but only in as much, as they were inherent in the person. They were joined with possessive pronouns, as *your eminence, your grace, your excellency, your serenity, your lordship*. Consequently the third person came in the room of the second. It was not, for instance, *Thou, o Eminence of this person, hast done so*; but *your Eminence has done so; your grace is pleased*; in the same manner, as *your father has done so, your mother is pleased*. And, after all, by that was meant no more, than, thou (or you) eminent, gracious Sir, or Madam, hast, (or have) done so, art (or are) pleased. The third person supplied the place of the second. Having arrived at this, some nations went a step farther. The third person, they took for granted, was a mark of respect; and they observed, that those appellatives, with which it was connected, were of the feminine gender, as *celtitas, serenitas, excellentia, &c.* Therefore, when they had occasion to use a pronoun, they assumed the third personal of the feminine gender. Thus the mystery of the usual mode of address in the Italian and other languages is cleared up. The French and English did not go that length. For, though they received such titles, as *your majesty, your highness, your lordship*, in the third person; yet, when a pronoun was wanted, they turned back to the second: as, *I told your majesty, and you were pleased to direct, &c.*; when I waited on your grace, *you desired, &c.*: in which instances the Italians would say, *she* (Lat. *ea*, namely, *majestas, gratia*) was pleased, *she desired*.—As

in the Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese tongues, the expression *Vossignoria*, and *Usted*, were by degrees applied indifferently for the sole purpose of civility; the third of the feminine gender became a general term of politeness.—This notion concerning the third person was admitted by the Germans. But they overlooked its origin, and no longer associated with it those substantives, to which that idiom owed its existence. They deemed the third person of itself sufficient; and therefore assigned the masculine pronoun *Er*, he, to a man; and *Sie*, she, to a woman. Not contented with this, they introduced another innovation. With the third person they combined the plural number, which had previously been adopted in the second person as a refinement of polite conversation; *you* for *thou*. In the same way *Sie*, they, was substituted for *Er*, he, or *Sie*, she. At last the following manner of speaking has been established by custom. The plural of the third personal, *Sie*, is the polite mode of address, made use of by, and to people of education. For example, instead of, *How do you do?* the Germans in their language will say, *How do they do?* It will be remarked, that this may sometimes be mistaken for a real third person, and that confusion may hence arise: and there is some truth in this observation. However, the context, in most instances, will shew, who is meant; and where that is insufficient, a gesture, or some other means of explanation, may make the person understood. In writing, misconceptions of that kind must be obviated by clearness of expres-

sion: besides this, the pronoun of address is commonly written with a capital, whereas the mere third personal is spelt with a small letter, unless it be at the beginning of a sentence.—Notwithstanding this new manner of speaking, the former ones, *thou, you, he, she*, are still in use, but assigned with particular modifications; of which I shall say a few words more, since it is become necessary for the present language, to distinguish them properly.—The singular of the second person, *Du, thou*, is in the first instance used in addressing the Supreme Being; because upon him we poor mortals can bestow none of those vain, and worthless titles, with which we decorate our fellow creatures. In the next place it implies familiarity, founded upon affection and fondness. This is the pleasing appellation, by which parents speak to their children, and brothers and sisters to one another. It is the language of love and conjugal felicity. With friends it is as a token of intimacy and confidence: and though we see it as much abused as the name of friend itself, yet it is often found to denote the strict union of congenial souls*. Children are sometimes allowed to speak

* See a charming passage in Schiller's *Don Carlos*, at the end of the first act—I mean in the original; for the translations give but a faint and imperfect idea. It begins thus:

Und jetzt noch eine Bitte, Lieber—Kenne

Mich Du—&c.

And now one more request, my dearest friend—Do call me *Thou*, &c.

to their parents in the same manner; though, in general, the third person plural, *Git*, is preferred, as more respectful. Lastly, *Du* is the reverse of ceremonious politeness, and thus we find it applied where particular distinctions are laid aside. Therefore it is always made use of in speaking to little children: and also to people in very subordinate situations; for example, by the officer to his soldiers. It is often heard in quarrels, and opprobrious language, when the considerations of decorum and propriety are disregarded. All these applications may be reduced to the notion of familiarity, differently modified*.—The plural *Ihr*, you, when referred to one person, generally conveys the idea of that familiarity, which is used towards inferiors; for instance, by a master towards his menials: it is likewise bestowed upon people of low condition.—Since the plural of the third personal was adopted, as the polite mode of address, the singular has been reserved for the inferior stations of life: namely, *Er*, he, for a male; and *Sie*, she, for a female. In this manner you address your servants. Thus a person of rank, in the consciousness of his preeminence, will speak to tradespeople, and the prince to his subjects. Yet those persons frequently forget the comparative height, on which they stand, and are carried along with the stream of general politeness. Servants, however, are seldom spoken to in any other

* There is a particular verb, which expresses the use of the second personal, viz. *Duſten*, answering to the French *tutoyer*, in English to *thou*, according to Shakespear.

way, than the singular of the third personal: also people of mean estate, such as common handicraftsmen, peasants, labourers, and others. The plural of the second personal, *Ihr*, is even a degree below this.

3. We have to notice the reciprocal power of these pronouns. The first and second personals themselves are used reciprocally, without any addition: and *myself*, *thyself*, *ourselves*, *yourself*, and *yourselves*, are expressed by *mir*, *dich*, *uns*, *euch*. For the third person there is a particular reciprocal, which is mentioned above. In this respect the German language differs from the English, where the reciprocals are composed of the possessive pronouns and the termination *self*. There is, indeed, a word which answers to *self*, namely, the invariable pronoun *selbst*, or *selber*, signifying the Latin *ipse*, the French *même*, the Italian *stesso*, or *medesimo*, &c. but that may be annexed not only to pronouns, but to any substantive, to which it imparts an emphasis, or distinction; as *Ich selbst*, I myself, that means, I, in my own person, no one else; *Du selbst*, thyself; *Er selbst*, he himself; *Wir selbst*, *Ihr selbst*, *Sie selbst*. *Der Mann selbst*, the man himself; *die Leute selbst*, the people themselves, &c. It will be understood, that as the third personal serves as a pronoun of address, the third reciprocal must correspond with it: for instance, *Setze Er sich*, seat yourself, sit down, to a man of inferior condition, literally, let him seat himself; *Setze Sie sich*, to a woman of an inferior description, lit. let her seat herself;

Setzen Sie sich, the plural, as a polite mode of speaking, lit. let them seat themselves.

4. The neuter of the third person singular, is used as the subject nominative before and after verbs, and is joined with all genders and numbers. For example: **Es ist der Mann**, it is the man; **es ist die Frau**, it is the woman; **es ist das Kind**, it is the child; **Es sind Männer**, they are men; **es sind Weiber**, they are women; **Es ist ein Mann hier**, there is a man here; **es ist eine Frau hier**, there is a woman here; **es sind Leute hier**, there are people here. Also after the verb; as **Ein Mann ist es**, it is a man; **Männer sind es**, they are men. When thus placed, it either makes a question; or gives a particular stress to the substantive preceding. See the arrangement of words, in the Second Part.

5. **Es** is sometimes contracted with other pronouns; as **Ichs**, for **ich es**; **mirs**, for **mir es**; **michs**, for **mich es**. **Dirs**, for **dir es**; **dichs**, for **dich es**. **Ihrs**, for **ihre es**. It is best to avoid these contractions, though they are often made use of in colloquial language.

SECT. II.

PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

THESE are, **Mein**, my, or mine; **Dein**, thy, or thine; **Sein**, his; **Ihr**, her, or hers; **Sein**, its; **Unser**, our, or ours; **Euer**, your, or yours; **Ihr**, their, or theirs. They have three genders in the

singular, and are declined in the same manner as the indefinite article, and the first numeral, viz.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Mein (meiner),	meine,	mein (meines).
Gen.	Meines,	meiner,	meines.
Dat.	Meinem,	meiner,	meinem.
Acc.	Meinen,	meine,	mein (meines).

Plural.

Nom.	Meine.
Gen.	Meiner.
Dat.	Meinen.
Acc.	Meine.

Like this are varied Dein, deine, dein; Sein, seine, sein; Unser, unsere, unser; Euer, euer, euer; Ihr, ihre, ihr.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. These pronouns are either joined with substantives, as Mein Vater, my father; Deine Mutter, thy mother; Sein Kind, his child, &c.; or they stand by themselves, as Es ist mein, it is mine; es ist dein, it is thine; es ist sein, it is his; es ist ihr, it is hers; es ist unser, it is ours; es ist euer, it is yours; es ist ihr, it is theirs. When put absolutely, or by themselves, as in the instances last mentioned, the masculine gender, in the nominative singular, sometimes receives the termination *er*, and the neuter, in the nominative and accusative

tive, that of *er*. But as these terminations are not always added, a rule must be given, when that addition should take place, and when not. Namely, when simply a possession is signified, without any other idea attending it, neither those terminations, nor that of the feminine gender, are required: as *Der Garten ist mein*, the garden is mine; *die Stube ist dein*, the room is yours; *das Haus ist sein*, the house is his. But when a comparison of possession is implied, those endings are to be subjoined. For example: *whose book is this? it is mine*; this must be, *Es ist meines*, with the additional termination; because a comparison of possession is understood; is it that, which belongs to me, or that which belongs to you, or to a third person? the answer is, it is that which belongs to me. *Wessen Hund ist das? whose dog is that? Es ist unserer*, it is ours.—*Wessen Feder ist das? whose pen is that? Es ist seine*, it is his.—Here is the same comparison involved; and the termination affixed. So in the following: *Ist dieß meines oder ihres? is this mine, or theirs?—Mein es ist deines, oder eures*, no it is thine, or yours. This difference in the use of the possessives, though apparently nice, ought to be carefully observed by those, who wish to express themselves with propriety and elegance. The rule is—we will repeat it: when a possession is merely indicated, the pronoun is put without the declinable endings in the nom. singular, masculine, and the nom. and acc. neuter; but when a distinction of the possessors is made, the terminations must be added.

2. In *unser*, *euere*, the *e* before *r* is frequently left out, when a syllable comes after it; as *unfser*, *unfres*, for *unserer*, *unseres*; *eurer*, *eures*, for *euerer*, *eueres*. This omission is arbitrary, and adopted according to fancy, or for accidental purposes.

3. The possessive pronouns may be used absolutely, with the definite article; as *der meine*, *die meine*, *das meine*, mine; *der deine*, thine; *der seine*, his; *der ihre*, hers; *der unsere*, ours; *der euere*, yours; *der ihre*, theirs. I say *absolutely*, that means, with no substantive following, though understood. For example: *Wessen Hut ist das?* whose hat is that? *Es ist der meine*, it is mine. *Wessen Uhr ist das?* whose watch is that? *Es ist die deine*, it is thine. *Wessen Buch ist das?* whose book is that? *Es ist das seine*, it is his.—The French have the same manner of expression, in *le mien*, *le tien*, *le sien*, *le nôtre*, *le vôtre*, *le leur*. Indeed, they cannot put their possessive pronouns absolutely, unless the article is prefixed. In English it is the reverse: here the article cannot be joined with them. But in German the pronoun possessive absolute may either be used with, or without the article: nor is it sufficiently defined, where the one or the other is preferable. It seems solely to depend on the sound, and the structure of the sentence. When united with the article, it is most usual to give an additional syllable to the possessives, namely, *ig*; as *der meinige*, *der deinige*, *der seinige*, *der ihrige*, *der unsrige*, *der eurige*, *der ihrige*. The former, without the syllable *ig*, may be regarded as a peculiarity of the Upper German dialect, though we sometimes

meet with it in the best writers.—The definite article going before, these pronouns are declined after the third form of adjectives.

4. *Dero* and *Ihro* are possessives, used in ancient and ceremonious language; they serve for addressing persons of distinction, being put for *Ihr*, your, or yours. They are not declined.

5. The possessives are sometimes put after genitive cases; and supply the place of the declinable ending in the substantives; as *des Mann sein Buch*, the man his book, for *des Mannes Buch*; *der Frau ihr Kind*, the woman's child, for *das Kind der Frau*. But this is not authorized by classical and elegant writers; and may on most occasions be superseded.

SECT. III.

PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

UNDER this head are comprised all those, which point out, or determine, the subject, to which they refer. They are, *Dieser*, *diese*, *dieses*, this; Lat. *hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*. *Jener*, *jene*, *jenes*, that; Lat. *ille*, *illa*, *illud*. *Der*, *die*, *das*, that; Lat. *is*, *ea*, *id*. *Derjenige*, *diejenige*, *dasjenige*, that; Lat. *iste*, *ista*, *istud*. *Derselbe*, *dieselbe*, *dasselbe*, the same; Lat. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*.

a. Those which are properly demonstrative.

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	Dieser,	diese,	dieses, (or dieß).	N. Diese.
Gen.	Dieses,	dieser,	dieses.	G. Dieser.
Dat.	Diesem,	dieser,	diesem.	D. Diesen.
Acc.	Diesen,	diese,	dieses, (or dieß).	A. Diese.

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	Jener,	jene,	jenes.	N. Jene.
Gen.	Jenes,	jener,	jenes.	G. Jener.
Dat.	Jenem,	jener,	jenem.	D. Jenen.
Acc.	Jenen,	jene,	jenes.	A. Jene.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. When two demonstratives are put together, in the genitive and dative singular, and the genitive plural, the last of them may assume the termination *en*, instead of *er*, *em*, *es*. By this means the concurrence of the same syllables is avoided; and the harmony of the language improved. For example: Die Meinungen dieses und jenen Mannes (for jenes), the opinions of this and that man; or in the plural, dieser und jenen Männer, of such and such men. Von dieser und jenen Geschichte—(dat. fem. for jener), of this and that history. Aus diesem und jenen Buche (for jenem) out of such and such a book.

2. The neuter singular of these pronouns is placed before and after verbs, without any distinction of gender or number, in the same manner as the personal *Es*. See above. For instance: *Dieses*, or *dieß*, *ist ein Mann*, this is a man; *jenes ist eine Frau*, that is a woman; *Dieß sind Menschen*, these are men. *Was für ein Mann ist dieß?* what man is this? *Was für eine Frau ist dieß?* what a woman is this? *Was für Leute sind dieß*, what people are these?

b. *Determinative Pronouns*. They determine the subject, and are generally followed by a relative.

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	Der,	die,	das.	N. Die.
Gen.	Desſen,	deren,	deſſen,	G. Derer,
	(or deß),		(or deß).	(or deren).
Dat.	Dem,	der,	dem.	D. Denen.
Acc.	Den,	die,	daß.	A. Die.

	Singular.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Derjenige,	diejenige,	daßjenige.
Gen.	Deßjenigen,	derjenigen,	deßjenigen.
Dat.	Demjenigen,	derjenigen,	demjenigen.
Acc.	Denjenigen,	diejenige,	daßjenige.

	Plural.
Nom.	Diejenigen.
Gen.	Derjenigen.
Dat.	Denjenigen.
Acc.	Diejenigen.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Derſelbe,	dieſelbe,	daſſelbe.
Gen.	Deſſelben,	derſelben,	deſſelben.
Dat.	Demſelben,	derſelben,	demſelben.
Acc.	Denſelben,	dieſelbe,	daſſelbe.

Plural.

Nom. Dieſelben.

Gen. Derſelben.

Dat. Denſelben.

Acc. Dieſelben.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. These pronouns may be put to substantives, or stand by themselves; as *Der Menſch, welcher tugendhaft lebt, iſt weiſe*, that man, who lives virtuously, is wiſe; *Der, welcher tugendhaft lebt, iſt weiſe*, he, who lives virtuously, is wiſe. *Derjenige Menſch, welcher das Laſter liebt, iſt ein Böſewicht*, that man, who loves vice, is a villain; *Derjenige, welcher das Laſter liebt, iſt ein Böſewicht*, he, who loves vice, &c. So *Derſelbe Menſch, welcher—* or *Derſelbe, welcher*.

2. The relative generally follows after *Derjenige*; but not always after *Der*, and *Derſelbe*. For example: *Es iſt der Mann*, it is that man; *es iſt derſelbe Mann*, it is the ſame man. When *Der* is by itſelf, neither before a ſubſtantive, nor followed by a relative, ſome local adverb is commonly joined

with it ; as hier, da, dort: Der da, that person there ; der hier, that person here ; der dort, that person yonder. Wessen Haus ist das ? whose house is that ? Dessen da, or des da, that person's. Wem gehört es ? to whom does it belong ? Dem da, to that person.

3. Der, die, das, when serving as a demonstrative pronoun, has a stronger accent in pronunciation than the definite article, by which it is distinguished from the latter. The genitive plural should always be derer, to make it different from the gen. singular fem. but nevertheless it is sometimes expressed by deren, by reason of a supposed euphony ; as deren einer, one of those, for derer einer.

4. Das, like dieß and es, is used absolutely, in connection with different numbers and genders ; as Das ist der Mann, that is the man ; das ist die Frau, that is the woman ; das sind die Leute, those are the people.

5. Derselbe, is sometimes put in the signification of the third personal, or that of a simple demonstrative, in the manner as in English *the same* is used. For example : *I have received the book, and read the same, for, and read it.* But its peculiar power is the Latin *idem* ; to which it ought properly to be limited, if custom did not warrant the deviation, just now alluded to. In that sense it frequently has the adverb eben before it, which gives it additional force, eben derselbe, the very same : and sometimes also the first numeral, which still increases the meaning : as, ein und eben derselbe, one and the same.

6. Of *Derselbe* is sprung *Derselbige*, *dieselbige*, *dasselbige*. As this does not vary in signification, and is only a longer way of expressing the same idea, we might without inconvenience discharge it from the language.

7. *Der nämliche*, and *dergleiche* are sometimes employed as substitutes for *derselbe*: but the use of them is more peculiar to certain provinces, than generally received.

8. *Selbiger*, *e*, *es*, Lat. *is*, *ea*, *id*; *Solcher*, *e*, *es*, or rather, *ein solcher*, such a one; and *so ein*, *so eine*, *so ein*, may be added to the list of demonstrative pronouns. The first mentioned coincides in its meaning with *derjenige* and *der*, but is not so classical, as *selbiger Mensch*, that man, or the said man, for *Der Mensch*; *zu selbiger Zeit*, at that time, for *zu der Zeit*.

9. Instead of the demonstrative pronouns with certain prepositions, the local adverbs *hier*, here, and *da*, there, are frequently made use of: *hier* may then be changed into *hie*, before a consonant, and *da* must be transformed into *dar*, before a vowel. For example: *Hiermit*, or *hiemit*, herewith, for *mit diesem*, with this; *hierauf*, hereout, for *auf diesem*, out of this; *hieran*, hereon, for *an diesem*, on this; *Davon*, thereof, for *von dem*, of that; *daran*, thereon, for *an dem*, on that; *daraus*, thereout, for *auf dem*, out of that; *damit*, therewith, for *mit dem*, with that; *darüber*, thereupon, for *über das*, upon that, &c.

The English distinguish in their relatives the pronouns *who* and *which*; applying the for

SECT. IV.

PRONOUNS RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE.

THESE are, *Welcher, welche, welches, who, and which*; and *Wer, neut. was, who, what*. *Der, die, daß*, is, like the English *that*, also used in a relative signification.

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	<i>Welcher,</i>	<i>welche,</i>	<i>welches.</i>	N. <i>Welch.</i>
Gen.	<i>Welches,</i>	<i>welcher,</i>	<i>welches.</i>	G. <i>Welcher.</i>
Dat.	<i>Welchem,</i>	<i>welcher,</i>	<i>welchem.</i>	D. <i>Welchen.</i>
Acc.	<i>Welchen,</i>	<i>welche,</i>	<i>welches.</i>	A. <i>Welche.</i>

	Singular.		Plural none.
	Neut.		
Nom.	<i>Wer,</i>	<i>Was.</i>	
Gen.	<i>Wessen, (or wess.)</i>		
Dat.	<i>Wem.</i>		
Acc.	<i>Wen,</i>	<i>Was.</i>	

	Singular.			Plural.
Nom.	<i>Der,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>daß.</i>	N. <i>Die.</i>
Gen.	<i>Dessen,</i>	<i>deren,</i>	<i>dessen.</i>	G. <i>Derer, (or deren.)</i>
Dat.	<i>Dem,</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>dem.</i>	D. <i>Denen.</i>
Acc.	<i>Den,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>daß.</i>	A. <i>Die.</i>

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The English distinguish in their relatives, the pronouns *who* and *which*; applying the for-

Sect. 4. *Pronouns Relative and Interrogative.* 201

mer to persons, and the latter to animals and things. The Germans admit no such difference. They use *welcher* in relation to the one and the other. In English, *that* supplies frequently the place of *who* or *which*, especially for the purpose of avoiding repetition. In this manner the Germans make use of *der, die, das*, instead of *welcher, welche, welches*. The former has the advantage of brevity, and is therefore very often employed: though, in many instances, *welcher* is decidedly preferable. In short, it ought to be considered as the first and proper relative, and *der, die, das*, only as an occasional substitute. *Welcher* should have the preference. *a.* After the first and second personal pronouns. *Ich, welcher*—I who; *Du, welcher*—thou who; *Ihr, welche*—you who; *Sie, welche*—they who. *b.* When the definite article, or a demonstrative pronoun goes just before: *an Der Mann, welcher*—*Dieser Mensch, welcher*—*Jene Frau, welche*—*Dasjenige Kind, welches*—where it would not be so pure and accurate to say, *Der Mann, der*—*Dieser Mensch, der*, &c. *c.* When the relative pronoun is immediately followed by a verb, without any other word intervening: as *Ein Knabe, welcher schreibt*, a boy who writes; *Ein Kind, welches liest*, a child who reads. Yet we see the short relative, *der*, made use of under those circumstances, though the propriety of it may be questioned: after the definite article, and a pronoun demonstrative, the laws of euphony, and grammatical precision seem to forbid it. For in *der Mann, der* (for *welcher*,) there is a

disagreeable repetition of the same sound; and as *Der* is likewise used as a demonstrative pronoun, it certainly cannot be thought so proper a relative after a demonstrative, as *welcher*. The latter has no other power, and cannot be mistaken: whereas in *der* two meanings are confounded, which may create misconception, especially from the proximity of a similar word; and supposing its tendency should be easily determined by the context, it is not pleasing to him, who is a judge of the niceties of language, to see that mixture of signification in so particular a light. In the two other situations mentioned, *Der* is objectionable on account of its shortness, which impairs the harmony of the language: as *Ich der viele Bücher gelesen habe*, I who have read many books. It sounds better, if thus expressed: *Ich welcher viele Bücher gelesen habe*. And in the other instance; *Ein Knabe der schreibt*, a boy that writes: it is for the same reason preferable to say, *Ein Knabe welcher schreibt*. This defect is remedied by the addition of certain words to that pronoun. — Namely, when placed after the first and second personal, the antecedent pronoun is repeated after the relative. For example: *Ich der ich viele Bücher gelesen habe*, I who have read many books; *Du der du hier stehst*, thou who standest here. *Wir die wir hier versammelt sind*, we, who are here assembled; *Ihr die ihr euer Vaterland liebt*, you who love your country. When alone with a verb, after the third personal, or a substantive, *da* is joined with it: as *Ein Knabe der da schreibt*, a boy that writes. *Da*

Sect. 4. *Pronouns Relative and Interrogative.* 203

signifies *there*, but serves, in this juncture, as a mere expletive, to lengthen the short relative pronoun.—*Der*, as a relative, cannot be joined with a substantive; for instance, *der Mann* can never express *which man*.

2. The genitive plural of the pronoun *Der*, *die*, *daß*, is properly *derer*; but when in a relative signification, it is commonly changed into *deren*, though not always*.

3. The adverb *so*, *so*, occasionally serves as a substitute for the relative. For example: *Die Wahrheit, welche von einem Werke, wie dasjenige ist, so wir den Liebhabern hiermit vorlegen, gefodert werden kann, bestehet darin, &c.* “The veracity, that can be required of a work like the one *which* we now lay before the lovers of elegant literature, consists in this,” &c. *Wieland*. It is a peculiarity of the ancient style, and at present only used to prevent the iteration of other relatives. When the verb follows after it, without any other word intervening, *da* is added, as in the relative *der*, *die*, *daß*. See before. For example, in *Bürger’s Lenore*:

* Dann seufze sie nach in jenen Blumen,
Derer Haupt am Hügel
Schwerer und gesenkter ist.

“Then repeat my sounds, sighing, among those flowers, whose heads, near the grave, are drooping and declining.”—From *Denis’s Monody on the Death of Gellert*. Here is *derer* the genitive plural; and *deren* would not be so proper, because the former marks the genitive more strongly.

Doch keiner war, der Kundschaft gab,
 Von allen, so da kamen, *i. e.* of all, that came.

4. *Wer*, who, as a relative, always begins a sentence: what otherwise would be the antecedent, follows. For example: *Wer auf dem Wege der Tugend wandelt, ist glücklich*, he who walks in the path of virtue, is happy. It is never put after an antecedent. We cannot, for instance, say, *der Mann, wer die Gesetze ehrt*, the man, who respects the laws. It must be *welcher*. Nor can *wer* be joined with a substantive, as *wer Mann*, which man: this ought to be *welcher Mann*.—The neuter *was*, may both commence a sentence, or be placed after an antecedent. For example: *Was gerecht ist, verdient Lob*, what is just deserves praise; *das, was du mir gesagt hast*, that which you have told me; *alles, was ich gesehen habe*, all I have seen. It stands here to signify *which*; and is very properly used after an antecedent, denoting something general and undetermined. But when an individual or particular subject precedes, then it is better to express the neuter *which* by *welches*: as *das Buch, welches sie mir geliehen haben*, the book which you have lent me. In common conversation *was* is sometimes put even in such instances for *welches*: this, however, is not to be imitated.

5. The relative pronouns are sometimes omitted in English, and are to be understood. For example: *The man I love*, *i. e.* whom I love.

The pensive muse shall own thee for her mate,
 And still protect the song she loves so well.

CHARLOTTE SMITH.

i. e. which she loves.

Sect. 4. *Pronouns Relative and Interrogative.* 205

Simply the thing I am shall make me live.

SHAKESPEARE.

i. e. which I am.—In German they must always be expressed.

6. The pronouns *Wer*, neuter, *was*; and *Welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, also serve to questions, or in other words, have the signification of interrogatives.—*Wer* is applied to persons, either male or female, and *was* to things. They ask the question in a general way, as the English *who*, and *what*: therefore they are never joined with a substantive. *Welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, refers to particular objects, and may be united with substantives. It answers to the English interrogative *which*, as *welcher Mann*, which man?

7. *Was* is combined with the indefinite article, to express the French interrogative *quel*, Lat. *quælis*, and the English *what*, with or without the indefinite article, as, what man, or, what a man? But in German the preposition *für* is inserted between *was*, and the article: as *was für ein Mann*, what man, or, what a man; *was für eine Frau*, what woman, or, what a woman; *was für ein Kind*, what child, or, what a child. It is literally, *what for a man*, *what for a woman*, &c. This preposition had probably a meaning, when it was first introduced; which by time has been obliterated.—For *was für ein*, we sometimes find *welch ein*, *sem. welch eine*.

8. The local adverb *wo*, where, put together with a preposition, frequently supplies the place of a relative pronoun. For example: *womit*, wherewith,

instead of *mit welchem*, fem. *welcher*, or plur. *mit welchen*, with which; *wovon*, whereof, instead of *von welchem*, *welcher*, *welchen*, of which; *wodurch*, wherethrough, for *durch welchen*, *welche*, through which. When the preposition begins with a vowel, *r* is inserted after *wo*: as *woraus*, whereout, for out of which; *worüber*, whereupon, or whereover, for upon which, or over which.

SECT. V.

MISCELLANEOUS PRONOUNS.

UNDER this denomination we comprehend some words, which could not conveniently be classed with the former divisions. They are, *Man*, *jemand*, *jederman*, *niemand*, and *selbst*.

1. *Man*, not declined. It implies a general or indefinite personality, answering to the French *on*; and is joined with the verb in the singular number. For example: *Man sagt*, French *on dit*, people say, they say; *man spricht*, Fr. *on parle*, people talk, they talk. The English also make use of *a person*, or *one*, where in German *man*, and in French *on* might be put. For instance: *man muß sich hüten*, Fr. *on doit prendre garde*, *a person*, or *one*, must take care; *man irrt sich, wenn man glaubt*, &c. *on se trompe, si l'on pense*, *a person*, or *one*, mistakes if he thinks —. The oblique cases of the indefinite article are employed to correspond with *man*. For example: *Man ärgert sich immer, wenn einem gewisse Erwartungen fehl schlagen*; *a person is always vexed, when he is dis-*

appointed in certain expectations. Man irrt sich, wenn man glaubt, der große Haufe schätze einen wahrer Verdienste wegen; one is mistaken, if he thinks that the multitude esteems him for true merit.—In these examples the dative einem, and the accusative einen refer to man.

2. Jemand, some one; jederman, every one; niemand, no one. These words are composed of man; je, ever; jeder, each; and nie, never. In the genitive case they have *s* added, as jemand's, jederman's, niemand's. The dat. and acc. are like the nom. or sometimes, but not usually, marked by the termination *en*, as jemanden, niemanden; never in jederman. Now and then an adjective is put after jemand, and niemand, in the neuter gender, second form, as jemand Vornehmes, some great or genteel person; jemand Fremdes, some stranger; from vornehm, and fremd. So niemand Vornehmes, no great or genteel person; niemand Fremdes, no stranger. But as we have other means of conveying this idea, and there is something ungrammatical in that mode of expression, at least something which is not very easy to account for by grammatical rule, it is not recommended for imitation. For jemand Vornehmes, we may say ein vornehmer Mann, a great man, or ein vornehmer Herr, a great gentleman; or if it is a lady, ein vornehmer Frauentzimmer; or if more than one, vornehme Leute, great people. And for niemand Fremdes, we use kein Fremder, no stranger.—The first numeral, Einer, occasionally stands for jemand, some one: but it is better to confine that signification to the latter word.

3. The invariable pronoun *selbst*, or *selber*, has been noticed in the first section of this chapter. It answers to the English *self*, but may be added to any pronoun or substantive in its original state. For example: *Ich selbst*, I myself; *Du selbst*, thou thyself; *Er selbst*, he himself; *der Mann selbst*, the man himself; *die Frau selbst*, the woman herself; *Wir selbst*, we ourselves; *Ihr selbst*, you yourselves; *Sie selbst*, they themselves; *die Leute selbst*, the people themselves. In English, *self* must be compounded with a pronoun, in order to be used as an adjunct to a substantive or personal pronoun; it is likewise varied in the plural: but in German it is neither compounded nor declined. It may be placed as an adverb before a substantive or pronoun, in which situation it signifies *even*; as *Selbst ich*, even I; *selbst du*, even thou; *selbst sie*, even they; *selbst der Mann*, even the man; *selbst die Leute*, even the people. *Selbst* is more classical than *selber*.—*Selbst*, or abridged *selb*, is sometimes connected with ordinal numbers: as *selbstdritter*, or *selbdritter*; *selbstvierter*; *selbzechter*; *selbzwanzigster*. It then signifies, that the person, to whom the number refers, is accompanied by so many others. For example: *Ich selbstvierter*, I myself the fourth, that means three besides me; *der König selbzwanzigster*, the king the twentieth, that is, the king and nineteen persons besides*.

* *Selbzwanzigster gefangen, und allein Dem Saladin begnadigt*—I was taken with nineteen others, but alone spared by Saladin.

Lessings Nathan der Weise. Act. 1, Sc. 5.

CHAP. IV.

ON THE VERB.

CONTAINING

1. The Auxiliary Verbs.
2. The Conjugation of regular verbs.
3. The Irregular Verbs.
4. Verbs Neuter.
5. Reflective Verbs.
6. Impersonal Verbs.
7. Compound Verbs.

SECT. I.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

If verbs auxiliary are those, which are indispensably required for a complete conjugation, we must acknowledge three such verbs in the German language.

The first is *Haben*, to have. This serves for the formation of the preterperfect, preterpluperfect, and second future tenses, in the active voice.

The second *Seyn*, to be. It makes the preterperfect, preterpluperfect, and second future of some neuter verbs; and likewise helps to compose those tenses in the passive voice.

The third is *Werden*. This verb signifies 1. a future event, whether it consists in acting, being, or suffering. Thus it expresses the English auxiliaries of the future tense, *shall* and *will*; and seems

to resemble the Greek verb μέλλω. With this qualification, it produces all the future tenses. 2. It denotes the coming into a certain state, or condition. Therefore, when joined with a noun, it answers to the Latin *fit*, and the English *to become*. But with this power it is likewise employed to form the passive voice.

Note. It will be seen from the examples of the German conjugation, in the following pages, that the principal parts of the verb are, the present, the preterimperfect, the infinitive, and the preterite participle. These may be considered as the radicals, from which all, or most tenses, are derived. We shall, for this reason, place them at the head of every verb, that will be exhibited for the purpose of conjugation.

First Auxiliary. Haben, to have.

Habe, present tense; *hatte*, preterimperfect; *Haben*, infinitive mood; *Geht*, preterite participle.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

Singular.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ich habe, I have. | 1. Ich habe, (if) I have. |
| 2. Du hast, thou hast. | 2. Du habest, (if) thou have. |
| 3. Er (sie, es) hat, he (she, it) has. | 3. Er (sie, es) habe, (if) he (she, it) have. |

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Plural.**Plural.*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Wir haben, we have. | 1. Wir haben, (if) we have. |
| 2. Ihr habet, or habt, you have. | 2. Ihr habet, (if) you have. |
| 3. Sie haben, they have. | 3. Sie haben, (if) they have. |

Preterimperfect.

*Singular.**Singular.*

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Ich hatte, I had. | 1. Ich hätte, (if) I had. |
| 2. Du hattest, thou hadst. | 2. Du hättest, (if) thou had. |
| 3. Er hatte, he had. | 3. Er hätte, he had. |

*Plural.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Wir hatten, we had. | 1. Wir hätten, we had. |
| 2. Ihr hättet, you had. | 2. Ihr hättet, you had. |
| 3. Sie hätten, they had. | 3. Sie hätten, they had. |

Preterperfect.

*Singular.**Singular.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. Ich habe gehabt, I have had. | 1. Ich habe gehabt, (if) I have had. |
| 2. Du hast gehabt, thou hast had. | 2. Du habest gehabt, (if) thou hadst had. |
| 3. Er hat gehabt, he has had. | 3. Er habe gehabt, he have had. |

INDICATIVE,

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Plural.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Wir haben gehabt, we
have had. | 1. Wir haben gehabt, we
have had. |
| 2. Ihr habet, (or habt)
gehabt, you have had. | 2. Ihr habet gehabt, you
have had. |
| 3. Sie haben gehabt, they
have had. | 3. Sie haben gehabt, they
have had. |

Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.**Singular.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ich hatte gehabt, I had
had. | 1. Ich hätte gehabt, (if)
I had had. |
| 2. Du hättest gehabt, thou
had had. | 2. Du hättest gehabt, (if)
thou had had. |
| 3. Er hatte gehabt, he had
had. | 3. Er hätte gehabt, he had
had. |

*Plural.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Wir hatten gehabt, we
had had. | 1. Wir hätten gehabt, we
had had. |
| 2. Ihr hättet gehabt, you
had had. | 2. Ihr hättet gehabt, you
had had. |
| 3. Sie hatten gehabt, they
had had. | 3. Sie hätten gehabt, they
had had. |

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

First Future.

*Singular.**Singular.*

1. Ich werde haben, I shall have.

1. Ich werde haben, (if) I shall have.

2. Du wirst haben, thou shalt, or wilt, have.

2. Du werdest haben, (if) thou shalt have.

3. Er wird haben, he shall, or will, have.

3. Er werde haben, (if) he shall have.

*Plural.**Plural.*

1. Wir werden haben, we shall have.

1. Wir werden haben, (if) we shall have.

2. Ihr werdet haben, you shall, or will, have.

2. Ihr werdet haben, (if) you shall have.

3. Sie werden haben, they shall, or will, have.

3. Sie werden haben, (if) they shall have.

Second Future.

*Singular.**Singular.*

1. Ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had.

1. Ich werde gehabt haben, (if) I shall have had.

2. Du wirst gehabt haben, thou shalt have had.

2. Du werdest gehabt haben, (if) thou shalt have had.

3. Er wird gehabt haben, he shall have had.

3. Er werde gehabt haben, (if) he shall have had.

INDICATIVE.

Plural.

1. Wir werden gehabt haben, we shall have had.
2. Ihr werdet gehabt haben, you shall have had.
3. Sie werden gehabt haben, they shall have had.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Plural.

1. Wir werden gehabt haben, (if) we shall have had.
2. Ihr werdet gehabt haben, (if) you shall have had.
3. Sie werden gehabt haben, (if) they shall have had.

First Future Indefinite.

Singular.

1. Ich würde haben, I should, or would, have.
2. Du würdest haben, thou shouldst, or wouldst, have.
3. Er würde haben, he should, or would, have.

Plural.

1. Wir würden haben, we should, or would, have.
2. Ihr würdet haben, you should, or would, have.
3. Sie würden haben, they should, or would, have.

Second Future Indefinite.

Singular.

1. Ich würde gehabt haben, I should, or would, have had.
2. Du würdest gehabt haben, thou shouldst, or wouldst, have had.
3. Er würde gehabt haben, he should, or would, have had.

Plural.

1. Wir würden gehabt haben, we should, or would, have had.
2. Ihr würdet gehabt haben, you should, or would, have had.
3. Sie würden gehabt haben, they should, or would, have had.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 2. Habe (du), have (thou). | 2. Habet (ihr,) have (you.) |
| 3. Habe er, (sic, es,) let him (her, it) have. | 3. Haben sie, let them have. |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Haben, to have.

Pret. perf. Gehabt haben, to have had.

Future. Haben werden, to be about to have.

PARTICIPLES.

Present. Habend, having.

Preterite. Gehabt, had.

Second Auxiliary. Seyn, to be.

Bin, pres. War, pret. imperf. Seyn, infinit.

Gewesen, pret. part.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

*Singular.**Singular.*

1. Ich bin, I am.

1. Ich sey, (if) I be.

2. Du bist, thou art.

2. Du seyst, (or seyst,) thou be.

3. Er ist, he is.

3. Er sey, he be.

*Plural.**Plural.*

1. Wir sind, we are.

1. Wir seyen, (or seyn,) we be.

2. Ihr seyd, you are.

2. Ihr seyed, (or seyd,) you be.

3. Sie sind, they are.

3. Sie seyen, (or seyn,) they be.

Preterimperfect.

*Singular.**Singular.*

1. Ich war, I was.

1. Ich wäre, (if) I were.

2. Du warest, (or warst,) thou wast.

2. Du warest, thou wert.

3. Er war, he was.

3. Er wäre, he were.

*Plural.**Plural.*

1. Wir waren, we were.

1. Wir wären, we were.

2. Ihr waret, (or wart,) you were.

2. Ihr wären, you were.

3. Sie waren, they were.

3. Sie wären, they were.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

Singular.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Ich bin gewesen, I have been. | 1. Ich sey gewesen, (if) I have been. |
| 2. Du bist gewesen, thou hast been. | 2. Du seiest (or seyst) gewesen, (if) thou have been. |
| 3. Er ist gewesen, he has been. | 3. Er sey gewesen, (if) he have been. |

Plural.

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Wir sind gewesen, we have been. | 1. Wir seyen (or seyn) gewesen, we have been. |
| 2. Ihr seyd gewesen, you have been. | 2. Ihr seyed (or seyd) gewesen, you have been. |
| 3. Sie sind gewesen, they have been. | 3. Sie seyen, (or seyn) gewesen, they have been. |

Preterperfect.

Singular.

Singular.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ich war gewesen, I had been. | 1. Ich wäre gewesen, (if) I had been. |
| 2. Du wärest gewesen, thou hadst been. | 2. Du wärest gewesen, (if) thou had been. |
| 3. Er war gewesen, he had been. | 3. Er wäre gewesen, (if) he had been. |

Plural.

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Wir waren gewesen, we had been. | 1. Wir wären gewesen, we had been. |
| 2. Ihr wäret gewesen, you had been. | 2. Ihr wäret gewesen, you had been. |
| 3. Sie waren gewesen, they had been. | 3. Sie wären gewesen, they had been. |

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

First Future.

*Singular.**Singular.*

1. Ich werde seyn, I shall be.

1. Ich werde seyn, (if) I shall be.

2. Du wirst seyn, thou shalt, or wilt, be.

2. Du werdest seyn, thou shalt be.

3. Er wird seyn, he shall, or will, be.

Er werde seyn, he shall be.

*Plural.**Plural.*

1. Wir werden seyn, we shall be.

1. Wir werden seyn, we shall be.

2. Ihr werdet seyn, you shall, or will, be.

2. Ihr werdet seyn, you shall be.

3. Sie werden seyn, they shall, or will, be.

3. Sie werden seyn, they shall be.

Second Future.

*Singular.**Singular.*

1. Ich werde gewesen seyn, I shall have been.

1. Ich werde gewesen seyn, (if) I shall have been.

2. Du wirst gewesen seyn, thou shalt have been.

2. Du werdest gewesen seyn, thou shalt have been.

3. Er wird gewesen seyn, he shall have been.

3. Er werde gewesen seyn, he shall have been.

*Plural.**Plural.*

1. Wir werden gewesen seyn, we shall have been.

1. Wir werden gewesen seyn, we shall have been.

2. Ihr werdet gewesen seyn, you shall have been.

2. Ihr werdet gewesen seyn, you shall have been.

3. Sie werden gewesen seyn, they shall have been.

3. Sie werden gewesen seyn, they shall have been.

First Future Indefinite.

Singular.

1. Ich würde seyn, I should, or would, be.
2. Du würdest seyn, thou shouldst, or wouldst, be.
3. Er würde seyn, he should, or would, be.

Plural.

1. Wir würden seyn, we should, or would, be.
2. Ihr würdet seyn, you should, or would, be.
3. Sie würden seyn, they should, or would, be.

Second Future Indefinite.

Singular.

1. Ich würde gewesen seyn, I should, or would, have been.
2. Du würdest gewesen seyn, thou shouldst, or wouldst, have been.
3. Er würde gewesen seyn, he should, or would, have been.

Plural.

1. Wir würden gewesen seyn, we should, or would, have been.
2. Ihr würdet gewesen seyn, you should, or would, have been.
3. Sie würden gewesen seyn, they should, or would, have been.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

2. Sey (du,) be (thou).
3. Sey er, let him be.

Plural.

2. Seyd (ihr,) be (you).
3. Seyn sie, let them be.

INFINITIVE.

Singular.

- Pres. Seyn, to be.
 Preterperf. Gewesen seyn,
 to have been.

- Fut. Seyn werden, to be
 about to be.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, *Sehend*, being.Preterite, *Gewesen*, been.*Third Auxiliary*, *Werden*, to become.*Werde*, pres. *Ward*, (or *wurde*) pret. imperf.*Werden*, infinit. *Geworden*, (or *worden*) pret. part.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Singular.

1. *Ich werde*, I become.2. *Du wirst*, thou be-

comest.

3. *Er wird*, he becomes.

Plural.

1. *Wir werden*, we be-

come.

2. *Ihr werdet*, you be-

come.

3. *Sie werden*, they be-

come.

Present.

Singular.

1. *Ich werde* (if) I be-

come.

2. *Du werdest* (if) thou

become.

3. *Er werde* (if) he be-

come.

Plural.

1. *Wir werden*, we be-

come.

2. *Ihr werdet*, you be-

come.

3. *Sie werden*, they be-

come.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

1. *Ich ward*, (or *wurde*,) I became.2. *Du wurdest* (or *wardst*,) thou becamest.3. *Er ward* (or *wurde*,) he became.

Singular.

1. *Ich würde* (if) I be-

came.

2. *Du würdest* (if) thou

became.

3. *Er würde*, he became.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Plural.

Plural.

1. Wir wurden, we be-
came.

1. Wir würden, we be-
came.

2. Ihr würdet, you be-
came.

2. Ihr würdet, you be-
came.

3. Sie wurden, they be-
came.

3. Sie würden, they be-
came.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

Singular.

1. Ich bin geworden, or
worden, I have be-
come.

1. Ich sey geworden, or
worden, (if) I have
become.

2. Du bist geworden, or
worden, thou hast
become.

2. Du seiest (or seyst)
geworden, (if) thou
have become.

3. Er ist geworden, or
worden, he has be-
come.

3. Er sey geworden, or
worden, (if) he have
become.

Plural.

Plural.

1. Wir sind geworden, or
worden, we have be-
come.

1. Wir seyen (or seyn) ge-
worden, or worden,
we have become.

2. Ihr seid geworden, or
worden, you have
become.

2. Ihr seyed (or seyd) ge-
worden, or worden,
you have become.

3. Sie sind geworden, or
worden, they have
become.

3. Sie seyen (or seyn) ge-
worden, or worden,
they have become.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.**Singular.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Ich war geworden, or worden, I had become.</p> <p>2. Du warest geworden, or worden, thou hadst become.</p> <p>3. Er war geworden, or worden, he had become.</p> | <p>1. Ich wäre geworden, or worden, (if) I had become.</p> <p>2. Du wärest geworden, or worden, (if) thou had become.</p> <p>3. Er wäre geworden, or worden, he had become.</p> |
|---|---|

*Plural.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Wir waren geworden, or worden, we had become.</p> <p>2. Ihr waret geworden, or worden, you had become.</p> <p>3. Sie waren geworden, or worden, they had become.</p> | <p>1. Wir wären geworden, or worden, we had become.</p> <p>2. Ihr wäret geworden, or worden, you had become.</p> <p>3. Sie wären geworden, or worden, they had become.</p> |
|--|--|

First Future.

*Singular.**Singular.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Ich werde werden, I shall become.</p> <p>2. Du wirst werden, thou shalt, or wilt, become.</p> <p>3. Er wird werden, he shall, or will, become.</p> | <p>1. Ich werde werden, (if) I shall become.</p> <p>2. Du werdest werden, thou shalt become.</p> <p>3. Er werde werden, he shall become.</p> |
|--|--|

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Plural.

Plural.

1. Wir werden werden, we shall become.

1. Wir werden werden, we shall become.

2. Ihr werdet werden, you shall, or will, become.

2. Ihr werdet werden, you shall become.

3. Sie werden werden, they shall, or will, become.

3. Sie werden werden, they shall become.

Second Future

Singular.

Singular.

1. Ich werde geworden, or worden, seyn, I shall have become.

1. Ich werde geworden, or worden, seyn, (if) I shall have become.

2. Du wirst geworden, or worden, seyn, thou shalt, or will, have become.

2. Du werdest geworden, or worden, seyn, thou shalt have become.

3. Er wird geworden, or worden, seyn, he shall, or will, have become.

3. Er werde geworden, or worden, seyn, he shall have become.

Plural.

Plural.

1. Wir werden geworden, or worden, seyn, we shall have become.

1. Wir werden geworden, or worden, seyn, we shall have become.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

2. Ihr werdet geworden,
or worden, seyn, you
shall, or will, have
become.

2. Ihr werdet geworden,
or worden, seyn, you
shall have become.

3. Sie werden geworden,
or worden, seyn, they
shall, or will, have
become.

3. Sie werden geworden,
or worden, seyn, they
shall have become.

First Future Indefinite.

Singular.

1. Ich würde werden, I should, or would, become.

2. Du würdest werden, thou shouldst, or wouldst,
become.

3. Er würde werden, he should, or would, become.

Plural.

1. Wir würden werden, we should, or would, be-
come.

2. Ihr würdet werden, you should, or would, be-
come.

3. Sie würden werden, they should, or would, be-
come.

Second Future Indefinite.

Singular.

1. Ich würde geworden, or worden, seyn, I should, or
would, have become.

2. Du würdest geworden, or worden, seyn, thou
shouldst, or wouldst, have become.

3. Er würde geworden, or worden, seyn, he should,
or would, have become.

Plural.

1. Wir würden geworden, or worden, sayn, we should,

or would, have become.

2. Ihr würdet geworden, or worden, sayn, you should,

or would, have become.

3. Sie würden geworden, or worden, sayn, they

should, or would, have become.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

2. Werde (tu), become. 2. Werdet (ihr), become

(thou). (you).

3. Werde er, let him be. 3. Werden sie, let them

come. become.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Werden, to become.

Preter. pers. Geworden, or worden, sayn, to have be-

come.

Fut. Werden werden, to be about to become.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, Werden, becoming.

Preterite, Geworden, or worden, become.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. In English the verbs, *may*, *will*, *shall*, *let*, are

in conjugating employed as auxiliaries. They are

not necessarily required for the German conjugation.

The ideas they convey are, indeed, ex-

pressed by similar verbs in German, but these can-

not be considered as auxiliaries. They have,

however, by some grammarians been introduced

under that denomination. No ground can be assigned for such a proceeding, except, that they are combined with other verbs, which they govern in the infinitive mood. But if this be admitted as a criterion of helping verbs, their number may be still farther increased. True auxiliaries are only those, without which no complete conjugation can be formed: and under this description come the three verbs, that have been stated at full length in the foregoing.—It may not be improper to say a few words of the pretended auxiliaries, in order to make their nature more understood. They are, *Ich mag*, similar to the English, I may; *ich will*, answering to, I will; *ich soll*, I shall. To these may be added, *Ich kann*, I can; *ich darf*, I dare; *ich muß*, I must; *ich lasse*, I let. Those verbs are defective in English, all but two; *to let* and *to dare*; in German their conjugation is complete, except that most of them want the imperative mood. They are all irregular, and will be seen in the list of the irregular verbs. We are here concerned with their signification, which shall be briefly explained.

Ich mag, I may. Infinitive, *mögen*. This verb, according to the English, denotes the potential mood. In German it expresses, *a*. being permitted, being at liberty to do a thing; as *Er mag lachen*, *er mag weinen*, *ich verbiete es ihm nicht*, he may laugh, he may cry, I do not forbid it to him. *b*. It signifies chance, or possibility, especially in the preterimperfect of the subjunctive mood; as *Es möchte sich ereignen*, it might happen; *es möchte*

regnen, it might rain. *c.* It implies a wish or desire, especially in the present subjunctive; as *Möge er lange leben*, may he live long; *möge es der Himmel geben*, may heaven grant it. *d.* It signifies, to be able; Latin, *valere*; as *Wer mag deine Wunder erzählen?* who can recount thy wonders? In this sense the compound, *vermögen*, is chiefly used. And lastly, *e.* to like. Here we find it with the infinitive; as *Ich mag es nicht thun*, I do not like to do it; and also with an accusative case, like a transitive verb; as *Ich mag das nicht*, I do not like that. In that signification it is chiefly used of what we eat or drink. For example; *Mögen Sie Sauerkraut?* do you like sower krou? *Nein ich mag es nicht*, no, I do not like it. *Ich mag diesen Wein nicht*, I do not like this wine. *Ich mag nichts mehr*, I do not like any more. In these phrases, an infinitive may be understood, viz. *essen*, to eat; or *trinken*, to drink; so that instead of *mögen* governing the accusative, the above would be considered as an elliptical construction.

Ich will, I will. Infinitive, *wollen*. This answers to the Latin *velle*, and the French *vouloir*; and is applied to a future event, so far as it proceeds from will and inclination. For example; *Wollen Sie spazieren gehen*, will you take a walk; that means, Is it your will, or inclination, to take a walk? *Ich will lesen*, I will read; the same as, It is my will, or my inclination, to read. *Er will fliegen und hat keine Flügel*, he wishes to fly, and has no wings. From these instances it appears, that the verb in question contains an inclination, or a de-

sine, and that idea always attends it. It is not employed, as in English, to denote mere futurity. For, the latter is solely expressed by the auxiliary *werden*. Ich soll, I shall. Infinitive, *sollen*. The significations are as follow: a. to be obliged, to be compelled; Lat. *debere*; French *devoir*, or *falloir*. For example: Du sollst das thun, thou shalt do it; Fr. *il faut*. Sie sollen schreiben, you shall write; *il faut écrire*. b. To be bid, commissioned, empowered; Fr. *devoir*: as Soll ich es haben? shall I have it, or am I to have it? This is the same in meaning as, am I bid, or empowered to have it? Soll ich es thun oder nicht? shall I do it, or not? Fr. *dois-je le faire, ou non?* Here a sort of obligation is at the bottom, which the will of another person imposes; though it may be of that kind, to which we submit without reluctance. Thus we see the connexion of the first and second signification of *sollen*. It means, c. to be said, to be reported; as Der König soll angekommen sein, the king is said to be arrived. Die französische Flotte soll geschlagen worden sein, the French fleet is said to have been beaten. Es soll sich zugetragen haben, it is said to have happened. How this signification came to be attributed to the verb *sollen*, may very justly be made a subject of enquiry. The only way of explaining it seems to be the following; namely, if we suppose, that compulsion was the original idea combined with this word, we must deduce that expression from it. It implies a sort of compulsion, or necessity, when it is assert-

ed; that such a thing is to happen, or shall happen so, and not otherwise: then we go a little farther, and apply it to the past time. It is asserted, that such a thing has happened so, and not otherwise: or, it is insisted, such a thing has happened. When once the language had got to this point, another step followed. The idea of compulsion was laid aside, and the verb made use of, only to denote being said, or reported. In nearly the same manner we may account for its forming the future tense. Futurity may be thought of as proceeding from necessity: A thing is to happen so; I am to go out at such a time, or I shall go out. The idea of necessity was then omitted, and futurity alone understood. With this power we find it in the sister languages of the German, viz. the Danish, Swedish, and Dutch, and also in the English. In modern German it occurs only to form a kind of indefinite future. For example: Wenn das so sein sollte, if that should be so. Sollte sich das Wetter ändern, so wollen wir ausgehen, should the weather change, then we will go out.

[illegible]

what am I to do? Was soll das? viz. *seyn*, what is that to be? what does it tend to? what does it mean?

Ich kann, I can. Infinitive, *können*. It means a. to be able, Lat. *posse*, Fr. *pouvoir*. b. To be permitted, to have the liberty to do a thing. Thus it stands frequently, where the English put *may*. For example: *Sie können das thun, wenn Sie wollen*, you may do that, if you like. c. Indeed, it is more usual to express this idea by the verb *können*, than by *mögen*. We find it with certain nouns, having the appearance of a transitive, and signifying, to know, Fr. *savoir*. For instance: *Können Sie Deutsch?* do you know German? *Er kann Griechisch*, he knows Greek. In this sense it is only joined with words similar to those mentioned. We may supply an infinitive mood after them, such as *lesen*, to read; *sprechen*, to speak; *verstehen*, to understand; and consider that manner of speaking as elliptical; which, I believe, is more founded upon grammatical reason, than if we were to suppose it to be connected with the English verb *to can*, which also signifies *to know*.

Ich darf, I dare. Infinitive, *dürfen*. Between this and the English *dare*, there is more resemblance of sound, than of signification. The German expresses, to be allowed, not to be restrained. For example: *Ich darf es thun*, I am allowed to do it, I am not restrained from doing it. *Sie dürfen es nicht thun*, you are not allowed to do it, you are prohibited from doing it. With the negative, it answers to the English *must not*, implying a pro-

hibition. It neither denotes to have courage, nor to challenge, or defy; as *to dare*, in English. It is always joined with the infinitive, which is generally put, and sometimes understood.

Ich muß, I must. Infinitive, *müssen*. It is equivalent to the French *il faut*; the Italian *bisogna*, or *dovere*; the Spanish *deber*, or *deber*, &c. and coincides in its meaning pretty exactly with the English *must*.

Ich lasse, I let. Infinitive, *lassen*. This is used by the English, as an auxiliary verb, for the imperative mood; in German it has not commonly this function, because the imperative can be formed without it: though it is capable of nearly the same significations, that are given to it in English, except, perhaps, one or two, viz. *to put*, *to hire*, and *to hinder*. See Johnson's Dictionary.

2. The English join the auxiliary *to be* with the participle present, to form what is called *the definite or determined time**, as, *I am (now) writing*, *I was (then) loving*. This combination of the auxiliary is unknown to the German language, in which the definite time is not distinguished from the others. *Ich schreibe*, stands for, *I write*, and *I am writing*; *Ich schrieb*, for *I wrote*, and *I was writing*.

3. Another peculiarity of the English tongue is the verb *do*, employed to express the present and past imperfect of the verb active and neuter, marking the action or time with greater force and distinction; as, *I do love thee*. It is also of fre-

* See Lowth's English Grammar, p. 63.

quent and almost necessary use, in interrogative and negative sentences *. The Germans have not this idiom in their present language, though it does not seem quite foreign to them; for we find traces of it in some parts, among the lower classes of people, where the verb *thun* is used in the same manner, as the English *to do*. For example: *Ich that lieben*, I did love; *thun Sie ihm schreiben*, do write to him. This mode of expression is in our days quite excluded, and considered as totally obsolete, so that the student must abstain from it, though it may appear very congenial to his own language.

SECT. II.

CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

THERE is but one conjugation of the regular verb, of which the following is a representation:

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Present.		Present.	
Singular.		Singular.	
1 person, <i>e</i> ; as <i>Ich lobe</i> .	1 person, <i>e</i> .	1 person, <i>e</i> .	1 person, <i>e</i> .
I praise.			
2 person, <i>est</i> , or <i>st</i> .	2 ——— <i>est</i> .	2 ——— <i>est</i> .	2 ——— <i>est</i> .
3 ——— <i>et</i> , or <i>t</i> .	3 ——— <i>et</i> .	3 ——— <i>et</i> .	3 ——— <i>et</i> .
Plural.		Plural.	
1 ——— <i>en</i> .	1 ——— <i>en</i> .	1 ——— <i>en</i> .	1 ——— <i>en</i> .
2 ——— <i>et</i> , or <i>t</i> .	2 ——— <i>et</i> .	2 ——— <i>et</i> .	2 ——— <i>et</i> .
3 ——— <i>en</i> .	3 ——— <i>en</i> .	3 ——— <i>en</i> .	3 ——— <i>en</i> .

* See Lowth, p. 64.

III. The preterite participle has every where the syllable *ge* prefixed to it, except in verbs compounded with *haben*, and some others, which make

Preterimperfect.

Singular.		Singular.	
1	<i>ete, or te.</i>	1	<i>ete.</i>
2	<i>etest, or test.</i>	2	<i>etest.</i>
3	<i>ete, or te.</i>	3	<i>ete.</i>

Plural.		Plural.	
1	<i>eten, or ten.</i>	1	<i>eten.</i>
2	<i>etel, or tel.</i>	2	<i>etel.</i>
3	<i>eten, or ten.</i>	3	<i>en.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.		Plural.	
2	<i>e.</i>	2	<i>et, or t.</i>
3	<i>e.</i>	3	<i>en.</i>

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE.

Present, <i>en.</i>	Present, <i>en.</i>
Preterite, <i>ge-et, or t.</i>	Preterite, <i>ge-et, or t.</i>

GENERAL RULES.

- I. The other tenses are compounded with auxiliaries; namely, the preterperfect, and pluperfect with *haben*, or if the verb be a neuter of a particular description, with *seyn*, and the preterite participle: the futures with *werden*, and the infinitive.
- II. The first and third person plural of the present tense are always like the infinitive, and vice versa.—The first and third singular, of the preterimperfect, are alike. This rule applies to all verbs, both regular and irregular.

III. The preterite participle has every where the syllable *ge* prefixed to it, except in verbs compound inseparable, and some others, which make the infinitive in *ieren* or *iren*, as *regieren*, to govern; *handthiern*, to handle; *haselieren*, to jest; *stolzieren*, to be proud.

IV. The radical vowels of regular verbs are never changed. If therefore, for instance, *fragen*, to ask, be considered as a regular, it is not correct to make the second and third pers. sing. pres. indic. *frágst*, *frágt*, transforming the vowel *a* into the diphthong *á*.

V. The *e* before *st*, in the second p. sing. pres. ind. before *t*, in the third p. sing. and second p. plural: likewise before *t*, throughout the pret. imperfect, and before the same letter in the pret. partic. is commonly thrown out, when from such an abridgment no harshness of sound arises. But it must be observed, that this is only allowable in the indicative mood; and would be improper in the subjunctive.

VI. In verbs that have the letters *l* or *r* in the last syllable, the *e* of inflexion, after those letters, is always omitted, even in the infinitive: as *Sammeln*, to collect, for *sammieren*; *danern*, to last, for *daunern*. Sometimes the *e* before *l* and *r* is omitted; as *Ich sammle*, I collect, for *sammiete*; *du sammlest*, thou collectest, for *sammiebst* (*sammielest*); *er sammlet*, for *sammelt*. So, *es dauert*, it lasts, for *es dauret*. However, this mode of contraction is, neither so regular, nor so much in use, as the former.

AVITONUJUS

EXAMPLE.

Indicative.

Loben, to praise.

Lobe, pres. lobete, or lobte, pret. imperf. loben,

inf. gerobet, or gelobt, pret. part.

(ii) lobet, thou

Indicative

Subjunctive

Present (ii) he

Singular

Singular

1. Ich lobe, I praise.

1. Ich lobte, (if) I praise.

2. Du lobest, or lobst, thou praisest.

2. Du lobest, (if) thou praisest.

3. Er lobet, or lobt, he praises.

3. Er lobte, (if) he praises.

Plural.

Plural.

1. Wir loben, we praise.

1. Wir loben, we praise.

2. Ihr lobet, or lobt, you praise.

2. Ihr lobet, you praise.

3. Sie loben, they praise.

3. Sie loben, they praise.

(ii) lobet, thou

Singular.

Singular.

1. Ich lobte, I praised.

1. Ich lobte, (if) I praised.

2. Du lobtest, thou praisedst.

2. Du lobtest, (if) thou praisedst.

3. Er lobte, he praised.

3. Er lobte, he praised.

Plural.

Plural.

1. Wir lobten, we praised.

1. Wir lobten, we pr.

2. Ihr lobtet, you praised.

2. Ihr lobtet, you pr.

3. Sie lobten, they praised.

3. Sie lobten, they pr.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

Singular.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Ich habe gelobt, I have praised. | 1. Ich habe gelobt, (if) I have praised. |
| 2. Du hast gelobt, thou hast praised. | 2. Du habest gelobt, (if) thou have praised. |
| 3. Er hat gelobt, he has praised. | 3. Er habe gelobt (if) he have praised. |

Plural.

Plural.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Wir haben gelobt, we have praised. | 1. Wir haben gelobt, we have praised. |
| 2. Ihr habt gelobt, you have praised. | 2. Ihr habet gelobt, you have praised. |
| 3. Sie haben gelobt, they have praised. | 3. Sie haben gelobt, they have praised. |

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

Singular.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Ich hatte gelobt, I had praised. | 1. Ich hätte gelobt, (if) I had praised. |
| 2. Du hättest gelobt, thou had praised. | 2. Du hättest gelobt, (if) thou hadst praised. |
| 3. Er hatte gelobt, he had praised. | 3. Er hätte gelobt, he had praised. |

Plural.

Plural.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Wir hatten gelobt, we had praised. | 1. Wir hätten gelobt, we had praised. |
| 2. Ihr hättet gelobt, you had praised. | 2. Ihr hättet gelobt, you had praised. |
| 3. Sie hatten gelobt, they had praised. | 3. Sie hätten gelobt, they had praised. |

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

First Future.

Singular.

1. Ich werde loben, I shall praise.
2. Du wirst loben, thou shalt, or wilt, praise.
3. Er wird loben, he shall, or will, praise.

Singular.

1. Ich werde loben, (if) I shall praise.
2. Du werdest loben, thou shalt praise.
3. Er werde loben, he shall praise.

Plural.

1. Wir werden loben, we shall praise.
2. Ihr werdet loben, you shall, or will, praise.
3. Sie werden loben, they shall, or will, praise.

Plural.

1. Wir werden loben, we shall praise.
2. Ihr werdet loben, you shall praise.
3. Sie werden loben, they shall praise.

Second Future.

Singular.

1. Ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have praised.
2. Du wirst gelobt haben, thou shalt have praised.
3. Er wird gelobt haben, he shall have pr.

Singular.

1. Ich werde gelobt haben, (if) I shall have pr.
2. Du werdest gelobt haben, (if) thou shalt have praised.
3. Er werde gelobt haben, he shall have pr.

Plural.

1. Wir werden gelobt haben, we shall have praised.

Plural.

1. Wir werden gelobt haben, we shall have praised.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Plural.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>2. Ihr werdet gelobt haben, you shall have praised.</p> <p>3. Sie werden gelobt haben, they shall have praised.</p> | <p>2. Ihr werdet gelobt haben, you shall have praised.</p> <p>3. Sie werden gelobt haben, they shall have praised.</p> |
|--|--|

First Future Indefinite.

Singular.

1. Ich würde loben, I should, or would, praise.
2. Du würdest loben, thou shouldst, or wouldst, praise.
3. Er würde loben, he should, or would, praise.

Plural.

1. Wir würden loben, we should, or would, praise.
2. Ihr würdet loben, you should, or would, praise.
3. Sie würden loben, they should, or would, praise.

Second future Indefinite.

Singular.

1. Ich würde gelobt haben, I should, or would, have praised.
2. Du würdest gelobt haben, thou shouldst, or wouldst, have praised.
3. Er würde gelobt haben, he should, or would, have praised.

Plural.

1. Wir würden gelobt haben, we should, or would, have praised.

2. Ihr würdet gelobt haben, you should, or would, have praised.
3. Sie würden gelobt haben, they should, or would, have praised.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

2. Lobe (du), praise (thou). 2. Lobet (ihr,) praise (you).
3. Lobe er, praise he, or let him praise. 3. Loben sie, praise they, or let them praise.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Loben, to praise.

Pret. imperf. Gelobt haben, to have praised.

Fut. Loben werden, to be about to praise.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, Lobend, praising.

Preterite, Gelobet, or gelobt, praised.

We will subjoin the *passive voice*, which, as before said, is conjugated by means of the third auxiliary, werden, and the preterite participle.

blow no, bludge boy, mddad wala, ndm m 2
Gelobt werden, to be praised.

blow INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Present. have praised

Singular.

Singular.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ich werde gelobt, I am
praised. | 1. Ich werde gelobt, (if) I
be praised. |
| 2. Du wirst gelobt, thou
art praised. | 2. Du werdest gelobt, (if)
thou be praised. |
| 3. Er wird gelobt, he is
praised. | 3. Er werde gelobt, (if)
he be praised. |

Plural.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Wir werden gelobt, we
are praised. | 1. Wir werden gelobt, (if)
we be praised. |
| 2. Ihr werdet gelobt, you
are praised. | 2. Ihr werdet gelobt, (if)
you be praised. |
| 3. Sie werden gelobt, they
are praised. | 3. Sie werden gelobt, (if)
they be praised. |

Preterimperfect.

Singular.

Singular.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ich ward (or wurde)
gelobt, I was praised. | 1. Ich würde gelobt, (if)
I were praised. |
| 2. Du würdest (or wardst)
gelobt, thou wast pr. | 2. Du würdest gelobt,
(if) thou wert praised. |
| 3. Er ward (or wurde)
gelobt, he was pr. | 3. Er würde gelobt, (if)
he were praised. |

Plural.

Plural.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Wir wurden gelobt, we
were praised. | 1. Wir würden gelobt, we
were praised. |
|---|---|

INDICATIVE.

Plural.

2. Ihr wurdet gelobt, you were praised.
3. Sie wurden gelobt, they were praised.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Plural.

2. Ihr würdet gelobt, you were praised.
3. Sie würden gelobt, they were praised.

Preterperfect.

Singular.

1. Ich bin gelobt worden, I have been praised.
2. Du bist gelobt worden, thou hast been pr.
3. Er ist gelobt worden, he has been praised.

Singular.

1. Ich sey gelobt worden, (if) I have been p.
2. Du seiest gelobt worden, (if) thou have been p.
3. Er sey gelobt worden, (if) he have been p.

Plural.

1. Wir sind gelobt worden, we have been p.
2. Ihr seyd gelobt worden, you have been p.
3. Sie sind gelobt worden, they have been p.

Plural.

1. Wir seyen gelobt worden, we have been p.
2. Ihr seyed gelobt worden, you have been p.
3. Sie seyen gelobt worden, they have been p.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.

1. Ich war gelobt worden, I had been praised.
2. Du wärest gelobt worden, thou hadst been praised.
3. Er war gelobt worden, he had been praised.

Singular.

1. Ich wäre gelobt worden, (if) I had been p.
2. Du wärest gelobt worden, (if) thou had been praised.
3. Er wäre gelobt worden, (if) he had been p.

INDICATIVE.

Plural.

1. Wir waren gelobt worden, we had been pr.
2. Ihr waret gelobt worden, you had been p.
3. Sie waren gelobt worden, they had been p.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Plural.

1. Wir wären gelobt worden, we had been p.
2. Ihr wäret gelobt worden, you had been p.
3. Sie wären gelobt worden, they had been p.

First Future.

Singular.

1. Ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised.
2. Du wirst gelobt werden, thou shalt, or wilt, be praised.
3. Er wird gelobt werden, he shall, or will, be p.

Singular.

1. Ich werde gelobt werden, (if) I shall be p.
2. Du werdest gelobt werden, thou shalt be praised.
3. Er werde gelobt werden, he shall be p.

Plural.

1. Wir werden gelobt werden, we shall be p.
2. Ihr werdet gelobt werden, you shall, or will, be praised.
3. Sie werden gelobt werden, they shall, or will, be praised.

Plural.

1. Wir werden gelobt werden, we shall be p.
2. Ihr werdet gelobt werden, you shall be praised.
3. Sie werden gelobt werden, they shall be praised.

Second Future.

Singular.

1. Ich werde gelobt worden seyn, I shall have been praised.
2. Du wirst gelobt worden seyn, thou shalt have been praised.
3. Er wird gelobt worden seyn, he shall have been praised.

Singular.

1. Ich werde gelobt worden seyn, (if) I shall have been praised.
2. Du werdest gelobt worden seyn, thou shalt have been praised.
3. Er werde gelobt worden seyn, he shall have been praised.

Plural.

1. Wir werden gelobt worden seyn, we shall have been praised.
2. Ihr werdet gelobt worden seyn, you shall have been praised.
3. Sie werden gelobt worden seyn, they shall have been praised.

Plural.

1. Wir werden gelobt worden seyn, we shall have been praised.
2. Ihr werdet gelobt worden seyn, you shall have been praised.
3. Sie werden gelobt worden seyn, they shall have been praised.

First Future Indefinite.

Singular.

1. Ich würde gelobt werden, I should be praised.
2. Du würdest gelobt werden, thou shouldst, or wouldst, be praised.
3. Er würde gelobt werden, he should, or would, be praised.

Plural.

1. Wir würden gelobt werden, we should, or would, be praised.
2. Ihr würdet gelobt werden, you should, or would, be praised.
3. Sie würden gelobt werden, they should, or would, be praised.

Second Future Indefinite.

Singular.

1. Ich würde gelobt worden seyn, I should have been praised.
2. Du würdest gelobt worden seyn, thou shouldst, or wouldst, have been praised.
3. Er würde gelobt worden seyn, he should, or would, have been praised.

Plural.

1. Wir würden gelobt worden seyn, we should have been praised.
2. Ihr würdet gelobt worden seyn, you should, or would, have been praised.
3. Sie würden gelobt worden seyn, they should, or would, have been praised.

IMPERATIVE.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 2. Werde (du) gelobt, be thou praised. | 2. Werdet (ihr) gelobt, be you praised. |
| 3. Werde er gelobt, be he praised, or let him be praised. | 3. Werden sie gelobt, be they praised, or let them be praised. |

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Gelobt werden, to be praised.

Pret. perf. Gelobt worden seyn, to have been praised.

Fut. Werden gelobt werden, to be about to be praised.

Note. In the conjugation of the passive voice *worden* is used, in preference to *geworden*, because the latter, being joined with the preterite participle of another verb, would cause a disagreeable repetition of the syllable *ge*.—Sometimes *worden* is omitted in the past tenses, as *ich bin gelobt*, for *gelobt worden*, &c.: but it should be put, whenever those times are to be distinctly expressed.

SECT. III.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

THESE verbs deviate, for the most part, in the preterimperfect tense, and the preterite participle. Some differ in the present tense, and several in the imperative mood.

The number of irregulars amounts, at present, to about two hundred. Formerly it was more considerable; but it has decreased with the progressive cultivation of the language. Hence we meet with verbs, that, in preceding ages, had an irregular form, but are now inflected according to

the common standard of conjugation. Others there are, of which, even at this day, the irregular inflexion is usual, though at the same time they may, without offence, be conjugated in a regular manner. We shall in the following list point them out to the attention of the reader, by marking those, whose irregular character is become obsolete, by a double star (**); and those, which are, at the present period, inflected both ways, with a single (*). The latter, it is probable, will in time, like the former, lay aside the irregular shape entirely: and new attempts of regularity may perhaps be made upon others. For such is the nature of the human mind, that it dislikes anomalies, and always tends towards rule and system, by which its operations are facilitated.

AN ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

Present Indicative.	Preterimperfect.	Infinitive.	Preterite Participle.
B.			
Baek, to bake; 2, báckst; 3, báckt (or bäckst, backet).	(buck or backet) baken,	gebaken.	
Bedinge, to bargain, to make conditions.	bedung,	bedingen.	
Befehle, to command; 2, befehlst; 3, befehlt. Imperat. befehl.	befehl (or be- sohl.)	befehlen.	
Befleisse, reflexive, to apply oneself.	beßst,	beßeissen.	
Beginne, to begin.	begann,	beginnen.	
Beisse, to bite.	biß,	beissen.	
Berge, to conceal; 2, birgst; 3, birgt. Imperat. birg.	borg,	bergen.	
Berste, to burst; 2, birstest; 3, birst (or birset).	borst,	bersten.	
perat. birst.	besam,	besinnen.	
Besinne, reflexive, to recollect.	See	Erlegt.	
Berriege, or betrüge, to cheat, to deceive.			

Present Indicative.	Preterimperfect.	Infinitive.	Preterite Participle.
Bewege , to move, to persuade, to induce.	bewog ,	bewegen ,	bewogen .
<i>Note.</i> This verb is inflected regularly, when it simply expresses, to put in motion; and when it signifies, to affect, to touch pathetically.			
Biege , to bend.	bog ,	biegen ,	gebogen .
Biete (or biethe), to bid.	bot ,	bieten ,	geboten .
Binde , to bind.	band ,	binden ,	gebunden .
Bitte , to beg.	bat ,	bitten ,	gebeten .
Blase , to blow; 2, bläst ; 3, bläst .	blies ,	blasen ,	geblasen .
Bleibe , to remain.	blieb ,	bleiben ,	geblieben .
* Bleiche , to bleach, to whiten.	bleich ,	bleichen ,	gebleichen .
* Brate , to roast; 2, brätst ; 3, brät .	briet ,	braten ,	gebraten .
Breche , to break; 2, brichst ; 3, bricht . Imperat. brich .	brach ,	brechen ,	gebrochen .
* Brenne , to burn.	brannte ,	brennen ,	gebrannt .
Bringe , to bring.	brachte ,	bringen ,	gebracht .

Darf, to dare; 2, darfst; 3, darf.	dürfen,	gedurft.
Denke, to think.	denken,	gedacht.
* Dinge, to bargain, to hire.	dingen,	gedungen.
* Dresche, to thresh; 2, drischest; 3, drischt.	drischen,	gedroschen.
Dringe, to urge.	dringen,	gedrungen.
Empfange, to receive; 2, empfängst; 3, empfängt.	empfangen,	empfangen.
Empfehle, to recommend; 2, empfehlst; 3, empfiehlt.	empfehlen,	empfohlen.
Empfinde, to feel, to perceive.	empfinden,	empfunten.
Erbleiche, to grow pale.	erbleichen,	erblichen.
Erleire, to choose.	erleiren,	erleirt.
Erlosche, to be extinguished, to become extinct;	erlöschen,	erloschen.
2, erloschest; 3, erloscht.	erschallen,	erschollen.
* Erschalle, to resound.		

Present Indicative.	Preterimperfect.	Infinitive.	Preterite Participle.
erschrecken, to be frightened; 2, erschrickst; 3, erschrickt. Imperat. erschrick.	erschrak,	erschrecken,	erschrocken.
erwägen, to weigh, to consider.	erwog,	erwägen,	erwogen.
essen, to eat; 2, issest; 3, isst. Imperat. isß.	aß,	essen,	gegessen.
fahren, to drive a carriage, or to go in a carriage; 2, fährst; 3, fährt.	fuhr,	fahren,	gefahren.
fallen, to fall; 2, fällst; 3, fällt.	fiel,	fallen,	gefallen.
* falten, to fold; 2, fältest; 3, fält.	(fielt),	falten,	gefalten.
fangen, to catch; 2, fängst; 3, fängt.	fing,	fangen,	gefangen.
fechten, to fence, to fight; 2, fichtest, or ficht; 3, ficht. Imperat. ficht (or fechte).	focht,	fechten,	gefochten.
finden, to find.	fund,	finden,	gefunden.
* flichte, to plait; 2, flichtest; 3, flicht. Imperat. flicht (or flechte).	flocht,	flechten,	geflochten.

Fliege, to fly, to move by means of wings.

Fliehe, to fly, to run away.

Fließe, to flow.

** Frage, to ask; 2, frägst; 3, fragt.

Erstelle, to eat, applied to the brute creation;

Erstelle 2, frisst; 3, frist. Imperat. friß.

Erriere, to freeze.

③.

Gähre, to ferment.

Gebähre, to bring forth young.

Gebe, to give; 2, gibst; 3, gibt; Imperat. gib.

Gebieten, to command.

Gedeihe, to prosper.

Gefalle, to please; 2, gefällst; 3, gefällt.

Geh, to go, to walk.

Gelingen, to succeed, to turn out according to wish.

Note. It is only usual in the third person.

gestiegen.

gestoben.

gestossen.

gefragt.

gefressen.

gefroren.

fliegen,

fliehen,

fließen,

fragen,

fressen,

frieren,

flieg,

flieh,

fließ,

frag,

friss,

frier,

gegobren.

gebobren.

gegeben.

geboden.

gebiehen.

gefallen.

gegangen.

gähren,

gebähren,

geben,

gebieten,

gebiehen,

gefallen,

gehen,

gohr,

gebahr,

gab,

geboth,

gebieh,

gesiet,

ging,

gelang (or ge-

lung.)

gelingen.

Present Indicative.	Preterimperfect.	Infinitive.	Preterite Participle.
Setze, to be estimated, to cost; 2, gültst (or gülttest); 3, gült. Imperat. gült. * Genesse, to recover from illness. Gemesse, to enjoy. Geschehe, to happen, to be done, to come to pass; 2, geschiehst; 3, geschieht. <i>Note.</i> It never is joined to the infinitive mood (as the English <i>to happen</i>), and occurs but in the third person.	galt, genas, genoss, geschah,	setzen, genesen, geniessen, geschehen,	gegossen. genesen. genossen. geschehen.
Gewinne, to win, to gain. Gieße, to pour. Gleiche, to be like, to resemble. * Gleite, to glide. ** Glimme, to shine, or burn faintly. Grabe, to dig; 2, gräbst; 3, gräbt. Greiffe, to seize, to lay hold of.	gewann, goß, glich, glitt, glomm, grub, griff,	gewinnen, gießen, gleichen, gleiten, glücken, graben, greiffen	gewonnen. gegossen. geglichen. geglitten. geglommen. gegraben. gegriffen.

halten, to hold; 2, hältst; 3, hält.	hielt,	halten,	gehalten.
hängen, to hang, verb neuter; Lat. pendere; 2, hängt; 3, hängt.	hing,	hängen,	gehängen.
<i>Note.</i> The transitive is hängen, for which hängen is sometimes mistaken.			
* heben, to brew, to cut; 2, hebst; 3, hebt.	hieb,	bauen,	gebauen.
heben, to heave, to lift up.	bob,	heben,	gehoben.
heissen, to bid, to name, to be named.	hieß,	beissen,	gebeissen.
helfen, to help; 2, hilfst; 3, hilft. Imperat. hilf.	half,	helfen,	geholfen.
<i>R.</i>			
* können, I can, to be able; 2, kannst; 3, kann.	könnte,	können,	gekonnt.
* können, to scold.	tuß,	reissen,	gerissen.
* kennen, to know, to be acquainted with, Fr. connoître.	kante,	kennen,	gesehen.
* klingen, to sound, to ring; 2, klingst; 3, klingt.	klang,	klingen,	geklingen.
* kneifen, to pinch.	kniff,	kneissen,	gekneissen.
* kneipen, to pinch.	knipp,	kneipen,	gekneipen.

Present Indicative.	Preterimperfect.	Infinitive.	Preterite Participle.
Komme, to come; 2, kömmt; 3, kömmt, (also, Kommst, kommst).	fam,	fommen,	gekömmet.
Kreische, to scream.	frisch,	freischen,	gefrieschen.
Kreische, to be in labour. 3, krum.	frisch,	freissen,	gefriesen.
Krieche, to creep.	frod,	frischen,	gefroschen.
Jage, to drive, to chase.	jag,	jagen,	gejagen.
Lade, to load. 2, ladt; 3, ladt.	lad,	laden,	geladen.
Laße, to let, to permit; 2, läßt; 3, läßt.	ließ,	lassen,	gelassen.
Laufe, to run; 2, läuft; 3, läuft.	ließ,	laufen,	gelaufen.
Leide, to suffer; 3, leidet.	lieb,	leiden,	gelitten.
Leihe, to lend.	ließ,	leihen,	gesehen.
lese, to read; 2, liest; 3, liest. Imperat. lies.	las,	lesen,	gelesen.

liege, to lie, to rest horizontally, to be situated.	lag,	legen,	gelegt.
* Lösche, to extinguish, to be extinguished; 2, löscheſt; 3, löscht. Imperat. lösche.	löscht,	löschen,	gelöschen.
lüge, to lie, to utter a falsehood.	lög,	rügen,	gelegen.
mag, may; to be permitted; 2, magſt; 3, mag.	möchte,	mögen,	gemocht.
mähle, to grind.	mahlte,	mahlen,	gemahlen.
Note. Malen, to paint, is perfectly regular.			
meide, to avoid, to shun.	mied,	meiden,	gemieden.
Milke, to milk.	molke,	melken,	gemolken.
Messe, to measure; 2, mißest; 3, mißt. Imperat. miß!	maß,	maße,	gemessen.
Muß, I must, to be obliged; 2, mußt; 3, muß.	mußte,	mußen,	genußt.
nehme, to take; 2, nimmeſt; 3, nimmt. Imperat. nimm.	nahm,	nehmen,	genommen.
* Nenne, to name.	nennte,	nennen,	genannt.

Present Indicative.	Preterimperfect.	Infinitive.	Preterite Participle.
pfiffe, to whistle.	pfiff,	pfiffen,	gepfiffen.
pflegen, to foster, to cherish.	pflog,	pflegen,	gepflogen.
preife, to extol, to praise.	prei3,	preifen,	gepreifen.
Quelle, to spring forth, of fluids; 2, quist; 3, quist.	quell,	quellen,	gequollen.
raethe, to advise; 2, rath; 3, rath.	rath,	rathen,	gerathen.
reiben, to rub.	rieb,	reiben,	gerieben.
reiffe, to tear.	riff,	reiffen,	geriffen.
reite, to ride, on horseback.	ritt,	reiten,	geritten.
raune, to run with great velocity, to rush.	ramte,	rennen,	gerannt.
riech, to smell.	roch,	riechen,	gerochen.

ringen, to wrestle.	ringen, au	geringen.
rinne, to run, of fluids, to leak; also to coagulate.	rinnen, au	geronnen.
rufen, to call, to halloo.	rufen, au	gerufen.
salzen, to salt; (2, salzet; 3, salt.)	salzen, au	gesalzen.
Note. The participle of this verb is usual, but the other irregular parts are obsolete.		
saußen, to drink, of brutes; 2, saufft; 3, säuft.	saußen, au	gesaußen.
saugen, to suck.	saugen, au	gesaugen.
schaffen, to create.	schaffen, au	geschaffen.
Note. Schaffe, to prepare, to get, is regular.		
schalle, to sound.	schallen, au	geschallen.
scheide, to separate, to part.	scheiden, au	geschieden.
schine, to shine, to appear, to seem.	schinen, au	geschienen.
schilt, to chide; 2, schiltst; 3, schilt. Imperat. schilt.	schilt, au	geschilt.
schere, to shear; 2, schierst; 3, schiert. Imperat. schier, or schert.	scheren, au	geschoren.

Present Indicative.	Preterimperfect.	Infinitive.	Preterite Participle.
Schiebe, to shove.	schoß,	schießen,	geschoben.
Schieße, to shoot.	schoß,	schießen,	geschossen.
Schinde, to flay.	schund,	schinden,	geschunden.
Schlafe, to sleep; 2, schläfst.	schief,	schlafen,	geschlafen.
Schlage, to beat, to strike; 2, schlägst; 3, schlägt.	schlug,	schlagen,	geschlagen.
Schleide, to speak.	schlich,	schleichen,	geschlichen.
Schleiffe, to grind, to sharpen, to smooth.	schliff,	schleiffen,	geschliffen.
<i>Note.</i> Schleiffen, to drag along, to pull down, to demolish, is regular.			
Schliesse, to shut, to lock, to conclude.	schloß,	schließen,	geschlossen.
Schlinge, to twine; also, to devour.	schlang,	schlingen,	geschlungen.
Schmeisse, to sling.	schmiß,	schmeiffen,	geschmissen.
* Schmelze, to melt; 2, schmilzt; 3, schmilzt. Imperat. schmilz.	schmolz,	schmelzen,	geschmolzen.
* Schnaube, to snort.	schnob,	schmauben,	geschnoben.
Schneide, to cut.	schnitt,	schneiden,	geschnitten.
* Schraube, to screw.	schraub,	schrauben,	geschraubt.

Schreibe, to write.	schrieb, (or schrieb)	geschrieben.
Schreie, to cry.	schrie, (or schrie)	geschrien.
Schreite, to stride.	schritt,	geschritten.
Schwärz, to fester.	schwarz,	geschworen.
Schweige, to be silent.	schwiege,	geschwiegen.
Schwelle, to swell; (2, schwüß; 3, schwüll). Imperat. schwüll.	schwoll,	geschwollen.
Schwimme, to swim.	schwamm,	geschwommen.
Schwinde, to disappear.	schwand,	geschwunden.
Schwinge, to swing.	schwäng,	geschwungen.
Schwöre, to swear.	schwor (or schwur),	geschworen.
Siehe, to see; 2, siehst; 3, siehst. Imperat. sieh.	(ab,) opao	gesehen.
Sende, to send. compeller.	sende,	gesandt.
Siede, to boil, to seeth.	sied,	gekocht.
Singe, to sing.	sang,	gesungen.
Sinke, to sink, verb. intrans.	sank, (or sank)	gesunken.

	Present Imperfect.	Imperative.	Preterite Participle.
Simen , to think, to meditate.	simen,	simen,	gesimien.
Siben , to sit.	siben,	siben,	gesiben.
Sollen , I shall, to be compelled; 2, sollst; 3, soll.	sollen,	sollen,	gesollen.
Spalten , to split.	(spelt, obso.)	(spelt, obso.)	gespalten.
Spelen , to spit.	lete, (or)	lete, (or)	gespielen.
Spinnen , to spin.	spinn,	spinn,	gespinnen.
Sprechen , to speak; 2, sprichst; 3, spricht. Imperat. sprich.	sprechen,	sprechen,	gesprochen.
Sprengen , to sprout.	spreng,	spreng,	gesprengt.
Springen , to spring, to leap; 2, springst; 3, springt. Imperat. spring.	springen,	springen,	gesprungen.
Stechen , to sting, to prick, to stick, to pierce; 2, stichst; 3, sticht. Imperat. stich.	stechen,	stechen,	gestochen.
Stehen , to stand.	stehen,	stehen,	gestanden.
Stehlen , to steal; 2, stiehst; 3, stiehlt. Imp. stieh.	stehlen,	stehlen,	gestohlen.
Steigen , to mount, to ascend.	stieg,	stieg,	gestiegen.

sterben, to die, to lose life; 2, stirbt; 3, stirbt. Imperat. stirb!	sterben, zu gestorben.	stirben, zu gestorben.
stieben, to fly off with a jerk, or sudden spring.	stieben, zu gestoben.	stieben, zu gestoben.
stinken, to stink.	stinken, zu gestunken.	stinken, zu gestunken.
stoßen, to push; 2, stoßest; 3, stoßt.	stoßen, zu gestoßen.	stoßen, zu gestoßen.
streichen, to sweep, or rub along, to strike.	streichen, zu gestrichen.	streichen, zu gestrichen.
streiten, to contend, to quarrel, to combat.	streiten, zu gestritten.	streiten, zu gestritten.
tragen, to do.	tragen, zu getragen.	tragen, zu getragen.
treffen, to bear, to carry, to wear; 2, trägst; 3, tragt.	treffen, zu getroffen.	treffen, zu getroffen.
trifft, to hit, to touch the mark; 2, triffst; 3, trifft.	trifft, zu getroffen.	trifft, zu getroffen.
Imperat. tritt.	tritt, zu getritten.	tritt, zu getritten.
treiben, to drive, to carry on.	treiben, zu getrieben.	treiben, zu getrieben.
treten, to tread; 2, trittst; 3, tritt.	treten, zu getreten.	treten, zu getreten.
triefen, to drop, to distil.	triefen, zu getroffen.	triefen, zu getroffen.
trügen (or trüge) to deceive.	trügen, zu getrogen.	trügen, zu getrogen.
trinken, to drink.	trinken, zu getrunken.	trinken, zu getrunken.

Present Indicative.	Preterimperfect.	Imperative.	Preterite Participle.
verbergen, to conceal; 2, verbergt; 3, verbingt. Imperat. verbing. See Berge.	bergh, verberg, verbot,	bergh, verberg, verbot,	berghen, verbergen, verboten.
verboten, to forbid. See Biete.	bergh, verberg, verbot,	bergh, verberg, verbot,	berghen, verbergen, verboten.
verbleiche, to change from a brighter to a weaker colour, to fade. See Bleiche.	bergh, verberg, verbot,	bergh, verberg, verbot,	berghen, verbergen, verboten.
verberben, to spoil, to corrupt; 2, verberbst; 3, verberbt. Imperat. verberb.	bergh, verberg, verbot,	bergh, verberg, verbot,	berghen, verbergen, verboten.
verdrisse, impersonal, to offend.	bergh, verberg, verbot,	bergh, verberg, verbot,	berghen, verbergen, verboten.
vergessen, to forget; 2, vergiffest; 3, vergift. Imperat. vergiff.	bergh, verberg, verbot,	bergh, verberg, verbot,	berghen, verbergen, verboten.
vergleiche, to compare. See Gleiche.	bergh, verberg, verbot,	bergh, verberg, verbot,	berghen, verbergen, verboten.
verhele, to conceal.	bergh, verberg, verbot,	bergh, verberg, verbot,	berghen, verbergen, verboten.
verliere, to lose.	bergh, verberg, verbot,	bergh, verberg, verbot,	berghen, verbergen, verboten.
vermeide, to avoid. See Weide.	bergh, verberg, verbot,	bergh, verberg, verbot,	berghen, verbergen, verboten.
verschlinge, to devour.	bergh, verberg, verbot,	bergh, verberg, verbot,	berghen, verbergen, verboten.

verschwinde, to disappear. See Schwinde.	verschwand,	verschwinden, verschwinden.
verschwinde, to disappear by means of a sudden jerk.		
See Gieße, to comb, to comb.	versick,	versicken.
Bernirre, to confuse, to perplex.	verwirren,	verwirren.
Verzeihe, to excuse, to pardon.	verzeihen,	verzeihen.
Note. All these verbs, beginning with Ver, are compounds. Of some the simples have been mentioned before; of several they have become obsolete.		
Wachse, to grow, to vegetate, and to increase.	wachsen,	wachsen.
Wachse in stature; 2, wachst; 3, wächst.	wachsen,	wachsen.
Wage, to weigh, to examine by the balance.	wagen,	wagen.
Wasche, to wash; 2, wäschst; 3, wäscht.	waschen,	waschen.
Webe, to weave.	weben,	weben.
Weiche, to yield, to give way.	weichen,	weichen.
Weise, to show, to point out.	weisen,	weisen.
Weiss, to know; Lat. scire; French savoir.	wissen,	wissen.
2, weisst; 3, weiß.		

Present Indicative.	Preterimperfect.	Infinitive.	Participle.
3. wende: 3. wend.	wandte,	wenden,	gewandt.
3. wisse: 3. wiss.	warß,	werßen,	geworßen.
3. wirft: 3. wirft.	warf,	wiegen,	gewogen.
3. will: 3. willß.	wollte,	wollen,	gewollt.
3. wind: 3. wind.	wand,	winden.	gewunden.
3. ziehe: 3. zieh.	zog,	ziehen,	geziehen.
3. zerstreue: 3. zerstreue.	zerstob,	zerstoben,	zerstoben.
3. ziehe: 3. zieh.	zog,	ziehen,	geziehen.
3. zwinge: 3. zwinge.	zwang,	zwingen,	gezwungen.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The foregoing list exhibits the irregular verbs in those parts, which deviate from the rule: in all the rest, they conform to the regular mode of inflection. We may observe, that the first per. plur. present tense, is always like the infinitive, and that from thence the conjugation proceeds regularly. Of the preterimperfect the third per. sing. is constantly the same with the first; the other persons follow in their terminations the example of the regular verb. Where the imperative is not marked as irregular, it may be supposed to be made of the infinitive, by cutting off the final *n*, or *en*.

2. The preterimperfect takes in the subjunctive mood an *e* at the end: that is to say, when it terminates with a consonant in the indicative, an *e* must be added. Moreover the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are, in the subjunctive, changed into the diphthongs *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. For example: *Ich bat*, I begged, subjunct. *bäte*; *ich hob*, I lifted up, subj. *höbe*; *ich trug*, I bore or carried, subj. *trüge*. Some verbs, however, take a different vowel, instead of a diphthong: as *Ich kannte*, I knew, subj. *kennete*; *ich nannte*, I named, subj. *nennete*; *ich rannte*, I rushed, subj. *rennete*. Others have a diphthong, but not that, which corresponds with the vowel in the indicative. Of this kind are, *Ich besah*, from *besehe*, subj. *beföhe*; *barg*, from *berge*, subj. *bürge*, *gebahr*, from *gebähren*, subj. *geböhre*; *galt*, from *gette*, subj. *gölte*; *ramm*, from *rinne*, subj. *rönnete*; *spann*, from *spinne*, subj. *spönnete*; *stah*, from *stehe*, subj. *stöhete*;

verdarb, from verderbe, subj. verdürbe. In the examples first adduced, where *e* is put, in the subjunctive, for *a*, this is, properly speaking, no more than the regular form substituted. For, *fennete*, *neimete*, *rennete*, are precisely the same as *lobete*. Of the instances, which have diphthongs, unlike the vowels of the indicative, it must be remarked, that originally a change of the vowels in the indicative has taken place: and that *besah*, was formerly *besoh*; *harg* was *burg*; *gebahr*, *gebahr*; *galt*, *golt*; *rann*, *ronn*; *spann*, *spom*; *verdarb*, *verdurb*. Some of the latter are even now occasionally used, though perhaps not with sufficient propriety; as *besoh*, *gebahr*, &c. Hence the variation of the diphthongs in the subjunctive mood is easily explained.

3. The second and third per. sing. pres. and the second per. sing. imperat. of verbs, which have *ie* or *ü* in their first or radical syllable, are, in ancient language, and poetically, formed in *eu*: as *biege*, 2. *beugst*, 3. *beugt*; imperat. *beuge*: *biere*, 2. *beutst*, 3. *beut*; imperat. *beut*: *fliehe*, 2. *fleuchst*, 3. *fleucht*; imperat. *fleuch*: *fließe*, 2. *fließest*, 3. *fließt*; imperat. *fließ*: *lüge*, 2. *leugst*, 3. *leugt*; imperat. *leug*: *triege*, or *trüge*, 2. *treugst*, 3. *treugt*; imperat. *treug*: *ziehe*, 2. *zeuchst*, 3. *zeucht*; imperat. *zeuch*. This is not a permanent irregularity, and has, on that account, not been noticed in the above catalogue.

4. Compound verbs are, in general, inflected as their simples. Therefore, if these are irregular, the compounds will be the same. A few are excepted; for instance, *veranlassen*, to occasion, com-

pounded of *lassen*; *beremmen*, to blockade a town, from *remmen*; *rathschlagen* and *berathschlagen*, to deliberate, from *schlagen*. The greatest number of compounds, however, adhere to the conjugation of the simple verbs; and for this reason only a few appear in the preceding list, since they would have unnecessarily prolonged it.

SECT. IV.

VERBS NEUTER.

VERBS, which signify an action, that from the subject nominative passes over to an object, or refers to a person or thing, are in grammar called *active* or *transitive*: and those, which do not imply the passing over of the action to a certain object, are styled *intransitive* or *neuter*. Thus, *I love*, *I hate*, are actives, or transitives, because the action, therein contained, generally refers to an object, as *I love—my father*; *I hate—a slanderer*. But *I walk*, *I ride*, *I sleep*, expressing an independent action, that is to say, an action without reference to an object; or denoting merely a state of being, or acting, come under the denomination of neuters.

It will be perceived, that the line between verbs active and neuter cannot be drawn with precision. For those, which commonly are used as actives, may sometimes appear in the shape of neuters: *I love*, *I hate*, may mean, *I am in a state of loving*, *of hating*, without a relation to a particular object.

On the other hand, such as, in general, have the character of neuters, may occasionally assume the quality of actives, as *I ride—a horse; I fight—a battle; I walk—a mile.*

I should have little more to say of these verbs, were it not necessary to remark, that some of them take in the preterite tenses the auxiliary *seyn*, *to be*, where in English *to have* is used. These must be pointed out and described, that the student may not be led into grammatical error by the idiom of his own language.

Let it, therefore, be observed, that the following neuters are joined with the auxillary *seyn*.

I. Those, which signify a change or transition from one condition or state into another. For example: *ausarten*, to degenerate, pret. perf. *Ich bin ausgeartet*; *einschlafen*, to fall asleep, pret. perf. *ich bin eingeschlafen*; *erblassen*, to grow pale; *erfalten*, to grow cold; *erröthen*, to grow red, to blush; *erschrecken*, to get frightened; *genesen*, to recover from illness, to regain health; *gerathen*, to get into, to fall into, also to succeed, to prosper; *verarmen*, to grow poor; *verblühen*, to fade, to wither; *verhungern*, to perish with hunger; *verschwinden*, to disappear; *wachsen*, to grow, to increase. Add *sterben*, to die, to expire, and synonymous words, as *entschlafen*, to expire; for dying implies a change of condition.

II. Such as express motion with locality, *i. e.* motion with relation to place or distance. The place or distance may either be named, or understood; in which cases *seyn* must be joined to the verb, as

its auxiliary, in the past tenses. For instance: *Ich bin nach London geritten*, I have rode to London; *der Feind ist nach der Hauptstadt marschiret*, the enemy has marched to the capital. Here the locality is expressed. Frequently it is understood, as in verbs compounded with local particles, *ab*, off; *an*, on; *auf*, upon; *aus*, out; *bei*, near; *durch*, through; *ein*, into; *fort*, forth, forward; *her* and *hin*, towards; *über*, over; *um*, about; *vor*, before; *vorbey*, beside, passing by; *weg*, away; *zu*, towards. For example: *abreisen*, to set off, to depart; *anlangen*, to come to, to arrive; *anstreten*, to tread or step upon, to step forth; *aussteigen*, to get out; *bestreiten*, to step near; *durchsegeln*, to sail through; *eintreffen*, to come into, to arrive at; *fortschleichen*, to sneak off; *herfliegen*, *hinfliegen*, to fly towards; *überlaufen*, to run over; *umfahren*, to drive about, that means, to go the longest way; *vordringen*, to press forward; *vorbeyeilen*, to hasten by; *wegmarschiren*, to march away; *zufliegen*, to fly towards. The idea of space, through which the motion proceeds, or in other words, the idea of locality, presents itself to the mind in those verbs, though the place is not expressly mentioned.

Motion, however, may also be conceived as mere action, without the association of place or distance. The verb is then conjugated with the first auxiliary *haben*. Thus *reiten*, to ride; *fahren*, to drive; *springen*, to jump; *tanzen*, to dance; *schwimmen*, to swim: take *haben*, when they are put without mention of place, or allusion to locality: as, *Ich habe geritten*, I have rode; or I

have been riding; *sie haben gefahren*, they have been driving (a carriage); *er hat gesprungen*, he has jumped; *sie hat getanzt*, she has danced, or has been dancing; *wir haben geschwommen*, we have been swimming.

The manner of moving being expressed, as *fast*, *slow*, &c. *seyn* again serves as the auxiliary; because this cannot well be imagined without the notion of space. For example: *Wir sind langsam geritten*, we have rode slow; *wir sind geschwinde geritten*, we have rode fast. Also in *spazieren reiten*, Fr. *se promener à cheval*, to take an airing on horseback; as *er ist spazieren geritten*, he has taken an airing on horseback. For though this does not exactly coincide with the preceding examples, yet the manner of motion seems to be intimated, viz. on horseback. And if it should not appear to be connected with the former, let it be noticed as a separate observation, or as an exception.

III. *Seyn* is always joined with these verbs: *fallen*, to fall; *folgen*, to follow; *gehen*, to go; *kommen*, to come; *weichen*, to yield, to give way; and *haben* is never admitted.

IV. Likewise with the following: *begegnen*, to happen, to occur; *bleiben*, to remain; *gelingen*, to succeed, to turn out favourably; *geschehen*, to happen, to come to pass. — *Stehen* is sometimes found with the second auxiliary, *seyn*, but most frequently with the first, *haben*; indeed, the former may perhaps be considered as a provincial deviation. — *Aufstehen*, to get up, to rise, though a compound of *stehen*, is inflected with *seyn*, in no instance with *haben*.

ben: of which the reason seems to be, that it denotes motion with locality.

V. In some verbs it is doubtful, whether *sein* or *haben*, should be used. For instance, in *begegnen*, to meet; *beharren*, to persevere; *einfahren*, to stop at an inn, or a place of recreation; *landen*, to land; *verfahren*, to act, to proceed with.

SECT. V.

REFLECTIVE VERBS.

WHEN the action, expressed by a verb, returns back to the subject from which it proceeds, the verb is called reflective or reciprocal; as *I love myself, I cut myself, he hurts himself.*

It must immediately appear, that every verb, implying action, is capable of assuming this form: but there are several, in German, that never are used without the reciprocal pronouns. These are reflectives in the strictest sense of the word, and to them, in particular, the present section is devoted. Let it suffice out of their number to mention the following: *anmaßen*, to presume, to claim; *anschicken*, to prepare; * *aufschwingen*, to rise; *aufsern*, to intimate, also to come forth, to appear; *bedanken*, to thank for a thing; * *bedenken*, to consider; * *besinden*, to find oneself; * *begeben*, to resign; * *beheissen*, to put up with, to be contented; *berüßmen*, to boast; * *besinnen*, to reflect; * *berwerben*, to

sue, or to apply for; einbilden, to imagine; * enthalten, to abstain; * entschliessen, to resolve; erbar-men, to pity, to have mercy; freuen, to rejoice; grämen, to grieve; getrauen, to be confident; * unterstehen, to venture, to dare; widerstehen, to resist.

It will be useful to show an example of the conjugation of those verbs; and we will choose for that purpose one, whose inflection is regular. Those marked with a star are irregular, and must be looked for in the list of irregular verbs.

Sich freuen, to rejoice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Singular.

Singular.

1. Ich freue mich, I re-
joice.

1. Ich freue mich, (if) I
rejoice.

2. Du freuest (or freust)
dich, thou rejoicest.

2. Du freuest dich, (if)
thou rejoice.

3. Er, (Sie, Es) freut (or
freut) sich, he, (she,
it) rejoices.

3. Er (Sie, Es) freue sich,
(if) he (she, it) re-
joice.

Plural.

Plural.

1. Wir freuen uns, we
rejoice.

1. Wir freuen uns, we re-
joice.

2. Ihr freut, (or freut)
euch, you rejoice.

2. Ihr freut euch, you re-
joice.

3. Sie freuen sich, they
rejoice.

3. Sie freuen sich, they re-
joice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Preterimperfect.

*Singular.**Singular.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ich freuete (or freute) mich, I rejoiced. | 1. Ich freuete mich (if) I rejoiced. |
| 2. Du freuetest (or freu-test) dich, thou rejoic-
edst, &c. | 2. Du freuetest dich (if) thou rejoiced, &c. |

Preterperfect.

*Singular.**Singular.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ich habe mich gefreuet, or gefreut, I have re-
joiced. | 1. Ich habe mich gefreut, (if) I have rejoiced. |
| 2. Du hast dich gefreut, thou hast rejoiced. | 2. Du habest dich gefreut, (if) thou have rejoiced. |
| 3. Er hat sich gefreut, he has rejoiced. | 3. Er habe sich gefreut, (if) he have rejoiced. |

*Plural.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Wir haben uns gefreut, we have rejoiced. | 1. Wir haben uns gefreut, we have rejoiced. |
| 2. Ihr habt euch gefreut, you have rejoiced. | 2. Ihr habet euch gefreut, (if) you have rejoiced. |
| 3. Sie haben sich gefreut, they have rejoiced. | 3. Sie haben sich gefreut, they have rejoiced. |

Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.**Singular.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ich hatte mich gefreut, I had rejoiced. | 1. Ich hätte mich gefreut, (if) I had rejoiced. |
|--|---|

INDICATIVE.

Singular.

2. Du hattest dich gefreut,
thou hadst rejoiced,
&c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Singular.

2. Du hättest dich gefreut,
(if) thou had rejoiced,
&c.

First Future.

Singular.

1. Ich werde mich freuen,
I shall rejoice.
2. Du wirst dich freuen,
thou shalt, or wilt,
rejoice.
3. Er wird sich freuen, he
shall, or will, rejoice.

Singular.

1. Ich werde mich freuen,
(if) I shall rejoice.
2. Du werdest dich freuen,
(if) thou shalt rejoice.
3. Er werde sich freuen,
(if) he shall rejoice.

Plural.

1. Wir werden uns freuen,
we shall rejoice.
2. Ihr werdet euch freuen,
you shall, or will, re-
joice.
3. Sie werden sich freuen,
they shall, or will,
rejoice.

Plural.

1. Wir werden uns freuen,
we shall rejoice.
2. Ihr werdet euch freuen,
you shall rejoice.
3. Sie werden sich freuen,
they shall rejoice.

Second Future.

Singular.

1. Ich werde mich gefreut
haben, I shall have
rejoiced.

Singular.

1. Ich werde mich gefreut
haben, (if) I shall
have rejoiced.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

Singular.

2. Du wirst dich gefreut haben, thou shalt have rejoiced.

3. Er wird sich gefreut haben, he shall have rejoiced.

Singular.

2. Du werdest dich gefreut haben, (if) thou shalt have rejoiced.

3. Er werde sich gefreut haben, (if) he shall have rejoiced.

Plural.

1. Wir werden uns gefreut haben, we shall have rejoiced.

2. Ihr werdet euch gefreut haben, you shall have rejoiced.

3. Sie werden sich gefreut haben, they shall have rejoiced.

Plural.

1. Wir werden uns gefreut haben, we shall have rejoiced.

2. Ihr werdet euch gefreut haben, you shall have rejoiced.

3. Sie werden sich gefreut haben, they shall have rejoiced.

First Future Indefinite.

Singular.

1. Ich würde mich freuen, I should, or would, rejoice.

2. Du würdest dich freuen, thou shouldst, or wouldst, rejoice, &c.

Second Future Indefinite.

Singular.

1. Ich würde mich gefreut haben, I should, or would, have rejoiced.

2. Du würdest dich gefreut haben, thou shouldst, or wouldst have rejoiced, &c.

IMPERATIVE

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 2. Freue (du) dich, rejoice (thou). | 2. Freuet (ihr) euch, rejoice (you). |
| 3. Freue er (sie, es) sich, let him (her, it) rejoice. | 3. Freuen sie sich, let them rejoice. |

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Sich freuen, to rejoice.

Pret. imperf. Sich gefreut haben, to have rejoiced.

Fut. Sich freuen werden, to be about to rejoice.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Sich freuend.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Most of the reflexive verbs govern the reciprocal pronouns in the accusative, a few in the dative case. Of the latter class are, *anmaßen*, *einbilden*, *getrauen*: as, *ich maße mir an*; *du bildest dir ein*; *ich getraue mir*. The impersonal, *es dünkt*, it seemeth, either takes the accusative or the dative; as, *es dünkt mich*, or *es dünkt mir*, it seems to me.

2. Some verbs are only used as reflexives in a particular signification. For example: *sich bedenken*, to pause for the purpose of reflection, to hesitate, from *bedenten*, to reflect, to consider; *sich berufen*, to appeal to, from *berufen*, to call; *sich bescheiden*, to be contented with, from *bescheiden*, to remonstrate with; *sich fürchten*, to be afraid, from *fürchten*, to fear; *sich hüten*, to be cautious, to beware, from *hüten*, to guard; *sich verantworten*, to excuse oneself, to argue against accusation, from *verantworten*, to answer for.

3. Others are, in the same signification, used as simple verbs, and as reflectives: for instance, *irren*, and *sich irren*, to be mistaken; *scheuen*, and *sich scheuen*, to be shy of a thing; *zanken*, and *sich zanken*, to quarrel.

4. The reflective verbs are joined with the first auxiliary *haben*.

SECT. VI.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

VERBS, which only occur in the third person of the singular number, in as far as they are destitute of the other persons, are termed *impersonal*. Such are, for example, *es dünkt mich*, (or *mir*) or *mich (mir) dünkt*, it seems to me, methinks; *es dünkt mich*, or *mich dünkt*, it seems to me; *es geziemet sich*, it becomes; *es eßet mir*, or *mir eßet*, it loathes me; *es grauet mir (mich)*, or *mir graut*, I am afraid. To this class may be added the following, though in a strict sense, they cannot be called impersonal, because the first and second person may be used, when required, viz: *es donnert*, it thunders; *es blizt*, it lightens; *es regnet*, it rains; *es schneiet*, it snows; *es friert*, it freezes; *es thauet*, it thaws; *es hagelt*, it hails; *es reiset*, there is a hoar frost. And these: *es hungert mich*, or *mich hungert*, I am hungry; *es durstet mich*, or *mich durstet*, I am thirsty; *es schläfert mich*, or *mich schläfert*, I am sleepy.

Those impersonals, which have a personal or reciprocal pronoun after them, may be said to par-

ticipate of the nature of reflective verbs; as *es dünkt mich, es geziemet sich*. And of the reflectives some take occasionally the impersonal form: for instance, *es freut mich*, it pleases me, I am glad, from *sich freuen*; *es grämt mich*, it grieves me, from *sich grämen*; *es graut mich*, I am afraid, from *sich grauen*.

SECT. VII.

COMPOUND VERBS.

THIS division comprehends verbs, that are composed with prepositions, and such invariable words, as, in grammar, are styled particles. We exclude all other combinations; for example, those with a verb and a noun.

The compounds are either *separable*, or *inseparable*: that is to say, the particle or preposition, at the beginning, may either be separated from the verb, or may not.

I. SEPARABLE are those composed with

ab,	as ablegen, to lay down,	from legen, to lay.
an,	— anfangen, to begin,	— fangen, to catch.
auf,	— aufhören, to cease,	— hören, to hear.
aus,	— auslassen, to leave out,	— lassen, to leave.
bey,	— beystehen, to assist,	— stehen, to stand.

herbey,	as herbeyrufen, to call	
	near,	from rufen, to call.
vorbey,	— vorbegehen, to pass	
	by,	— gehen, to go.
dar,	— darbringen, to offer,	— bringen, to
	to present,	bring.
dabey,	— dabeystehen, to stand	
	by,	— stehen, to stand.
davon,	— davonlaufen, to run	
	off,	— laufen, to run.
ein,	— einkaufen, to buy in,	— kaufen, to buy.
überein,	— übereinkommen, to	— kommen, to
	agree,	come.
fort,	— fortfahren, to con-	— fahren, to
	tinue,	move along.
gleich,	— gleichkommen, to be alike,	to be equal.
heim,	— heimkehren, to return	
	home,	from kehren, to turn.
anheim,	— anheimstellen, to re-	
	fer to,	— stellen, to place.
her,	— herbringen, to bring	— bringen, to
	along,	bring.
herab,	— herabsetzen, to lower,	— setzen, to set.
heran,	— heransführen, to bring	
	on,	— führen, to lead.
heraus,	— herausholen, to fetch	
	out,	— holen, to fetch.
herein,	— hereinrufen, to call in	— rufen, to call.
&c.		
hin,	— hingehen, to go along	— gehen, to go.
hinab,	— hinablassen, to let	
	down,	— lassen, to let.

hinaus,	as hinauswerfen, to	fling out,	from werfen, to fling.
hinunter,	— hinunterspringen, to	— springen, to	
&c.	leap down,	leap.	
loß,	loßreißen, to tear	— reißen, to tear.	
	loose,		
mit,	— mitnehmen, to take	— nehmen, to	
	with you, also to	take.	
	censure,		
nach,	— nachfolgen, to fol-	— folgen, to fol-	
	low, to succeed.	low.	
nieder,	— niederstoßen, to strike	— stoßen, to push,	
	down,	to strike.	
ob,	— obliegen, to be in-	— liegen, to lie.	
	cumbent on,		
vor,	— vorgeben, to pretend	— geben, to give.	
weg,	— wegbleiben, to stay	— bleiben, to stay.	
	away,		
wieder,	— wiederkommen, to come again.		

Note. In wiederholen, to repeat, from holen, to fetch, it is inseparable.

Zu, as zureden, to persuade, from reden, to talk.

Rules.

1. The separation takes place

a. In the imperative mood; as, fange (du) an, begin (thou); fange er an, let him begin; fanget (ihr) an, begin (you); fangen sie an, let them begin. Thus: höre auf, cease, &c.

b. In the indicative and subjunctive, when the verb is not, by the influence of a pronoun or a con-

junction, removed to the end of the sentence. For instance: *Ich fahre fort*, I continue; *du fährst fort*, thou continuest; *er fährt fort*, he continues; *wir fahren fort*, we continue; *ihr fahrt fort*, you continue; *sie fahren fort*, they continue, &c.

c. When the infinitive is put with the preposition *zu*, (see Part 2. Chap. 1.) that preposition is placed between the compounding particle and the verb; as *anzufangen*, *aufzuhören*, *fortzufahren*.

d. The augment *ge*, in the preterite participle is inserted between the particle and the verb; as, *angefangen*, *aufgehört*, *fortgefahren*.

2. The particle, separated from the verb, is put

a. In the infinitive, and preterite participle, before the verb, as appears from the examples, just before adduced.

b. In the other instances after the verb; and not only after the verb, from which it has been disjoined, but also after the subject nominative, if that should happen to stand after the verb (see Part 2. Chap. 3. Arrangement of Words): as, *so fange ich an*, thus do I begin; *man hört der Lärm auf*, now the noise ceases: and, generally, after the cases governed by the verb. For example: *ich fange das Buch an*, I begin the book, verb *anfangen*; *nehmen Sie mir die Last ab*, take from me the burden, verb *abnehmen*; *wir theilten unsern Freuden die Nachricht mit*, we communicated the information to our friends, verb *mittheilen*. Indeed, the particle is hardly ever found before the cases governed by the verb, except it were from the constraint of rhyme or metre; and even, then it is not

allowable, if the cases are mere pronouns: as, *Ich fange es an*, I begin it; it would be intolerable jargon to say, *Ich fange an es*. Or *nehmen Sie mir es ab*, take it from me, which could not possibly be expressed by *nehmen Sie ab es mir*.—Sometimes the particle is also put after the infinitive, which is governed by the compound verb; as, *er fängt zu lesen an*, he begins to read, for *er fängt an zu lesen*.

II. COMPOUND VERBS INSEPARABLE, those beginning with

be,	as <i>beweisen</i> , to prove,	<i>fromweisen</i> , to show.
emp,	— <i>empfangen</i> , to re-	— <i>fangen</i> , to
	ceive,	take.
ent,	— <i>entehren</i> , to dis-	— <i>ehren</i> , to ho-
	honour,	nour.
er,	— <i>erhalten</i> , to preserve,	— <i>halten</i> , to hold.
ge,	— <i>gebrauchen</i> , to make	— <i>brauchen</i> , to
	use of,	use.
hinter,	— <i>hintergehen</i> , to de-	— <i>gehen</i> , to go.
	ceive,	
miß,	— <i>mißfallen</i> , to dis-	— <i>fallen</i> , to fall.
	please,	
ver,	— <i>verzehren</i> , to con-	— <i>zehren</i> , to
	sume,	waste.
verab,	— <i>verabscheuen</i> , to de-	— <i>scheuen</i> , to
	test,	shun.
vernach,	— <i>vernachlässigen</i> , to	— <i>lassen</i> , to leave.
	neglect,	
verun,	— <i>verunreinigen</i> , to	— <i>reinigen</i> , to
	soil,	clean.
voll,	— <i>vollziehen</i> , to exe-	— <i>ziehen</i> , to draw.
	cute,	

wider, as *widerrathen*, to dis- from *rathen*, to ad-
suade, — *visen*, to advise.

zer, — *zerstören*, to destroy, — *stören*, to stir.

Rule. These verbs never admit a separation of the pre-

fix, nor receive the augment *ge* in the preterite participle; except some compounded with *miß*, which, though inseparable, take the syllable *ge* in the said participle. Such are those of an active and transitive signification; as, *mißbilligen*, to disapprove, pret. part. *gemißbilliget*; *mißbrauchen*, to abuse, pret. part. *gemißbraucht*; *mißdeuten*, to misinterpret, pret. part. *gemißdeuter*; *mißhandeln*, to ill treat, pret. part. *gemißhandelt*. Others, however, composed with *miß*, especially verbs neuter, refuse the augment in the preterite participle: as, *mißfallen*, to displease, pret. part. *mißfallen*, not *gemißfallen*; *mißglücken*, to turn out ill, to fail, pret. part. *mißglückt*; *mißlingen*, to fail, pret. part. *mißlungen*; *mißrathen*, not to prosper, pret. part. *mißrathen*. Sometimes we find the augment *ge* in the pret. part. and *zu* in the infinitive, inserted between the particle and the verb: as, *mißgeboten*, *mißzubieten*, from *mißbieten*; *mißgeartet*, *mißzuarten*, from *mißarten*, to degenerate. But this is, in my opinion, a useless deviation from the rule, and those verbs may without impropriety be considered as inseparable.

III. SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE, are the verbs compounded with the prepositions.

durch, as *durchbrechen*, to break through, sep. and insep. pret. part. *durchgebrochen*, and *durchbrochen*, from *brechen*, to break.

um, as *umlaufen*, to run round, sep. and insep. pret. part. *umgelaufen*, and *umlaufen*, from *laufen*, to run.

über, as *übersehn*, to get over, to leap over, sep. pret. part. *übergeseht*; and *übersehn*, to translate, insep. pret. part. *überseht*; both from *sehn*, to put.

unter, as *untergehen*, to go down, to perish, sep. pret. part. *untergegangen*, from *gehen*, to go; *unternehmen*, to undertake, insep. pret. part. *unternommen*, from *nehmen*, to take.

Rules.

1. Those verbs, when separable, have always a neutral signification, without a case following; as, *er bricht durch*, he breaks through; *er ist durchgebrochen*, he has broken through. When inseparable, they are transitives, and govern the accusative case: as, *die Sonne durchbricht die Wolken*, the sun breaks through the clouds. Add the following examples: *Das Rad läuft um*, the wheel runs round, separable; *der Hund umläuft das Feld*, the dog runs round the field. *Die Pferde sehn über*, the horses leap over, sep. *der Knabe übersetzt den Homer*, the boy translates Homer, insep. *Die Sonne geht unter*, the sun sets, sep. *ich unternehme das Werk*, I undertake the work, insep.

2. The accent varies in these compounds; for when used as separable, it is laid upon the prepo-

sition, as *durchbrechen*; when inseparable, the preposition is void of accent, as, *durchbrechen*. So *umlaufen*, separable; *umlaufen*, inseparable; *übersetzen*, sep.—*übersetzen*, insep.—*untergehen*, sep.—*unternehmen*, insep.

We have confined ourselves in the above to such compounds, as consist of verbs and particles. For of those, which are composed with nouns, and certain adverbs, nothing particular is to be observed in their grammatical form. They are inseparable, and take the augment in the preterite participle, like simple verbs. For example: *frohlocken*, to exult; *handhaben*, to handle; *frühstücken*, to breakfast, are of that description; and have in the pret. part. *gefrohlocket*, *gehandhabt*, *gefrühstücket*. And all those must be included in that number, which are not mentioned under the heads of this section.

We have to add some remarks

Concerning the Signification of Compound Verbs.

In reviewing those which are separable, few difficulties occur. The prefixes, for the most part, may be rendered intelligible by translation. Thus *ab*, signifies off; *an*, on; *auf*, up or upon; *aus*, out of; *bei*, by; *da*, there; *ein*, in or into; *fort*, forth or forward; *gleich*, like; *heim*, home; *los*, loose; *mit*, with; *nach*, after; *nieder*, down; *ob*, on, upon; *vor*, before; *weg*, away; *wieder*, again. Only *hin* and *her* require an explanation. They are both particles of locality. *Hin* expresses motion proceeding from the person, who is speaking, to another point; *her* denotes motion from any place to-

wards that person. Thus, *er geht hin*, he goes along, means, he goes from the point, in which the subjective person is, to some other point; and *er kommt her*, he comes, signifies, he comes from any place towards the person. Therefore, when I bid any one to proceed from me, it will be, *gehen Sie hin*; and when I desire him to come towards me, *kommen Sie her*.

But more is to be said of the compounds inseparable. The nature and meaning of their prefixes is complicated, and multifarious; and I cannot, therefore, leave this topick, without assisting the reader by some observations.

Be, supposed to be related to the preposition *bei*, serves

a. To transform verbs neuter into transitives. For example: *folgen*, to follow, is a neuter, construed with the dative case: *befolgen*, to follow, in a metaphorical sense, to obey, a verb transitive, with the accusative;—*arbeiten*, to work, to labour, neuter: *bearbeiten*, to bestow labour upon a thing, to elaborate, transitive;—*lachen*, to laugh, neuter; *belachen*, to laugh at, transitive;—*steigen*, to ascend, or descend, neuter; *besteigen*, to ascend a thing, to mount upon, transitive, as *den Thron besteigen*, to ascend the throne;—*antworten*, to answer, to make answer, neuter; *beantworten*, to answer, transitive, as *einen Brief beantworten*, to answer a letter.

b. In composition with verbs transitive, it has the power of exchanging the case governed by the simple verb for one, depending on a preposition.

For example: *Blumen auf den Weg streuen*, to strew flowers on the way; here *Blumen* is the accusative case, governed by the verb *streuen*, and *den Weg* is governed by the preposition *auf*. Now, taking the compound *bestreuen*, it will be, *den Weg mit Blumen bestreuen*, to strew the way with flowers; here the cases are changed, and *den Weg* is governed by the verb: the former object accusative, in its turn, is combined with a preposition.—*Figuren auf das Papier mahlen*, to paint figures on the paper; *Figuren* is the object accusative, governed by the simple verb *mahlen*. Making the latter a compound with *be*, the phrase will then be, *das Papier mit Figuren bemahlen*, to paint the paper with figures; *das Papier* is become the object-accusative, and *Figuren* is joined with a preposition.

c. Any part of speech may by means of the prefix *be*, receive the appearance of a verb: as *besflügeln*, to furnish with wings, from *der Flügel*, the wing, a substantive; *bereichern*, to enrich, from *reich*, rich, an adjective. I have said, any part of speech may thus be turned into a verb: for the German grammar admits this operation, though not every combination, which may be formed in that manner, can be regarded as classical. For instance: *Er schreit juchhey!* he cries huzza—*ich will ihn bejuchheyen*, I'll huzza him! that means, I will make him change his tune, I will punish him, or something like it. Here an interjection is transformed into a verb. *Er nennt sich Herr Maskow*, he calls himself Mr. Maskow; *ich will ihn bemaskowen*, I'll maskow him, i. e. I will teach him how

to use that name; I will make him know what he is doing, or a similar idea. Here we see a verb made of a proper name, by the aid of the particle *be*. We may indeed look upon expressions of that kind as a sort of jargon, or cant language: yet they will tend to shew the nature of the word, of which we are speaking.

d. In some instances the signification of the simple verbs does not seem to be altered by the composition with *be*: as *fördern*, and *befördern*, to further, to forward; *fürchten*, and *befürchten*, to fear: the simples, as well as the compounds, are employed as transitives. However, if we strictly inquire into the use of such verbs, a difference may be discovered. For example: *befördern*, means to promote a person to a higher rank, in which sense the simple *fördern*, rarely or never occurs; and *befürchten*, to fear, is not used of persons, but only applied to things: as *ich befürchte diesen Umstand*, I fear this circumstance; whereas *fürchten* is capable of both significations. Moreover, the latter seems to denote a stronger fear, and *befürchten* merely to express apprehension, or doubt. But it would lead us too far from our object, to enter into a minute disquisition of this matter. We will, therefore, content ourselves with having superficially pointed out the difference; and proceed to the next component.

Ent expresses

a. Removal to a distance: as, *entfliehen*, to fly away, from *fliehen*; *entführen*, to carry off, from *führen*; *entziehen*, to withdraw, to take away, from *ziehen*.

Sometimes, however, it seems to signify approach, or, at least, motion towards a certain object: as in *entbieten*, to bid, to send word to; *entsprechen*, to answer to, to correspond with, to suit with. The same appears in the adverb *entgegen*, towards, encountering.

b. Privation: as, *entehren*, to deprive of honour, to dishonour, from *ehren*; *enterben*, to disinherit, from *erben*; *entbinden*, to free from a tie, hence to act as a midwife, Fr. *accoucher*, from *binden*; *entfesseln*, to free from fetters, to set at liberty, from *fesseln*; *entvölkern*, to deprive of population, to desolate, from *das Volk*, the people; *entwaffnen*, to disarm, from *waffnen*. It is in this signification the reverse of *be*.

c. It denotes origin and beginning: as, *entspringen*, to spring forth, to arise, from *springen*; *entstehen*, to arise, to be produced, from *stehen*; *entzünden*, to inflame, to set on fire, from *zünden*; *entbrennen*, metaphorically, to catch fire.

Note. Those verbs with *ent*, that signify a removal, being for the most part neuters, have generally the object, from which the motion is made, in the dative; and those, which express privation, if transitive, take the object in the accusative case. *Emp* is considered as a mere alteration of *ent*, before the letter *f*. But it might also be said, that it was a corruption of *ein*, in. For it seems, in some instances, to answer the meaning, which may be attributed to this preposition: as in *empfangen*, to receive, which originally might be *einfangen*; *empfinden*, to perceive, to feel, *einsin* (n).

In other verbs it does not suit so well: for example, in *empfehlen*, to recommend; where the signification of the simple verb would not favour the notion.

Er denotes

a. The obtaining of an object, in consequence of action, or exertion: as, *erfechten*, to obtain by fighting—*Die Engländer haben einen Sieg erfochten*, the English, by fighting, have obtained a victory. Thus *erreiten*, to obtain by riding; *ertänzen*, to obtain by dancing, &c.

b. A motion upwards: as, *erheben*, to raise up; *errichten*, to erect.

c. The act of opening: as, *eröffnen*, to open; *erbrechen*, to break open.

d. The act of inventing, and producing to light: as, *erdenken*, to find out by meditation, to invent; *erfinden*, to invent; *ersinnen*, to invent by reflection.

e. The placing, or being placed, or getting, into a certain state or condition: as *erwärmen*, to warm; *erröthen*, to grow red, to blush; *erschrecken*, to terrify, and to be terrified.

Ge. The power of this prefix, whatever it originally might be, is, at present, not at all distinguishable. It seems to have consisted in an intension of signification. But we now find most of the verbs, composed with this particle, the same in meaning as the simples: for example, *brauchen*, and *gebrauchen*, to use; *denken*, and *gedenken*, to think. Yet a particular sense is sometimes connected with these compounds, that is not so usually given to the simples. For instance, *gebrauchen* frequent-

ly denotes to want, to stand in need of, to have occasion for; whereas brauchen is not so common in that signification. Thus gedenken, construed with the genitive case, means to remember, to think of; as, gedenke meiner, remember me, think of me: in which construction denken never occurs.—This is the same particle, which is prefixed to the preterite participle, where it evidently is applied to indicate the past action of the verb.—In the districts of the Upper German dialect, it is, here and there, by the common people, put before every infinitive: as, geloben, for loben, to praise; gelieben, for lieben, to love, &c.

Ver implies

a. The idea *away*: as, vertreiben, to drive away, from treiben, to drive; verjagen, to chase away, from jagen; verschenken, to give away, from schenken. Hence it signifies

b. A loss: as, verlieren, to lose; verspielen, to lose at play; and

c. Destruction, or consumption: as, verblühen, to fade; verwelken, to wither; verschmachten, to be famished; to die of hunger; verbluten, to bleed to death.

It moreover denotes

d. Prohibition: as, verbieten, to forbid; verhindern, to hinder; verwehren, to hinder; verbitten, to refuse, to decline; versagen, to deny, to refuse.

e. Change, or transmutation: as, verrücken, to move a thing out of its place; verschieben, to put off; versetzen, to transpose; verpflanzen, to trans-

plant; verändern, to change; verwechseln, to confound.

f. It signifies doing wrong, going beyond what is just and proper: as, verführen, to seduce; verleiten, to misguide; versalzen, to spoil by adding too much salt; sich verrechnen, to misreckon; sich verschreiben, to commit an error in writing; sich versprechen, to make a mistake in speaking; vergessen, to forget; sich verstecken, to dissemble.

g. It notes shutting up, or closing: as, verschließen, to lock up; verstopfen, to stop up; vermauern, to stop by means of a wall, to wall up; versiegeln, to seal up; verpichen, to close, or stop, with pitch; vernageln, to nail up, to spike.

h. It enforces and strengthens the signification of verbs: as, verehren, to honour, from ehren; verspotten, to mock; verlachen, to laugh at; verleihen, to grant.

i. It involves the idea of a close union, and connexion: as, verflechten, to entwine, to implicate; verbinden, to connect; verbrüdern, to join by a brotherly tie; verschwägern, to unite by intermarriage; verschwören, to conspire. And lastly,

k. It expresses the placing, or getting (*i. e.* being placed) into a certain state or condition: as, verbessern, to better, to make better; verdunkeln, to darken, to obscure; veredeln, to make more noble; vergöttern, to deify; veralten, to grow obsolete, to fall into disuse; verarmen, to fall into poverty.

zer denotes separation of parts, dispersion, destruction: as, zertreten, to tread in pieces, to crush;

zerreiben, to rub in pieces; zerstreuen, to scatter, to disperse; zerstören, to destroy.

Miß, (or mis), answering to the English *mis*, expresses

a. An action, done, or carried on, in a wrong manner: as, mißbrauchen, to abuse, from brauchen, to use; mißhandeln, to ill treat, from handeln, or behandeln, to deal with; mißdeuten, to misinterpret, from deuten, to interpret; mißverstehen, to misunderstand, from verstehen.

b. It has a negative power: as, mißfallen, to displease, from gefallen, to please; mißbilligen, to disapprove, from billigen, to approve.—*Note.* We also find it with those significations, in composition with nouns: as, das Mißverständniß, the misunderstanding; der Mißbrauch, the abuse; das Mißtrauen, suspicion; mißfällig, unpleasing, offensive; mißtrauisch, suspicious.

Hinter signifies

a. Behind: as, hinterlassen, to leave behind.

b. It is used in a metaphorical sense: as, hinterbringen, to give secret intelligence; hintergehen, to deceive; hintertreiben, to prevent. And in nouns: as, die Hinterlist, the cunning; hinterlistig, crafty.

Unter expresses

a. The English *under*, Lat. *sub*; as unternehmen, to undertake.

b. The Latin *inter* and *ob*; as, unterbrechen, to interrupt; unterlassen, to omit.

Voll, full, is, in real composition, inseparable, and betokens the performance, and completion of

an action: as, *vollbringen*, to accomplish; *vollführen*, to put into practice, to execute; *vollziehen*, to put in act, to perform.

The particle *Un*, being, like the English *un*, a privative, only occurs in composition with nouns, and preterite participles. — (*Er*, answering to *arch*, is put before nouns, and denotes the chief, or first of the class.

CHAP. V.

ON THE PARTICIPLE.

THE participle, being deduced from the verb, and sharing its power and signification, is, in the English language, not improperly, considered as a part of the same. Here we assign to it a particular chapter, as a distinct subject of grammar: because there is something peculiar in its use, which requires, that it should be treated of separately. It seems to form a connecting link between the noun and the verb, though it neither entirely belongs to the one, nor to the other.

The Germans have two participles, the present, and the preterite; and we, therefore, speak

SECT. I.

OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

It is made of the infinitive mood, by addition of the letter *d*, as from *loben*, to praise, part. *lobend*; from *lachen*, to laugh, part. *lachend*, laughing.

This participle has the signification of the verb, from which it is derived, and may govern the same case, as the verb. With these qualifications it combines the nature of an adjective. In fact, it is never used otherwise, than in connexion with some substantive, or with the same relation to it, that a common adjective generally bears. For example:

der lachende Frühling, the smiling spring; der tanzende Knabe, the dancing boy; das laufende Jahr, the running (or current) year.

It is, like any other adjective, capable of the four forms: as the second form, erquickender Wein, refreshing wine; stärkende Speise, strengthening food; kühlendes Getränk, cooling drink. Fourth form: ein liebender Vater, a loving father; eine trauernde Schwester, a mourning sister; ein weinendes Kind, a weeping child. Examples of the first and third forms have been above adduced.

The first or adverbial form is never put after any verb; especially not after the second auxiliary, *seyn*, to be. Here the participle not only swerves from the usage of the adjective, but also leaves us destitute of a verbal combination, much in practice with the English. For, with regard to the adjective, it is common, in German, to place it adverbially after verbs; for instance: *dies ist schön*, this is beautiful; *jenes ist häßlich*, that is ugly. See above. And by means of the present participle, joined to the second auxiliary, the English produce what is termed *the definite or determined time*: as, "I am writing; he is reading; we were looking; he has been walking; they will be going."—But the German participle cannot be thus employed, except in a few instances, where, from its signification, it is quite regarded as an adjective: as, *es ist reizend*, it is charming; *diese Beleidigung ist kränkend*, this insult is mortifying; *ihre Sitten waren sehr einnehmend*, her manners were

very captivating; *die Noth ist dringend*, the occasion is pressing; *die Last ist drückend*, the burden is oppressive.

As an adjective, it may be said to admit the degrees of comparison, by means of additional endings. However, these degrees are not equally in use with all participles. Indeed, the comparative only occurs of such, as have more the signification of adjectives, than of the verbs, from which they are taken. At least they are become so current as adjectives, that, in common practice, they are hardly looked upon as parts of a verb. Of that description are, for example, *reisend* (from *reisen*, to charm) charming, pleasing, comparative, *reisender*, more charming, *emischmend*, captivating, agreeable, comp. *emischmender*, *fließend*, flowing, fluent, comp. *fließender*; *dringend*, pressing, irresistible, comp. *dringender*; *drückend*, oppressive, heavy, comp. *drückender*. Now these, and others of the same kind, suffer the comparative degree in the first, but scarcely in any other form. See Chap. 2. Sect. 5. Gen. Rem. Other participles are not to be met with in the comparative degree at all. If with them a comparison is to be made, it must be done through the medium of the word *mehr*, more.—The superlative degree, in all its forms, may be applied to those participles, which allow the comparative: as, *der reisendste*, *der fließendste*, &c. but cannot be transferred to the others.

The German participle has not enough of the nature of the verb, to serve for the purpose of con-

stituting a member of a sentence: which power is principally given to it in other languages. In English we may, for example, say with propriety: "Seeing the great number of prisoners, I concluded, that the action had terminated in our favour." This sentence consists of two members: *first*, I saw the prisoners; *second*, I concluded. The first member is expressed by the participle. So the following: "Hearing the noise of the cannon, he started up"—for, he heard the noise of the cannon, and started up.—In German, the participle cannot render this service: the members of a sentence are formed in some other way, and generally by means of conjunctions: as, "I saw the great number of prisoners, and concluded;" or, "when (as) I saw the number of prisoners, I concluded;"—"when he heard the noise of the cannon, he started up; or, "as soon as he heard the noise of the cannon, he started up." Much less would the language bear the compound participle, with the auxiliaries: as, "having loved," or, "having been loved." It would, for instance, be the most glaring error against grammar, to translate by the participle the following example: "Having received your letter, I immediately desired my servant to proceed"—*Habend erhalten Ihren Brief, &c.* The structure of the sentence must be changed in this, or some similar manner: "I received your letter, and immediately desired," &c. or, "When (as soon as) I had received your letter, I immediately desired my servant," &c.

Though that is the most proper use of the participle, in other tongues, the German does not acknowledge it; unless we consider the following mode of employing the participle, as connected with the former. Namely, it sometimes expresses the manner of acting, being, or suffering, and is then adverbially joined to a verb. For example: *Weinend sprach er zu mir, weeping he said to me; er setzte sich schweigend nieder, he sat down, preserving silence; sie standen trauernd auf dem Grabe, they stood mourning upon the tomb.*

The poets occasionally exceed the limits prescribed by common usage; and, in imitation of foreign languages, give a greater latitude to the verbal capacity of the participle. Allowance must certainly be made for poetical licence: and some privileges are to be granted to the muse, in order to distinguish her own from other composition. Yet this liberty ought not to be too far extended; nor is it to be supposed, that what most deviates from the rules of prosaic accuracy, is always most poetical. It will not be amiss to mention a few instances, which I shall take from a celebrated work, viz. Voss's translation of Homer. This is a most excellent version of that great poet: but, if any objection can be raised at all against its merits, the scrupulous imitation of the original, which prevails in it, and has the appearance, in some places, of pedantic affectation, may perhaps furnish grounds for censure. Among its peculiarities is the frequent use of the present participle, which, though it corresponds with the Greek, is not coun-

tenanced by the genius and spirit of the German language. For example:

Iliad, Book 1.

V. 51. Doch nun gegen sie selbst das herbe geschosß
himwendend, Traf er—*Turning the bitter arrows*
against them, he inflicted wounds.

V. 130. Gegen ihn rief antwortend der völkerrfürst
Agamemnon—*Agamemnon answering called to*
him.

V. 147. Ha! du in unverschämtheit gebülleter, sin-
nend auf vorthail—*Ah! thou, clad in impu-*
dence, *thinking of gain.*

V. 290. Ihm in die red' einfallend begann der edle
Achilleus—*Interrupting him, the noble Achilles*
began.

V. 325. Hin mit mehrern kommend—*Coming with*
more people.

V. 345. Jener sprach, und Patroklos, dem lieben
Freunde gehorchend, Führt aus dem zelt—*He*
spoke it, and Patroclus, *obeying his dear friend,*
led her forth from the tent.

V. 420. Du indeß an des meers schnellwandeln-
den schiffen dich setzend, Bürne dem Danaervolk—
Seating thyself near the ships, indulge thy
spleen against the Grecians.

Book 9.

V. 57. Hoch das wort anstaunend—*Greatly admir-*
ing the speech.

V. 86. In den händen die ragenden speere bewegend
Brandishing in their hands the lofty spears.

V. 194. Verlassend den sitz wo er ruhete—*Leaving his*
seat.

V. 196. *Beid' an der hand anfassend*—*Seizing them both by the hand.*

The most essential quality, which the present participle retains of the verb, is, that it governs a case. And this is perfectly agreeable to the idiom of the language, provided a sentence is not clogged by long, or many, words of that description. For example: *Die alles belebende Sonne*, the sun, which animates every thing; *der Früchte bringende Sommer*, the summer, which produces fruit; *die mir bevorstehende Gefahr*, the danger hanging over me; *des uns verfolgende Geschick*, the fate persecuting us.

Let it be noticed, that the cases governed are placed before the participle. We sometimes find the case and participle drawn together, and written as one word; for instance: *Ein ehrliebendes Gemüth*, instead of, *ein Ehre liebendes Gemüth*, a mind that loves honour; *der wachhabende Officier*, for, *der Wache habende Officier*, the officer upon guard; *die gesetzgebende Gewalt*, for, *die Gesetze gebende Gewalt*, the legislative authority; *die kriegsführenden Mächte*, for, *Krieg führenden*, the belligerent powers.

From analogy to the foregoing, the participles of reflective verbs would likewise be admitted: as, *Der sich freuende Vater*, the father, who rejoices; *die sich grämende Mutter*, the mother, who chagrine, or frets, herself. Yet they are not much favoured by the custom of the language, and seldom made use of. Of impersonal verbs, as such, no present participle can exist.

To answer the Latin participle in *dus*, which is of a gerundive signification, and in English ex-

pressed by the preterite participle, with *to be* before it, the Germans have modelled their present participle into a particular shape; namely, they prefix the preposition *zu*, to; and then invest it with the power alluded to. For example: *Das hoch zu schätzende Verdienst*, merit to be highly esteemed; *die zu tadelnde Strenge*, severity which is to be blamed; *eine schwer zu behauptende Besizung*, a possession to be maintained with difficulty. So: *Hochzuhebender Herr*, honourable Sir, (who is greatly to be honoured).—This modification of the participle arose from the infinitive with that preposition. For the Germans (like other nations) employ the infinitive of the active voice, with *zu*, where the English express themselves by means of the passive: as, *Dies ist zu loben*, this is to be praised (literally, to praise); *das ist zu tadeln*, that is to be blamed (lit. to blame). With respect to that participle, the student should be on his guard, and not form any new combination of this kind, without the authority of good examples. For, if not used with discretion, it may degenerate into grammatical pedantry.

The present participle may in English be converted into a substantive, by prefixing the article; as, *the writing, the reading, &c.* This cannot be done in German, where the infinitive serves for that purpose; as, *das Schreiben, das Lesen.*

SECT. II.

THE PRETERITE PARTICIPLE.

ITS formation is sufficiently known from the fourth chapter; so that we may be brief upon this subject.—The preterite participles either end in *t* (*et*) or *n* (*en*); and have, for the most part, the augment *ge* before them; as, *gelobt*, *gesprochen*. That augment is only refused by verbs compound inseparable, and by a few others, whose infinitive is in *ieren*, or *iren*; as, *regiert*, *lamentiert*, *baseliert*, *spaziert*.

The function of the preterite participle is twofold: *firstly*, when combined with the auxiliary verbs, it makes the compound tenses of conjugation; and *secondly*, as an adjective, it is joined to substantives. In the latter capacity, it is more freely used by the Germans, than by the English. The former employ, without difference, any preterite participle as an adjective, and in all the four forms. For example: second f. *Geliebter Sohn*, loved son; third f. *die gepriesene Tugend*, the praised virtue; fourth f. *ein verachtetes Geschöpf*, a despised creature.

The nature of an adjective farther appears in the degrees of comparison, of which this participle is susceptible. It is, indeed, limited in the comparative, which it only takes in the first, or adverbial form: but the superlative degree is admitted in its full extent. See General Remarks, Chap. 2. Sect. 5.

There are participles, that continue in use in the quality of adjectives, though the verbs are become obsolete. Such are, *behaftet*, afflicted with; *bescheiden*, modest; *gewogen*, friendly, favouring; *geschickt*, clever; *geschlaht*, neat, proper; *gewohnt*, accustomed. Others, though reducible to existing verbs, are considered as mere adjectives in their signification. Of this kind are, *berühmt*, renowned; *gelehrt*, learned; *vergnügt*, pleased, gay, happy; *verwandt*, related by kindred; *vollkommen*, perfect. Nay, so strong is the tendency of the preterite participle towards the nature of the noun, that adjectives are formed in the participial shape, though not derived from any verb: for instance, *gesittet*, good mannered, from *die Sitten*, manners, noun substantive; *beherzt*, courageous, from *das Herz*, the heart; *bejahrt*, advanced in years, old, from *das Jahr*, the year; *bemittelt*, wealthy, from *die Mittel*, plur. wealth; *bemoost*, covered with moss, from *das Moos*, the moss; *beschist*, covered with reeds, from *das Schilf*, the reed. Indeed, these participial adjectives are composed in different ways. From simple verbs, compound participles are made, which bear the signification of adjectives. This is seen in the following examples: *befannt*, known, acquainted, from *kennen*, to know; *beredt*, eloquent, from *reden*, to speak; *beschaffen*, circumstanced, from *schaffen*, to cause to exist; *bewandert*, conversant in a thing, from *wandern*, to wander; *abgeneigt*, disinclined, unfavourable, from *neigen*, to incline; *verloffen*, given to drinking, from *saufen*, to drink intemperately; *verschwiegen*, habituated to

secrecy, faithful to a secret, from *schweigen*, to be silent.

The preterite participle, in English, may be put together with the present participle of an auxiliary verb; as, "having loved, being loved, having been loved:" the German language does not license this connexion, as has been observed in the first Section of the present Chapter.

The signification of the pret. participle is either passive, or denotes a state, or quality. Yet some participles of verbs of motion, joined with the verb *kommen*, and expressing the manner of coming, or approaching, seem to have an active power; as, *er kommt geritten*, he comes (lit. ridden) riding, or on horseback, from *reiten*; *er kommt gelaufen*, he comes running, from *laufen*; *er kommt gefahren*, he comes driving, i. e. in a carriage, from *fahren*; *er kommt geflogen*, he comes flying, i. e. upon wings, from *fliegen*.

The prefix *un*, being put before any participle, reverses the signification, or makes it negative. For instance: *ungeliebt*, not loved; *ungestrast*, unpunished; *ungerächt*, unavenged.

CHAP. VI.

ON THE ADVERB.

FROM general grammar we know, that adverbs are words, which in speech are joined to other words, to express a certain modification, i. e. a mode of action, of existence, or a quality. Thus there are adverbs denoting manner, order, time, place, motion, quantity, quality, relation, comparison, doubt, affirmation, negation, demonstration, interrogation. It would be needless to enter into a detail of all these classes of adverbs: we will therefore confine ourselves to a few observations more closely connected with the purpose of practical utility.

Adverbs are not variable, except that some admit the degrees of comparison, as, in English, *soon*, comp. *sooner*, sup. *soonest*. In German the adverbs of quality are particularly subject to the degrees of comparison, as, *wohl*, *besser*, *am besten*, well, better, best; *schön*, *finely*; *schöner*, *more finely*; *am schönsten*, *most finely*.

This class of adverbs, viz. those of quality, is very numerous in the German language: for every adjective, at the same time, furnishes an adverb. The first form of adjectives, thence called the adverbial, may without limitation be employed in that capacity. For this reason it has been thought by some grammarians, that adjectives were nothing but the adverb provided with declinable terminations, and adapted to substantives. It

seems to be of little importance, what name is attached to those words; nor does it much signify, whether the adverb, or the adjective, has the honour of being first in rank and origin. But when no real advantage is derived from an innovation of grammatical terms, I judge it more suitable for my plan, to adhere to the old mode of distinction, and to represent things in that manner, in which they have been usually considered, and generally understood.

To form an adverb of quality from an adjective, requires, in English, the addition of the syllable *ly*; as from *quiet*, *quietly*; from *fine*, *finely*; *nice*, *nicely*. The German adjective has the means of yielding an adverb out of its own forms, quite ready for use, as before stated. We find, indeed, in some instances the termination *lich*, answering to the English *ly*; as, *kurzlich*, not long ago; *erstlich*, firstly; *schwerlich*, hardly, scarcely: but this is not exclusively adverbial. *Lich* is also a common ending of adjectives; for example: *mannlich*, manly; *fürstlich*, princely; *königlich*, royal, or kingly; *glücklich*, lucky; *gefährlich*, dangerous.

Many words are formed into adverbs by means of an additional *s*; for example: *bereits*, already, from *bereit*, ready; *stets*, constantly, from *stet*, constant; *eilends*, hastily, from *eilend*, partic. hasting; *besonders*, particularly, from *besonder*, particular; *anders*, otherwise, from *ander*, other; *rechts*, to the right hand, from *recht*, right; *links*, to the left, from *linf*, left. Add the distinctive numerals, in *ens*, which are adverbs; as, *erstens*, firstly; *zweytens*,

secondly; *brittenſ*, thirdly, &c. And also the following: *bestenſ*, in the best manner; *chestenſ*, with the first opportunity; *meistenſ*, mostly; *höchstenſ*, at the most; *übrigenſ*, as for the rest, in the mean time.

This adverbial *s* I consider as being originally the characteristick of the genitive case. For, in the first place, we know, that the letter *s* is generally used in the German language to mark that case. With this power, it is not limited to words of the masculine or neuter gender, though to them most commonly it is given; but may also be added to nouns feminine, when no other mode of distinction is at hand. So we say, *Floraſ Schönheiten*, the beauties of Flora, though Flora is a feminine; *Dianaſ strenge Tugend*, Diana's severe virtue. See moreover a remark, Chap. 2. Sect. 3. Gen. Rem. III.

In the next place I have to state, that the genitive occurs absolutely, that is to say, without being governed by any other word; where we might expect a case with a preposition. Thus it is usual to say, *Abendſ*, or *deſ Abendſ*, for *an dem Abend*, in the evening; *Morgenſ*, or *deſ Morgenſ*, in the morning; *Mittagſ*, or *deſ Mittagſ*, at noon; *Montagſ*, on Monday; *Dienſtagſ*, on Tuesday, &c. Also with adjectives, as, *geradeſ Wegeſ*, straightways; *keineſ Wegeſ*, by no means; *widrigen Falleſ*, in case of any thing contrary happening; *allen Falleſ*, at all events; *folgenden Tageſ*, on the following day. In all these instances, the genitive case is characterised by the final *s*. This is even applied

to nouns of the feminine gender, as *Nachts*, in the night; *Wittwochs*, on Wednesday (supposing it to be from *die Wittwoche*). And, what is extraordinary, as these words by the additional *s* resemble the masculine or neuter gender, we find sometimes the article of the latter prefixed, though they are every where else feminines, as *des Nachts*, *des Wittwochs*. Nouns feminine, having the characteristick *s*, occur also with adjectives and pronouns before them. For example, *meiner Seite*, on my part, from *die Seite*, the side; *aller Seite*, on all parts. In *diesseits*, on this side; *jenseits*, on the other side, a contraction has taken place: for, like the former, it should be, *dieser Seite*, *jener Seite*. We meet with a singular instance of a noun plural being marked with the characteristick *s* of the genitive. This is, *allerdinges*, by all means, which is evidently put for *aller Dinge*, of all things.

Thus it is shewn, that nouns substantive, in the genitive, may stand, where, according to common grammar, a case with a preposition would be required. It has moreover been explained, that those genitives are generally distinguished by the addition of the letter *s*. Now let us observe, that, as adverbs serve to express in one word the meaning of two or more (for example, *wisely*, instead of *with wisdom**): so, on the other hand, those genitive cases of substantives, of which we have been speaking, may be said to have the signification of adverbs. And in that light many of them are at present considered, and written in the same man-

* See Lindley Murray's Grammar, p. 85.

ner, as adverbs. For instance: *feinesweges*, by no means; *allenfalls*, at all events; *diesseits*, on this side; *jenseits*, on the other side; *allerdings*, by all means, &c. In short, we may look upon the *s* of the genitive case, as an adverbial characteristick. For the steps, that bring us to this conclusion, naturally follow one after the other, according to what has been stated in the foregoing. And admitting that supposition, we shall find no difficulty in accounting for the final *s* in those words, with which we first set out. Namely, from substantives the adverbial *s* was transferred to adjectives, and participles: and by its assistance adverbs were made from the latter. We may perhaps farther explain these adverbs by supplying certain substantives, and by considering them as elliptical expressions. Something of this kind has been attempted, Chap. 2. Sect. 6. Gen. Rem. III. But as it would not be easy to find appropriate words for filling up the supposed ellipsis in all instances, we may rest contented with the notion, that, in imitation of the genitive cases of substantives, the characteristick letter of the genitive, has also been assigned to adjectives and participles, for the purpose of forming adverbs. Most of them end simply in *s*, as, *folgendes*, subsequently; *nachgehendes*, afterwards; *öfters*, repeatedly; *stracks*, straightways; *vollendes*, even, not only so, but also; and those mentioned before. Some terminate in *ens*, as *schönstens*, in the finest manner; *lestens*, lately, the other day; *viertens*, fourthly; *fünftens*, fifthly; &c.—This variation may be regarded as proceeding from the

different forms of the adjectives, viz. the former from the second, and the latter from the third. Compare Gen. Rem. II. Chap. 2. Sect. 6.

It will be understood, that though *s* is an adverbial termination, we are not at liberty, by it to model new adverbs. We must limit ourselves to those, which exist, and are authorized by use.

8. With the Accusative.

4. With the Disk and Accusative

SECRET

The question with the affirmative is
 "Is it better to be a Frenchman than
 to be a Frenchman?" and the answer is
 "No, it is not better to be a Frenchman
 than to be a Frenchman." We had better
 be a Frenchman, as we are a Frenchman
 of the French; where the name of French
 is mentioned, it is mentioned. It is not
 in French, in its sense, but in its
 sense, for, instead of it—French, as a
 judgment of English, French, as a
 French, or French, as a French, it is
 not, and is always not, in the case of
 French, French seems to be preferred with the
 sense, to which it is French, and we are
 not French, or French, as a French, the French
 but French is generally used, when the substance
 has no article before it, as "Frenchman," "French
 account, or for the sake of pleasantness, it occurs

CHAP. VII.

ON THE PREPOSITION.

CONTAINING:

1. The Prepositions with the Genitive Case.
2. Those with the Dative.
3. With the Accusative.
4. With the Dative and Accusative.

SECT. I.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GENITIVE CASE.

Anstatt, or *Statt*, instead of.—*Die Statt*, denotes a place, and is the same as the English *stead*; *anstatt*, therefore, means literally, in the place of, like the English *instead*. We find *anstatt* sometimes separated; as, *an des Bruders Statt*, instead of the brother: where the nature of *Statt*, as a substantive, is resumed. Similar to this we have in English, *in his stead*, for, instead of him; *in its stead*, for, instead of it.—*Statt*, as a preposition, is an abridgment of *anstatt*.

Halben, or *Halber*, on account of. It signifies a motive; and is always put after the case it governs. *Halben* seems to be preferred, when the substantive, to which it is joined, has an article; as, *des Geldes halben*, on account of the money: but *halber* is generally used, when the substantive has no article before it, as, *Bergnügens halber*, on account, or for the sake, of pleasure. It occurs

abbreviated in *deßhalb*, on that account; *weßhalb*, on which account; and in the following four compound prepositions:

Außerhalb, without, on the outside of.

Innerhalb, within, in the inner part of.

Oberhalb, above, on the upper side of.

Unterhalb, below, on the lower side of.

Dießeits, on this side of; Lat. *cis*; as *Dießeits des Flusses*, on this side of the river.

Jenseits, on the farther side of; Lat. *trans*: as, *Jenseits des Flusses*, on the other side of the river.

Kraft, by the power of.

Laut, according to, conformably to, by the tendency of: as, *Laut des Befehls*, according to the order, or by the tendency of the order.

Mittelst, or *Bermittelst*, by the means of.

Um: willen, for the sake of: as, *Um Gottes willen*, for God's sake; *um Ihrer Ehre willen*, for the sake of your honour.

Ungeachtet, (or *Ohngeachtet*,) notwithstanding. It may be placed before or after its case. Sometimes it is found with the dative; as, *Dem ungeacht*, notwithstanding that. *Ohngeachtet* is not so proper as *Ungeachtet*.

Unweit, not far from: as, *Unweit des Dorfes*, not far from the village.

Bermöge, by dint of, by the power of, by means of: as, *Bermöge der Übung*, by dint of practice; *vermöge des Fleißes*, by means of diligence.

Während, during: as, *Während des Krieges*, during the war.

Wegen, *a.* because of, on account of: as, *Ich that es meines Vaters wegen*, I did it because of my father. *b.* Concerning, with regard to, relating to: as, *Er sprach mit mir wegen des Hauses*, he spoke to me concerning the house. It may stand before or after the word it governs; commonly it is put before, when used in the first signification; and after, when in the second.

SECT. I.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE DATIVE CASE.

Auß, out of.

Außer, *a.* out of, on the outside of; as, *Außer dem Hause*, out of the house. *b.* Out of, *i. e.* deviating from; as, *Außer Ordnung*, out of order; *außer Stande*, out of condition; *ich war außer mir*, I was beside myself, *i. e.* I was deprived of the use of my senses. *c.* Besides, *i. e.* over and above: as, *Außer den Bürgern von London kamen auch viele Fremde*, besides the citizens of London, many strangers also came.—It takes the genitive in one instance, viz. *Außer Landes*, out of the country, abroad.

Bey, *a.* noting proximity, by, beside, near to; *Lat. juxta*; as, *Er steht bey dem Könige*, he stands by the king. *b.* With, in company of, *Fr. chez*: as, *Der Arzt ist bey ihm gewesen*, the physician has been with him; *bleiben Sie bey mir*, stay with me. *c.* It serves for quotations, *Lat. apud*: as, *Bey dem*

Plato, in *Plato*; *beym Cicero*, in *Cicero*. *d.* For swearing and obtesting: as, *Bey Jupiter*, by *Jupiter*; *bey meiner Ehre*, by, or upon my honour.— It never expresses the agent, cause, or instrument, which are common significations of the English preposition *by*.

Entgegen, towards, against. It is most frequently united with verbs of motion, and stands after its case: as *Wir wollen unserm Freunde entgegen gehen*, we will go to meet our friend; *der Knabe läuft seinem Vater entgegen*, the boy runs to meet his father. But we see it also connected with other verbs: as, *Das Heer steht ihm entgegen*, the army stands against him; *dies war seiner Meinung entgegen*, this was against his opinion.

Gegenüber, over against, opposite to: as, *Dem Hause gegenüber*, opposite the house. It may also be divided, and *gegen* put before the case: as, *gegen dem Hause über*.

Längs, along: as, *Längs dem Flusse*, along the river. Sometimes with the genitive: as, *Noch so viele längs seines Zuges durch Deutschland zurück gelassene Besitzungen, hatten sein Heer nicht vermindert**, not even the many possessions he left behind him, along his route through Germany, had diminished his army.

Mit, with.

Nach, *a.* after, posterior in time, behind. *b.* To, or towards, with names of places, and verbs of

* *Geschichte des dreißigjährigen Krieges* von Fr. Schiller vol. iii. p. 500.

motion: as, *Dieser Mann reist nach Deutschland*, this man travels to Germany; *wenn gehen Sie nach der Stadt*, when do you go to town; *lassen Sie uns nach Hause gehen*, let us go home. *c.* According to: as, *Nach der Beschreibung des Livius*, according to the account of Livy.—In the signification last mentioned, it may be put after its case, when no other word is governed by, and follows after, that case: as, *Der Beschreibung nach*, according to the description; *seiner Geburt nach*, according to his birth; *seiner Herkunft nach*, according to his origin, by origin; *meiner Meinung nach*, according to, or in, my opinion; *dem Ansehen nach*, according to appearance. But if the substantive were to have another substantive after it, which it governs, the preposition must stand before its case: as, *Nach der Beschreibung des Livius*.—It is placed after in certain instances, when it notes direction: as, *Der Nase nach*, following your nose; *dem Strome nach*, following the stream.

Nebst (or *Benebst*), together with, besides, including.—*Benebst* is provincial.

Sammt, together with. It is becoming obsolete.

Seit, since. *Seitdem*, since that time, is used as a conjunction, or an adverb.

Von, *a.* notes an agent, Eng. by, Lat. *a. ab*: as, *Das Haus ist von dem Könige erbaut*, the house was built by the king; *das Buch ist von ihm geschrieben*, that book has been written by him. *b.* Of. *c.* From.

Zu, *a.* to: as, *komme zu mir*, come to me. *b.* At, of place: as, *Zu Eton*, at Eton; *zu Hause*, at home; *zu Wasser*, by water, at sea; *zur See*, at sea; *zu Lande*, on land. *c.* At, of time: as, *zu jener Zeit*, at that time. *d.* At, of proportion: as, *Die Guinee zu ein und zwanzig Schillingen*, the guinea at twenty-one shillings; *das Pfund zu sechzehn Unzen gerechnet*, the pound reckoned at sixteen ounces. *e.* On: as, *zu Pferde*, on horseback; *zu Fuße*, on foot.—In English the preposition *to* forms the dative; in German, as that case is distinguished by the article, and frequently also by the termination of the substantive, *zu* should not be employed, except where motion, place, direction, are to be expressed. *Zu* is occasionally placed before the infinitive mood, as in English, *to*.—It is used as an adverb, and signifies, as such: *a.* the shutting or closing of a thing: as, *Nach die Thür zu*, shut the door; *ist das Fenster zu*, is the window shut? *b.* Haste: as, *geh zu*, go on; *fahre zu*, drive on. *c.* Too, overmuch: as, *zu viel*, too much.

Zufolge, in consequence of, according to. Always put after the dative; it is sometimes, but rarely, joined to a genitive case, which it precedes: as, *zufolge Ihres Befehles*, in consequence of your order.

Zuwider, against, in opposition to. After the case.

SECT. III.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Durch, *a.* through; *b.* by, noting an instrument, or means: as, *Durch einen Pistolenschuß getödtet*, killed by a pistol shot; *durch Sturm erobert*, taken by storm. *c.* It signifies duration, when it is put after: as, *die ganze Nacht durch*, all the night through; *das ganze Jahr durch*, all the year through. In this sense *hindurch*, adverb, is also frequently used, *die ganze Nacht hindurch*, &c.

Für, for.

Gegen, *a.* to, towards, expressing direction and tendency. *b.* Against.—**Gen** is an ancient abbreviation of *gegen*, not in use at present, except in a few phrases, as, *gen Himmel*, to, or towards heaven.

Ohne, without, *i. e.* not with, *Fr. sans*.

Sonder, the same in signification, as the former. It is not much used, and can only be put, when the substantive has no article, as, *sonder Geist*, without spirit; *sonder Zweifel*, without doubt.

Um, *a.* around, about: as, *um den Tisch sitzen*, to sit about the table; *um die Stadt gehen*, to go around the town, *i. e.* to go round the circumference of the town. *b.* It signifies change and vicissitude: as, *einen Tag um den andern*, every other day. *c.* A loss: as, *Um etwas kommen*, to lose a thing; *es ist um ihn geschehen*, it is over with him, he is lost; *der Mensch hat mich um mein Geld betrogen*, the man has cheated me out of my money. *d.* It notes an object: as, *um Geld spielen*, to play

Sect. 4. Prep. with the Dative and Accusative. 319

for money; *um den Sieg sechten*, to fight for the victory. *e.* A comparison: as, *um zwey Drittel reicher*, more rich by two thirds; *um zehn Jahre jünger*, younger by ten years. *f.* It expresses a reference, with respect to, as far as relates to; for example, *Es ist eine ungewisse Sache um den Krieg*, as for the war, it is an uncertain thing; *wie sieht es um Ihre Gesundheit*, how is it with respect to your health?—*Um* sometimes precedes the preposition *zu*, before the infinitive; and expresses purpose and design: as, *um zu schreiben*, for the purpose of writing.—As an adverb, *um* denotes a circuit: as, *dieser Weg ist um*, this way is about—; and conclusion: as, *das Jahr ist um*, the year is brought to a conclusion, has passed through its circle. *Um und um*, means, on all sides.

Wider, against, in opposition to.

SECT. IV.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE DATIVE AND
ACCUSATIVE CASES.

These prepositions depend, for the most part, upon the notion of locality, with which they are connected, to determine the case they are to govern. If a state of rest, or permanent locality is implied, the dative case is required to be joined with them: and the accusative must be made use of, when motion to a place is intimated. This distinction may be rendered easy and intelligible, by applying the questions, *where*, *i. e.* in what place?

and *whereto*, *i. e.* to what place? A few examples will shew this. *An*, signifies on, near to, against. Now we say, *Der Tisch steht an der Wand*, the table stands on, or against the wall. Here the preposition governs the dative: for the question, where, in what place? may be applied—where, in what place does the table stand? and a state of rest, or permanent locality is understood. On the other hand, in the following: *Setze den Tisch an die Wand*, put the table against the wall; a motion to the place is implied, and the preposition united with the accusative. The table is to be moved to some place; and naturally the question, *whereto*, to what place? is suggested. Thus in other instances: as, with *auf*, upon; *das Buch liegt auf dem Tische*, the book lies upon the table. Dative case; question, where, in what place? *Legen Sie das Buch auf den Tisch*, lay the book upon the table: accusative. The book is to be moved to some place, and the question may be put, *whereto*, to what place? *Hinter*, behind: *Er steht hinter mir*, he stands behind me. Dative; question, where, in what place? *Kommen Sie hinter mich*, come behind me; accusative; for we think here of a motion to a place. The same in the next example: *Zwischen*, between: *Er saß zwischen dem Bruder und der Schwester*, he sat between the brother and the sister; dative. *Er trat zwischen den Bruder, und die Schwester*, he stepped between the brother and the sister; accusative. Hence *In*, with the dative case, signifies *in*; and with the accusative, *into*. In this manner we might exemplify the re-

Sect. 4. Prep. with the Dative and Accusative. 321

maining prepositions of this section; but it is the less necessary, as they will be singly enumerated: and where the general principle farther requires an explanation, it will be afforded. The above will show with sufficient clearness, how the two cases of these prepositions are to be appropriated. Sometimes, however, when the idea, by which this is regulated, is not precisely determined, an uncertainty likewise arises in the use of the cases. For example, we may say, *ein Haus auf dem Berge bauen*, to build a house upon the mountain: *auf* with the dative; and, *ein Haus auf den Berg bauen*: *auf* with the accusative. If our idea is so conceived, that the operation of building is carried on in such and such a place, we very properly put the dative case. But if we imagine motion, by which, through the operation of building, a house is conveyed upon the mountain, then the question, whereto, to what place? presents itself, and the accusative may be admitted. So, *Das Heer lagert sich auf dem Berge*, the army encamps upon the mountain. Here is the dative case after *auf*, in consequence of the question, where? But we may also put it with the accusative, if motion towards the mountain precedes the act of encamping, in our idea: *Das Heer lagerte sich auf den Berg*.—In other instances, those two cases involve a difference of signification. For, *Der Knabe läuft in dem Garten* (in with the dative) and, *der Knabe läuft in den Garten* (accusative), greatly differ in meaning. The former expresses, the boy runs, or takes the exercise of running, in the garden; and the latter, he runs into the garden. So, *Er reitet auf dem Berge*

(dative), he rides, takes the exercise of riding upon the mountain; and, *Er reitet auf den Berg* (accusative), he goes on horseback towards the top of the mountain.

An, with the dative, notes *a.* locality, at, on, near, in: as, *An einem Orte wohnen*, to live at a place; *an dem Ufer eines Flusses*, on the bank of a river; *an der Thür*, at the door, also upon the door; *an meiner Stelle*, in my place. *b.* The object of an action, in: as, *Die Verdienste des Vaters an dem Kinde belohnen*, to reward the merits of the father in the child; *mein Freund arbeitet an einem Buche*, my friend works at, or is engaged in a book. *c.* A cause, by, of: as, *Der junge Mensch ist an einer Auszehrung gestorben*, that young man died of a consumption. *d.* A state, condition, manner; in, by: as, *Reich an Freunden*, rich in friends; *groß an Ruhme*, great in fame; *schwach an Verstande*, weak in understanding; *man kennt den Vogel an den Federn*, und *das Silber an dem Klange*, the bird is known by its plumage, and the silver by its sound. To this signification we may refer the first, or adverbial form of the superlative degree: (see Chap. 2. Sect. 5.) as, *am schönsten*, in the finest manner; *am besten*, in the best manner: and the expression, *am Leben*, living, alive; as, *Er ist noch am Leben*, he is still alive. *e.* Time, in, at, on: as, *Am Anfange*, at the beginning; *am dritten Tage*, on the third day.

An, with the Accusative, expresses, *a.* direction, to: as, *An einen Freund schreiben*, to write to a friend; *ich werde das Buch an meinen Bruder schicken*, I shall send the book to my brother. *b.* An ob-

ject: as, *In eine Sache glauben*, to believe in a thing; *an etwas denken*, to think of, to remember, a thing. *c.* Extent of time, and space: for example; *bis an die See*, as far as the sea; *bis an den Abend*, to, or until the evening.

Auf, upon, with the dative, notes *a.* the locality of a higher place: as, *Auf dem Thurm*, upon the tower; *auf dem Berge*, upon the mountain; *auf dem Dache*, upon the roof; *auf dem Schlosse*, upon the castle. So we say, *auf der Stube*, or, *auf dem Zimmer*, in the room, or in the apartment, if the room, or the apartment is in the upper story of a house, and the person speaking, below. If it be on the floor, or in the same story with the person speaking, the prep. *in* is generally made use of, in *der Stube*, in *dem Zimmer*. *b.* It signifies locality in general: for example, *Auf dem Dorfe seyn*, to be in the village; *auf dem Lande wohnen*, to live in the country; *auf der Jagd*, at the chase; *auf dem Ball*, at the ball; *auf der Post*, at the post office; *auf der Gasse*, in the street; *auf der Universität*, or plur. *auf Universitäten*, at the university; *auf der Schule*, or plur. *auf Schulen*, at school; *auf der Reise*, on the journey, or plur. *auf Reisen*, on one's travels.

Auf, with the Accusative, has the two foregoing significations, attended with the question *whereto?* and therefore expresses, *a.* direction to a higher place: as, *Auf den Thurm steigen*, to mount upon the tower, &c. *b.* Local direction, in general: as, *Auf das Land reisen*, to travel, or to go into the country; *auf den Ball gehen*, to go to the ball; *auf die Gasse laufen*, to run into the street, &c. *c.* It

notes an object, when it may be differently rendered in English. For instance: *Auf eine Sache denken*, to think of a thing; *aufmerksam auf etwas seyn*, to attend to a thing; *auf jemanden zürnen*, to be indignant against somebody; *auf einen Freund warten*, to wait for a friend. *d.* It notes proportion: as, *Eine Mahlzeit auf vier Personen*, a dinner for four persons; *so viel auf den Mann*, so much upon the man. *e.* Extent: as, *biß auf den letzten Pfennig*, up to the last farthing; *biß auf den letzten Blutstropfen*, to the last drop of blood; *biß auf vier Thaler*, up to four dollars, &c.. *f.* It signifies a way and manner: as, *Auf Deutsche Art*, in the German way; *auf Englischen Fuß*, in the English manner. So, *auf Deutsch*, in German; *auf Französisch*, in French; *auf Englisch*, in English, &c, applied to the languages. To this may be added the expressions with the superlative degree of adjectives, *auf daß or auß beste*, in the best manner; *auß vortrefflichste*, in the most excellent manner. Likewise the following: *auf Angriff*, upon attack, or upon the offensive; *auf Vertheidigung*, upon defence, or upon the defensive; *auf den Hieb*, literally, upon the cut, as with the broad sword; *auf den Stosß*, or *auf den Stich*, upon the thrust, or point, as with the small sword. *g.* It notes future time: as, *Auf den Montag*, on Monday, or on next Monday. *h.* Duration of time; as, *Vorrath auf viele Jahre*, stock for many years; *auf zwey Monathe*, for two months; *auf kurze Zeit*, for a short time.—*Auf einmal*, at once. *Auf* as an adverb, answers to the English *up*: as, *Steh auf*, get up.

It is put before the conjunction *daß*, to signify purpose or design: as, *auf daß*, in order that; for the purpose that. It is used as an interjection, to animate and encourage: as, *auf, folget mir*, come, follow me.

Hinter, behind. *Hinter-her*, after, *i. e.* following, with the dative; as, *Ich ging hinter dem Manne her*, I walked after the man; *i. e.* I followed him; *er kommt hinter mir her*, he comes after me.

In, with the dative, in.

In, with the accusative, *a.* into. *b.* *Wich biß*, it marks extent of space or time: as, *biß in das Zimmer*, as far as the chamber; *biß in die Nacht*, till night; *biß in Ewigkeit*, to eternity.

Neben, beside, at the side of, Lat. *juxta*.

Ueber, with the dative, *a.* over, above, with respect to place, or excellence. *b.* With respect to time, or occupation: as, *über der Arbeit*, while at work; *über dem Lesen*, while reading; *über Tische*, at dinner, while at table.

Ueber, with the accusative, *a.* over, implying motion to a place. *b.* Beyond, above, exceeding, more than: as, *über meine Kräfte*, beyond my strength; *über vierzig Jahre*, above forty years. *c.* With the adverb *biß*, it expresses extent: as, *biß über die Ohren*, over the ears. *d.* It notes a cause: as, *Sich über eine Sache ärgern*, to be angry on account of a certain thing; *sich über etwas grämen*, to grieve about something. *e.* It notes an object: as, *über einen gewissen Gegenstand sprechen, schreiben*, to speak, or write, upon a certain subject; *über die Tugend*, upon virtue; *über das Laster*, upon

vice. *f.* It signifies future time; when it is placed before the case: as, *Heute über acht Tage*, from this day se'nnight, or in a se'nnight from hence; *über das*, or *übers Jahr*, next year; *über Nacht*, to night; *über lang oder kurz*, literally, over long or short, that means, some time or other. It also notes continuance of time, or duration, when it is put after: as, *den Sommer über*, during the summer; *das Jahr über*, during the year, or the year through; *den Tag über*, during the day.

Unter, *a.* under: *b.* among: *c.* With the dative, it has the power of denoting time: as, *Unter der Regierung Georg des dritten*, in the reign of George the third; *unter dem Essen*, during dinner, while at dinner; *unter dem Lesen*, while reading. In this sense it seems to have formerly governed the genitive case: for, according to a provincial manner of speaking, we meet, for instance, with *unter Tages*, during the day: and we have a current and classical phrase of the same construction, viz. *unter Weges*, on the way.

Vor, before. With the dative it sometimes involves a cause: as, *Vor dem Feinde fliehen*, to fly from the enemy; *vor dem Tode erschrecken*, to be frightened at death; *vor Freude weinen*, to weep for joy; *vor Lachen zerplätzen*, to burst with laughing; *vor Gram sterben*, to die with grief.

Zwischen, between. It is sometimes, but improperly, employed to signify *among*, instead of *unter*.

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

I. THE use of the prepositions requires a nice discrimination, and an intimate acquaintance with the idiom of the language. For it is not sufficient to render them literally from one tongue into the other: but the peculiar nature of every expression must be taken into consideration. The phrase, which, in English, demands such a preposition, in German frequently is combined with one totally different in signification: where one language, for instance, admits *for*, the other will perhaps have *upon*, *with*, &c. The student will, therefore, not rest satisfied with a list of the prepositions alone; but he will likewise direct his attention to the other words, with which they are joined, and thus observe their application.

II. The prepositions are always placed before their cases, except in the instances, which have been particularized in the foregoing, and in some, that are to be mentioned in the following remarks. In English, the prepositions are sometimes put at the end of the sentence, especially when the relative pronoun is to be understood: as, *The man I spoke of*, for, *the man of whom I spoke*; *the books he referred to*, for, *the books to which he referred*; *the subject I am engaged with*, for, *with which I am engaged*, &c. Likewise after interrogative pronouns: as, *who for?* *who to?* *what for?* *who is this money for?* *what is that for?* This manner of speaking is perhaps not to be considered as classical in English; yet it is very common. The Ger-

man language neither allows the omission of the relative pronoun, nor the transposing of the preposition.

III. It has been mentioned above, (Chap 3. Sect 3 and 4) that instead of pronouns demonstrative, relative, and interrogative, the local adverbs *hier*, *da*, *wo*, are joined with prepositions. Thus we find: *hiermit*, *hiervon*; *damit*, *daneben*, *daraus*, *darüber*; *woben*, *woran*, &c. Namely, *hier*, here, (which in this mode of composition is sometimes expressed by *hie*, as, *hiemit*) supplies the demonstrative *dieser*; *da*, there, is put for *derselbe*, or *der*; *wo*, where, for *welcher*, *wer*, *was*. The preposition *in*, put together with such an adverb, is made *in*, when it signifies *into*. For example, we say, *Es ist darin*, it is in it; but, *Thue es darein*, put it into it. We find those adverbs occasionally separated from the prepositions: as, *Da habe ich nicht an gedacht*, for, *daran habe ich nicht gedacht*, of that I have not thought; *da hüten Sie sich vor*, for, *davor hüten Sie sich*, beware of that; *da hat er keine Neigung zu*, for, *dazu hat er keine Neigung*, for that he has no inclination; *wo einem vor efelt*, for, *wovor einem efelt*, which one loathes. It is more common, and more proper, to keep those words united. The separation is, however, very usual in this phrase: *Da sey Gott vor*, God forbid; *da Gott vor sey*, which God forbid. Moreover, we find these contractions, *dran*, *drauß*, *brin*, *drunter*, *drüber*, *drum*, &c. for, *daran*, *darauf*, *daraus*, *darin*, *darunter*, *darüber*, *darum*—which are inelegant, and vulgar.—It scarce deserves to be noticed, that prepositions

are put before adverbs, as in English: for instance, *von hier*, from hence; *von da*, *von dort*, from thence, from yonder; *von oben*, from above; *von unten*, from below; *seit gestern*, since yesterday; *auf heute*, for to-day.

IV. Some prepositions coalesce with the definite article. Namely, with the dative, masc. and neut. *dem*, the following: *an*, *in*, *von*, *zu*: *an dem* becomes *am*; *in dem*, *im*; *von dem*, *vom*; *zu dem*, *zum*. With the dative fem. *der*, *zu* only; as, *zur*, for *zu der*. With the accusative neuter, *das*: *an*, *auf*, *durch*, *für*, *in*; as, *ans*, for *an das*; *aufs*, for *auf das*; *durchs*, for *durch das*; *fürs*, for *für das*; *ins*, for *in das*.—There are other contractions of the same kind; as, *vors*, from *vor das*; *vorn*, from *vor dem*; *übers*, from *über den*; *übers*, from *über das*; *unters*, from *unter dem*; *unters*, from *unter das*. But these are not admitted in accurate composition: and are even less frequent in common conversation than those first mentioned. Upon the whole, contractions of any sort should be avoided, unless the structure of the language expressly demands, or the prevailing custom justifies them.—In some instances, the contraction alone is usual: as, *am Anfange*, or *im Anfange*, at, or in the beginning; *am Leben*, alive; *am besten*, *am schönsten*, in the best, in the finest manner; *zur Noth*, if necessary. But, in general, they may be dispensed with; they need not be adopted, except for convenience and brevity.

CHAP. VIII. ON THE CONJUNCTION.

CONJUNCTIONS are particles that serve to connect words and sentences, and to bring them into a certain relation with one another. As this connection and relation may be effected in different ways, the conjunctions may accordingly be divided into various classes. Those, which merely join, for instance: *and, also, &c.* may be called *copulative*; those, which imply opposition: *as, either, or, neither, nor, though, although, yet, nevertheless, &c. disjunctive*. Some note a condition: *as, if, otherwise*; and may be called *conditional*. Others a cause: *as, because, since, therefore, &c. causal*. Some make a comparison; for instance: *as, so, like, than, &c.* these you may denominate *comparative*. And those which refer to time, or the succession of events, for example: *then, when, while, before, after, &c.* may either be styled *temporal*, or *consecutive*.

That classification may be made still more precise and minute, and the distinction be rendered more accurate. But this is rather an object for speculation, than for practical purposes. We will, therefore, not dwell upon it; but subjoin a list of the most obvious German conjunctions, in alphabetical order, accompanied with the necessary observations.

Aber, but. It does not always oppose sentences, but like the Latin *autem, vero*, sometimes only

joins them; in other words, it has both a copulative, and disjunctive power.

Alein, but, Lat. *sed*, *at*, is merely disjunctive.

Als has *a.* a comparative signification, expressing *as* and *than*, for instance; So warm *als* in Summer, as warm, as in summer; reicher *als* Croesus, more rich than Croesus. *b.* It notes quality and condition: Ich *als* Herr von diesem Hause, I as master of this house. *c.* It is temporal, or consecutive, and stands for *when*: *Als* ich in London ankam, when I arrived in London.—*Als* wenn, as if; so wohl *als* auch, as well as.

Also, *a.* so; *b.* therefore.

Auch, also.

Auf daß, in order that.

Bevor, before; Lat. *priusquam*.

Da, *a.* then; *b.* when; *c.* since, as, implying a cause. As an adverb, it signifies *there*.

Daher, therefore. Adverb *daher*, thence.

Dann, then. *Alsdann* is the same in signification. Adverb, *dann und wann*, now and then.

Darum, for that reason. *Darum*, adv. on account of that.

Daß, that.

Denn, *a.* for, because, Lat. *nam*. *b.* Then. *c.* Unless, after some verbs in the subjunctive mood: as Ich werde nicht ausgehen, es sey denn, daß die Noth mich zwänge, I shall not go out, unless it be, that necessity should compel me. Du sollst nicht sterben, du habest denn den Herrn gesehen, thou shalt not die, unless thou have seen the Lord.—It is, however, not very usual in this signification, except af-

ter es sey, it be. *d.* Than: Wer ist besser denn Gott, who is better than God? Ehe denn ich flöhe, sooner than I should run away. Als, here is preferable.

Dennoch, notwithstanding.

Derhalben (derohalben), deshalb (deshalb), therefore, on that account.

Desto, stands always before a comparative degree, and notes proportion, which, in English, is expressed by the definite article; for example: Ich erwartete Ihre Ankunft nicht, und desto größer ist meine Freude, I did not expect your arrival, and the greater is my joy. When two comparative sentences are put together, the first begins with the conjunction je, and desto answers it in the second: as, Je ruhiger das Leben ist, desto geschickter ist es zum Nachdenken, the more quiet life is, the more fit is it for reflection.

Diemeil, because, obsolete.

Doch, yet, nevertheless, however, but; Lat. tamen.

Ehe, before that, Lat. priusquam.

Entweder, either, is always followed by Oder, or.

Falls, in case that. Falls es geschehen sollte, in case it should happen.

Folglich, consequently.

Je, proportional, before a comparative degree. See Desto. Je nachdem, according as.

Jedoch, the same as Doch.

Indem, *a.* while; *b.* because, since.

Indessen, in the meanwhile.

Inglichen, or Ingleichen, likewise.

Kaum, scarce. Kaum hatte er ausgeredet, als ihn ein plötzliches Grausen überfiel, scarce had he

finished his speech, when a sudden horror seized him.

Nachdem, after, Lat. *postquam*. **Je nachdem**, according as.

Nicht allein, nicht nur, not only; followed by **sondern auch**, but also.

Noch, a. yet, still; Lat. *adhuc*; noch nicht, not yet. b. Nor, after **weder**, neither, preceding.

Nun, now.

Ob, whether, if.

Obgleich, **Ob schon**, **Obwohl**, though, although.

They are divided: as, **Ob ich gleich krank war**, although I was ill; **ob er schon zu Hause war**, though he was at home. This separation generally takes place, when a monosyllable follows; I mean an independent monosyllable; such as, *ich, du, er, wir, ihr, sie*; not one belonging to a substantive, as the article. Otherwise it is not necessary to divide those conjunctions. When they begin a sentence, the following member of it answers to them, by means of the conjunctions **doch**, or **dennoch**, or similar words, as, **denungeachtet**, notwithstanding that, or **nicht desto weniger**, nevertheless. **Ob er gleich alt ist, so hat er doch den völligen Gebrauch seiner Geisteskräfte**, although he is old, he still has the perfect use of his mental faculties.

Oder, or.

Sintemal, or **Sintemalen**, because, since; antiquated.

So, a. so. b. It serves to connect the subsequent member of a sentence with the foregoing, commonly, when the conjunctions, **wann** (when),

weit, da, nachdem, wie, damit, um, obgleich, ob schon, precede; and almost always after wenn, if, beginning the sentence. For example: Wenn mein Bruder kommt, so sagen Sie es ihm, when my brother comes, tell it him. Da er in Rom eintraf, so fand er die Stadt in den Händen seiner Feinde, when he arrived at Rome, he found the city in the hands of his enemies. Wenn der Knabe fleißig ist, so kann er zu großen Ehren gelangen, if the boy be diligent, he may arrive at great honours. Sometimes the conjunction wenn, if, is understood: and then so must likewise be put in the following member: as, Wärest du hier geblieben, so würden die Sachen besser stehen, hadst thou staid here (which is the same as—if thou had staid here) affairs would be in a better condition. c. So, occasionally notes, therefore. d. If, on condition that: as, So Gott will, if God please, or please God. e. So wohl: als auch, as well as. Likewise, with the same meaning, so: als; but seldom. f. When auch follows, it is to be rendered by, however: So groß die Schrecken des Krieges auch seyn mögen, so konnten sie doch seinen Sinn nicht bändigen, however great the terrors of war may be, yet they could not curb his spirit.—So wie, as.

Sondern, but, disjunctive. It is only used when a negative goes before. Nicht edel, sondern kleinmüthig, not noble, but pusillanimous.

Sonst, else, otherwise.

Theils—theils, partly, partly.

Und, and.

Ungeachtet, notwithstanding.

Wann, for *when*, provincial. Adv. **Dann** and **und wann**, now and then.

Weder, neither, followed by **noch**, nor.

Weil, because. (Sometimes, while.)

Wenn, *a. when*. Thus it is synonymous to **Da** (**Als**, **Wie**; for these occur with the same meaning as **Da**); though it is differently applied. **Da**, namely, is always connected with past tenses, and declares an action that is gone by. **Wenn**, on the other hand, refers to what is present, or future. It is, therefore, peculiarly appropriated to convey general ideas; whereas **da** involves particular events. This will be more clearly understood from some examples. **Da er nach London kam**, so fand er seinen Freund, when he came to London, he found his friend. *He came, and he found*, are past tenses: the actions likewise, that are intimated, are passed; and consequently **Da** must be employed to express *when*. **Wenn ich zu ihm komme**, so finde ich ihn immer bei den Büchern, when I come to him, I always find him at his books. *I come, I find*, are present tenses, and the subject is of a general import; therefore, **wenn** is made use of. In the following, one verb is in the future tense, the other in the present; and **wenn** is likewise required, to answer to the English *when*. **Wenn ihr meine Stimme hören werdet**, so eilt, when you shall hear my voice, hasten. **Wenn Sie nach Paris kommen**, so werden Sie viele alte Kunstwerke sehen, when you come to Paris, you will see many ancient works of art. The historick style, to enliven the narration, sometimes assumes the present for the past tense.

But still the action it refers to is past; and *wenn*, in this case, cannot be put instead of *da*. The English interrogative *when*, is always rendered by *wenn*, never by *da*.—Some write *wann*, instead of *wenn*, to distinguish the first signification of this conjunction. *Wann*, however, is nothing more than an idiom of the Upper German, and in Upper Germany promiscuously used, to note *when*, and *if*. It has not received the sanction of the classical authors. *b*. If, supposing that. It never stands in the signification of *whether*, after indirect, or disjunctive questions, though, in English, *if* is thus used; or in other words, it is never synonymous to the English *whether*, or the Latin *an*. In these phrases, for example: "I do not know *if* (or *whether*) it is so. Ask him, *if* (or *whether*) he has got it?"—the German *wenn* could not be employed, but *ob* must be used.

Wenngleich, *Wennschon*, although. They may be separated in the same manner as *Obgleich*, *Obschon*. See above.

Wie, *a*. how. *b*. As, both in a comparative and consecutive sense. *Wie die Jugend, so das Alter*, as the youth, so old age; comparative. *Wie er das sah, rief er aus*, as, or when, he saw that, he exclaimed; consecutive. It also expresses *than*, though *als* is more proper for this purpose.

Wiewohl, though.

Wo sometimes stands for *if*. Otherwise it signifies *where*.

Wosern (and *Dafern*), if.

Wohl, indeed, perhaps, may be, Lat. *quidem*. It has the nature of a suppletive particle, and cannot always be exactly translated. **Das ist wohl wahr**, that, indeed, may be true. **Wissen Sie wohl**, do you perhaps know? As an adverb it signifies *well*.

Zwar, indeed, it is so, allowing it: generally followed by **aber**, **allein**, **doch**, **dennoch**, or a similar disjunctive.

Odywar, sometimes occurs with the power of **Obgleich**, **Obschon**.

No more is to be added to this chapter, except that some of the conjunctions appear, in certain situations, to govern the subjunctive mood; and that some have the power, in the structure of a sentence, of removing the verb to the end. These circumstances will be noticed at large, in the second part of the grammar.

CHAP. IX.

ON THE INTERJECTION.

THE interjection is arbitrarily inserted in any sentence, to express emotion in the speaker or writer. It is in its construction the most simple, and in its application the least tinctured with art, of all the parts of speech. The interjections have justly been considered as the first elements of language. They are sounds, by nature itself extorted from the feelings of man. They must, therefore, be of the earliest origin. They are not founded upon the association of ideas; but produced by the immediate impulse of our feelings. They were gradually combined, and led to the formation of words. Having said this of the interjections, it will appear, that they can occupy but little room in a book like the present. We have neither to speak of their variation by declension, or of their inflection; nor will they furnish matter for discussion in the syntax, as they never stand in any grammatical connection with the other parts of speech.—It will be fit to mention the most obvious interjections, that occur in the German language. Some indicate joy: as, *ah! ha!* Mirth and gaiety: as, *sa! hey! heysa!* Loud exclamations of the same kind: *juch! juchhey!* The following betoken sorrow and displeasure: *ach! ah! oh!* Pain: *ach! weh! au! auweh!* Disgust: *fi! pfui!* The next are expressive of admiration: *o! ah! ey!* Of

surprise, in a small degree: *hum*; in a greater degree: *ah! ha!*—*Ha ha!* serves as an exclamation, when you have found out, or unravelled a thing, either denoting surprise, or satisfaction.—*He!* and *holla!* are used for calling to a person.—We find other words employed in the capacity of interjections; for example: *Gracious Heaven! Good God!* These are indeed exclamations; proceeding from our feelings; but they must not be confounded with those simple sounds, which are the subject of this chapter.

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

PART II.

HAVING gone through the parts of speech, we arrive at a new division of grammar, which is called *the Syntax*. In this the subjects that were separately expounded before, are brought into contact with each other. First of all we shall observe their mutual influence; and the relation they bear to one another, when put together. It will be seen that in those, which are susceptible of variations, certain modifications take place. Words either agree, or govern one another. The agreement consists in this, that they are put in the same gender, number, case, person, tense. And one word is said to govern the other, when by the power of the former, the latter must necessarily assume a particular shape; for example, a certain case in declension, or such and such a mood in conjugation. Therefore the agreement and government of words, if I may be allowed to use these expressions, will constitute the *first Chapter* of the syntax. The *second* will contain a collection of peculiarities, or idioms, which are not embraced by the first chapter. And lastly, in the *third chapter*, we shall speak of the order and arrangement of words in a sentence.

CHAP. I.

ON THE AGREEMENT AND GOVERNMENT OF WORDS.

CONTAINING

1. The Noun, and Pronoun.
2. The Verb, and Participle.
3. The Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

SECT. I.

NOUN AND PRONOUN.

In treating of the noun we have to consider

The Article.

Rule. The article, whether definite or indefinite, must agree with the noun it belongs to, in case, number, and gender.

It can only be joined to a substantive. If it stands before an adjective, it either refers to a substantive preceding, or following; or turns the adjective into a substantive. See Part 1. Chap. 2. Sect. 4. Gen. Rem. 7. Consequently the agreement of the article is with a noun substantive.

The Definite Article distinguishes, or determines the word, to which it is prefixed.—It is not every where required. We find it omitted:

a. Before the vocative case, because, when we address any object, it is by this circumstance sufficiently determined.

b. Before the name of the Supreme Being, Gott, God. But when a heathen deity is signified, the article is put, *der Gott*, plur. *die Götter*.

c. Before proper names of persons: as, *Cæsar*, Alexander. In the oblique cases, however, it is employed for the purpose of declension. See Part 1. Chap. 2. Sect. 3. Gen. Rem. 2. And sometimes it also precedes the nominative, in speaking familiarly of a person, as, *der Kant*, Kant; *der Jones*, Jones; *der Kästner*, Kästner.

d. Before names of towns and countries, where it is not even admitted in the oblique cases: as, London; *von London*, of London. England; *von England*, of England.—Yet there are some names of countries, which are never expressed without the article: as, *Die Türkei*, Turkey; *die Wallachey*, Wallachia; *die Schweiz*, Switzerland; *die Lausitz*, Lusatia, and a few more.

e. The definite article is not used before the following words, denoting the quarters of the globe: *Osten*, East; *Westen*, west; *Süden*, South; *Norden*, North; and the synonymous terms, *Morgen*, *Abend*, *Mittag*, *Mitternacht*.

f. It is suppressed before titles, when these are placed after the proper name, as, *Georg*, König von England, und Churfürst von Hannover, George, King of England, and Prince Elector of Hanover. *Johann Ramus*, Doctor der Rechte, John Ramus, doctor of laws.—Also, sometimes, when the title

precedes the name: as, König Georg, King George; Kaiser Franz, Emperor Francis; Fürst Potemkin, Prince Potemkin; Doctor Luther, Professor Sanderson. And even in the oblique cases: as, König Friedrichs Feldzüge, King Frederick's campaigns; Doctor Luthers Gelehrsamkeit, Doctor Luther's erudition.

g. In the language of the law certain appellatives occur without the article, that properly ought to have it. Such are, Beklagter, defendant; Kläger, plaintiff; Inhaber, possessor; Appellant, he that appeals; Supplicatant, petitioner.

h. It is likewise left out before some other expressions, which, in English, would require the article. For example: Ueberbringer dieses, the bearer of this; in bester Ordnung, in the best order; vor Endigung des Schauspiels, before the conclusion of the drama. To which may be added, the phrases, Ich habe es in Händen, I have it in my hands; ich habe es vor Augen, I have it before my eyes. Before Händen and Augen, some determining word, either the article, or (as in English) a pronoun, ought to be inserted; but custom has sanctioned the omission.

i. When a word is put after the genitive case it governs, it cannot have an article. This is the same in English, as in German. For example: Werthers Leiden, Werther's sufferings. The genitive, Werthers, stands before the word, by which it is governed; consequently the latter can have no article. So, Johnsons Werke, Johnson's works.

Des Vaters Haus, the father's house; Haus without an article.

k. Several substantives of the same gender, number, and case following, the article is prefixed to the first, and generally understood before the others: as in this, Die Güte, Liebe, und Nachsicht der Mutter, the goodness, affection, and indulgence of the mother. These three substantives are of the same gender, number, and case; therefore one article serves for all. But when the gender, number, or case are different, the article must be repeated before each word: as, Der Tod, die Auferstehung, und das Leben, death, resurrection, and life. Here the genders differ, and the repetition of the article accordingly is necessary. Two substantives being joined by und, the article is commonly put twice, though they should be of the same gender, number, and case: as, Der Rabe und der Fuchs, the raven and the fox.

In what has been said concerning the use of the article, we find, that, with a few exceptions, the German language agrees with the English. We have now to notice the instances, in which they differ.

1. The English leave out the article before words, that convey a general idea. The Germans, on the other hand, employ the article. For example: Der Mensch ist sterblich, man is mortal; die Tugend führt zum, or zu dem, Glücke, virtue leads to happiness; das Laster stürzt seine Anhänger ins Verderben, vice plunges its followers into perdition. Here the words, which produce the general sen-

sation, of *man*, *virtue*, *vice*, *perdition*, when the title

tence, *man*, *virtue*, *vice*, are, in German, accompanied with the article. This is also peculiar to other tongues, for instance, the French and Italian.

2. The English use certain expressions without the article, where the German language requires it. Such are, *Holy Writ*, in German, *Die heilige Schrift*; *Saint Paul*, *Saint Peter*, *der heilige Paulus*, *der heilige Petrus*: unless *Saint* is rendered by the Latin word *Sanct* (*Sanctus*), which is sometimes done: as, *Sanct Paulus*, *Sanct Petrus*.—*In town*, German, *in der Stadt*; *in church*, *in der Kirche*; *to go to church*, *in die Kirche gehen*.

3. They place the article always after the word *half*, when followed by a substantive: as, *half the number*; whereas, in German, the article comes before it, *die halbe Zahl*.

4. In English, the præterite participle is sometimes put after the substantive; in which instance the article is omitted. For example, *Paradise Lost*, *Paradise Regained*. The Germans always place that participle before the substantive, and make use of the article, as in these examples: *Das verlorene Paradies*, *das wieder gewonnene Paradies*.

The indefinite Article is nearly employed in the same manner as in English. We have to notice, that it is in some expressions used, where the English would put the definite article: namely, in speaking of collective bodies, with certain attributes, or titles: as, *eine hohe Obrigkeit*, the worshipful magistrates; *ein hoch weiser Rath*, the most learned senate; *eine löbliche Universität*, the honourable university; *ein geehres Publicum*, the ho-

noured public.—The English place the indefinite article after *such*, as, *such a man*; in German it stands before *solcher*, as, *ein solcher Mann*. Instead of *ein solcher*, they sometimes use *so ein* (or *solch ein*), for instance, *so ein Mann* (or *solch ein Mann*), the same as, *ein solcher Mann*, *such a man*.

Noun Substantive.

Rule 1. Two or more substantives referring to the same object, or forming an apposition, as it is called, are put in the same case; as, *Der König, unser Freund und Vater*, the king, our friend and father. The two last substantives relate to the same object with the first, and therefore stand in the same case, viz. the nominative. *Wir lieben den König, unsern Freund und Vater*; we love the king, our friend and father. Here they are again in the same case, but in the accusative, governed by the transitive verb *lieben*.

Rule 2. One substantive governs another in the genitive case, signifying possession, quality, or some other relation; for example: *Das Haus meines Freundes*, the house of my friend; *die Tugend des Vaters*, und *das Laster des Sohnes*, the virtue of the father, and the vice of the son. The English use the preposition *of*, to express those relations.

An exception is made by the words of measure and quantity. These do, in German, not require the genitive case, though *of* is put in English; for example: *Zehn Ellen Tuch*, ten yards of cloth; *zwey Fässer Wein*, two casks of wine; *ein Regiment*

Soldaten, a regiment of soldiers. The genitive, however, takes place, when the substantives, that follow those words of measure or quantity, are joined with a pronoun: as, *Zehn Ellen dieses Tuches*, ten yards of *this* cloth; *zwei Fässer jenes Weines*, two casks of *that* wine. See Part I. Chap. 2. Sect. 3. Gen. Rem. 2. The adjective also renders the genitive sometimes proper: as, *ein Regiment guter Soldaten*, a regiment of good soldiers.

The genitive case is frequently supplied by the preposition *von*, of, and the dative. This happens

a. When the article is not used: as, *Der Schein von Redlichkeit*, the appearance of honesty; *der nördliche Theil von England*, the northern part of England; *die Grenzen von Frankreich*, the boundaries of France.

b. Therefore, *von* is frequently made use of, when quality, condition, proportion, are to be expressed: as, *ein Mann von Verstande*, a man of sense; *ein Herr von hohem Adel*, a gentleman of high nobility; *von alter Herkunft*, of ancient origin; *eine Reise von zehn Meilen*, a journey of ten miles; *ein Schiff von zwey hundert Tonnen*, a ship of two hundred tons; *eine Summe von zwanzig Pfunden*, a sum of twenty pounds; *ein Mann von achtzig Jahren*, a man of eighty years.

c. *Von* also notes the matter that things are made of, as, *Eine Uhr von Gold*, the same as, *eine goldene Uhr*, a gold watch; *ein Becher von Silber*, a silver cup; *ein Stuhl von Elfenbein*, an ivory chair.

with their other capacities as prepositions.

d. It is found before the indefinite article to denote character: as, *Ein Abscheu von einem Menschen*, a horror of a man; *ein Ausbund von einem ehrlichen Manne*, a pattern of an honest man; *ein Muster von einem guten Sohne*, a model of a good son; *ein Schurke von einem Bedienten*, a knave of a servant; *ein Teufel von einem Weibe*, a devil of a woman.

e. It is of service to prevent the repetition of the same endings: as, *Die Ursache von dem sonderbaren Betragen des Mannes*, the reason of the singular conduct of the man—instead of, *Die Ursache des sonderbaren Betragens des Mannes*.

Sometimes it is indifferent whether *von* be put, or the genitive case; for example: *Den Schein von Redlichkeit haben*, or, *den Schein der Redlichkeit haben*, to have the appearance of honesty; *der nördliche Theil von England*, or, *der nördliche Theil Englands*, the northern part of England; *einer von meinen Freunden*, or, *einer meiner Freunde*, one of my friends. But where the genitive is not distinguished by the article, or the termination, *von* must be used. We meet with it occasionally before the article, where it is quite superfluous: as *den Schein von der Tugend haben*, to have the show of virtue. *Der Tugend*, as the genitive case, would be adequate; and it is, therefore, useless to prefix the preposition.

Let it be observed, that we have introduced the words *von* and *of* only as far as they are placed between two substantives: we have nothing to do with their other capacities as prepositions.

Rule 3. The place of the genitive is after the word, by which it is governed.

Sometimes it precedes the governing word: then the latter loses its article, as has been observed in the first section; for example: *Des Lebens Freude*, life's joy; for, *die Freude des Lebens*, the joy of life. In a few instances the governing word, though placed after the genitive, still retains the article, as, *Volks die Menge*, a multitude of people; *Freude die Fülle*, abundance of joy. This, however, is not to be extended beyond the phrases, established by usage.

In placing the genitive before the governing word, regard must be had to euphony. If the transposition is not agreeable to the ear, it should be avoided. Thus we find two or more genitive cases, when put before, produce a heavy and unharmonious sound; for example: *Des großen Philosophen Kants Leben*, instead of, *das Leben des großen Philosophen Kant*, the life of the great philosopher Kant. And it is a great deal worse, when of two genitives, before a third word, one governs the other; as, *Des Hinters der Sonne Abenteuer*, the knight's of the Sun adventures; for, the adventures of the Knight of the Sun.

Noun Adjective.

Rule 1. The adjective must agree with its substantive in gender, number, and case.

This rule applies not only to the adjective in its first state, but also to the degrees of comparison.

The substantive is sometimes understood, yet the agreement remains; for example: *Der gute Mann, und der böse, understand Mann, the good man, and the bad (man); den zwölften dieses Monathes, the twelfth of this month, supply Tag, day.*

Rule 2. The place of the adjective is before the substantive.

Except *a.* proper names, when it serves as a title; then it stands after, with the article prefixed: as, *Alexander der Große, Alexander the Great; Friedrich der Kühne, Frederick the Bold; Ludwig der Fromme, Saint Lewis.*

b. It is also put after the substantive, when it supplies the place of a relative sentence; for example: *Der Held, mächtig im Felde, und weise im Kabinett, the hero, powerful in the field, and wise in the cabinet. The adjectives are here equal to a relative sentence, der Held, welcher mächtig im Felde, und weise im Kabinett ist. Besides this, the adjective follows the substantive, in a few other instances: as, Zehn Pfund Englisch, ten pounds English; zwanzig Mark Lübeckisch, twenty marks of Lubeck; hundert Fuß Rheinländisch, one hundred feet Rhenish.*

Rule 3. Some adjectives govern cases.

a. The following govern the genitive: *bedürftig, in want of; benöthigt, in need of; bewußt, conscious, (with the reciprocal dative, and the genitive of the object, as, ich bin mir der Sache nicht bewußt); eingedenk, mindful; fähig, capable of (it is also joined with the preposition zu); froh, glad, satisfied*

(also with the prep. *über*, and the accusative); *gewahr*, informed of, aware of (also with the accusative; it generally occurs with the verb *werden*, to become, as, *er ward der Gefahr*, genitive, or *die Gefahr*, accusative, *gewahr*, he perceived the danger); *gewiß*, certain; *gewohnt*, accustomed to; *fundig*, skilled in, experienced in; *loß*, free from, rid of; *mächtig*, in possession of; *müde*, tired of; *quitt*, rid of; *satt*, tired of; *schuldig*, guilty; *theilhaft*, partaking of; *überdrißig*, tired with; *verdächtig*, suspicious; *verlustig*, having forfeited, or lost; *voll*, full of (also with *von*); *werth*, deserving; *würdig*, worthy.

b. The next are followed by a dative case: *ähnlich*, like, resembling; *angenehm*, agreeable; *bekannt*, known to; *bequem*, convenient; *bange*, anxious, fearful (as, *mir ist bange*, I am fearful); *beschwerlich*, troublesome; *dienlich*, serviceable; *gehorsam*, obedient; *gemäß*, suited to; *getreu*, faithful; *gewogen*, inclined to; *favourable*; *gleich*, like; *nahe*, near; *verwandt*, related to; *nöthig*, necessary; *nützlich*, useful; *schädlich*, hurtful: and others, implying advantage, or disadvantage—Prepositions may be employed in many instances, instead of the mere dative case, such as *für*, for; *gegen*, towards, against, &c.

c. Those which express measure, weight, age, value, with a numeral following, require the accusative. Of this kind are *lang*, long; *breit*, broad; *hoch*, high; *tief*, deep; *groß*, great; *schwer*, heavy; *alt*, old; *werth*, worth; *schuldig*, indebted, owing. For example: *Zehn Fuß lang*, ten feet long; *zweihundert*

Nfund schwer, weighing twelve pound; *funfzig Jahre* alt, fifty years old; *drey Thaler werth*, worth three dollars; *er ist viel Geld schuldig*, he owes a great deal of money.

Observations. 1. The cardinal numbers govern the genitive, but are always put after it. They are chiefly combined with the personal pronouns: as, *Unser zwölf*, twelve of us; *euere* (or *euer*) *zwanzig*, twenty of you; *ihrer dreißig*, thirty of them.

2. The word *all* has, in English, generally, the definite article after it, as, *all the world*; *all*, in German, is without the article, as, *alle Welt*, all the world; *alles Geld*, all the money. There is only one instance, where the article is required, namely, before possessive pronouns, which are turned into substantives, as, *alle die Meinigen*, all my friends; *alles das Unserige*, all we possess. And it may be put before adjectives, used substantively, as, *alle die Guten*, all the good people; *alles das Böse*, all the evil. But here it is not so necessary.—*All* sometimes follows the word, to which it belongs; for example: *Die Beispiele alle*, all the examples; *die Thränen alle*, all the tears; *von den übrigen allen*, of all the rest; *dieses alles*, all this, for *alles dieses*; *alles das*, all that. It stands always after the personal and relative pronouns: as, *Wir alle*, all of us; *sie alle*, all of them; *die Leute, welche alle zugegen waren*, the people, who all were present.

The Pronoun.

Rule 1. Pronouns agree with their substantive; that is to say, the possessive and demonstrative in gender, number, and case; the relative in gender, and number.

Rule 2. The pronouns possessive and demonstrative are placed before the substantive, to which they belong; the relative after it. There is only one exception to this rule, in *Vater unser*, our Father, the beginning of the Lord's prayer. In this the possessive is put after the substantive, unless *unser* were the genitive plural of the first personal, in imitation of the Greek.

Observations. 1. Speaking of any inanimate object, the English make use of the neuter *it*: the Germans, having distinct genders, apply the pronouns accordingly. *Hier ist ein neuer Hut*, here is a new hat—*er ist sehr fein*, (he) it is very fine; *wo haben Sie ihn gekauft?* where did you buy (him) it? *Hut* is of the masculine gender; therefore the masculine pronoun is used in reference to it. So, *Wie gefällt Ihnen diese Witterung?* how do you like this weather? *Sie ist sehr unangenehm*, (she) it is very unpleasant. The personal pronoun is in the feminine gender, on account of the substantive. *Das Pferd geht recht gut, aber es ist zu heißig*, the horse goes very well, but it is too hot. Here we have *es*, it, because *das Pferd* is neuter.

2. A demonstrative pronoun is sometimes preferred to the third personal, both for the sake of distinction, and euphony. When a nearer object is alluded to, *dieser* is put; when a distant one, *jener*. *Derselbe* is frequently substituted for the personal pronoun, without any particular modification. It is almost always employed in the genitive and dative, in speaking of inanimate objects. When applied to persons, it is sometimes expressive of respect. *Seine Königl. Majestät haben einen Befehl ergehen lassen, worin Dieselben einen Fasttag verordnen*, his royal majesty has issued an order, in which (the same) he commands the keeping of a fast-day. *Dieselben* is a more respectful expression than *Er*, he, or *Sie*, they, would be. Hence this pronoun serves as a ceremonious sort of address, for *Sie*, you; and, when assigned to persons of high rank, we find it attended with certain epithets, as *Hochdieselben*, *Höchstieselben*, *Alterhöchstdieselben*: where *hoch*, high, *höchst*, highest, *alterhöchst*, highest of all, relate to the degree of nobility, belonging to the person addressed.

3. It has been noticed, in the first part, that the neuter of the third personal often begins a sentence, in connection with a noun of a different gender and number; for example: *Es ist ein Mann*, it is a man; *es ist eine Frau*, it is a woman. *Es* here corresponds with a masculine and a feminine. However, the English language admits the same mode of expression in these instances. The peculiarity of the German appears in the following:

Es sind viele Menschen da, there are many people; es kommt der König, the king is coming; es ruft der Vater, the father is calling; es kommen Leute, people are coming.—This way of beginning a sentence is often calculated to give it more expression, than if the subject itself were placed at the head. For the attention of the hearer is raised by the expectation of the word, which is to follow. It is, therefore, very frequent with the subjunctive mood, to convey a forcible sentiment: for instance, Es lebe der König, long live the king; es komme mir keiner zu nahe, let no one approach me. The neuters of the demonstrative pronouns are used in a similar manner: as, Dieß ist mein Freund, this is my friend; jenes mein Feind, that my enemy; das sind Soldaten, those are soldiers.

4. The genitive case of the demonstrative pronoun, der, die, das, viz. dessen, deren, dessen, in the singular, and deren, or deren, in the plural, is put instead of the third possessive, to avoid misunderstanding: for example: Cicero ließ die Mitverschwornen des Catilina in dessen Hause ergreifen. Cicero ordered the accomplices of Catiline to be seized in his (Catiline's) house. Here dessen stands for seinem; and prevents at once all misconception; but seinem, his, might be referred to Cicero. Der Consul wandte sich an den Senat, weil er auf dessen Muth traute, the consul applied to the senate, because he trusted to its (the senate's) courage. If it were seinen, his (Senat, being of the masculine gender) it would be uncertain, whether the courage

of Cicero himself, or that of the senate, was to be understood. Die Einwohner überließen den Engländern die Vertheidigung der Stadt, weil sie, im Falle eines Angriffes, auf deren Entschlossenheit rechneten, the inhabitants resigned the defence of the city to the English, because, in case of an attack, they reckoned on their resolution, i. e. the resolution of the English. By means of *deren* it is immediately clear, whose resolution is meant; whereas, if *ihre*, their, had been used, it might relate to the inhabitants as well as to the English.—That genitive, moreover, counteracts the repetition of the same possessive. It is also common to put it, instead of the latter, in relation to inanimate objects; for example: Der Feind hat die Stadt erobert, und deren Einwohner gezüchtigt, the enemy has conquered the town, and chastised its inhabitants. *Deren* here stands for the possessive *ihre*. Der menschliche Körper, und dessen Verrichtungen, the human body, and its functions. *Dessen* instead of *seine*. As the genitive of the third personal, *es*, is not usual, *dessen* supplies the vacancy: as, Ich bin dessen überdrüssig, I am tired of it.

5. The English make use of the pronoun *that*, not expressing the substantive it refers to, but understanding it: as, "Have you seen my house? No, but I have seen *that* of your brother." In German this is not so customary, but the substantive is commonly repeated. Haben Sie mein Haus gesehen? Nein, aber ich habe das Haus Ihres Bruders gesehen,

6. The manner, in which the two relative pronouns, *welcher* and *der*, are employed, has been mentioned in the first part. We have here to add, that the genitive of *der* is, in general, preferred to that of *welcher*: *Der Mann, dessen ich gedachte*, the man I mentioned; *die Ehre, deren er so wichtig ist*, the honour, of which he is so deserving; *die Männer, deren Verdienste so groß sind*, those men, whose merits are so great.—*Der* is also put, when a vocative case precedes: as, *Gott, der du alles mit Weisheit regierest*, O God, who governest all things with wisdom.—The particle *daß* is sometimes found before *welcher*, as a mere expletive: *Die Fremden, daß solche hier angekommen sind*, the strangers, that have arrived here. Now and then it may have an explanatory capacity, similar to the Latin *quippe*; but in most instances it is superfluous. The relative cannot be conveniently joined with the imperative mood; at least it sounds awkward: for example: *welches siehe*, which see; better, *siehe dies*, see this.

SECT. II.

VERB AND PARTICIPLE.

Persons and Numbers.

Rule 1. The verb must agree with the subject nominative, in number and person.

Observations. 1. When the verb belongs to two or more substantives of the singular number,

it should be put in the plural: as, *Haß, Liebe, und Eifersucht, sind heftige Leidenschaften der menschlichen Seele*, hatred, love, and jealousy, are violent passions of the human mind. Sometimes, however, we find the verb in the singular after two or more substantives, which, though inaccurate, cannot absolutely be condemned as a fault, since the custom of the language is not quite against it. For example: *Mord und Verwüstung herrschet im Lande*, death and destruction reigns in the land.—In poetry, the metre may render the singular necessary.

2. When the subjects are of different persons, the first person is preferred to the second; and the second is paramount to the third: consequently, the verb will be put in the first person plural, when one of the subject nominatives is of the first person, and in the second, if there is a second and no first personal; for example: *Ich, du, und dein Bruder*, or, *Du, dein Bruder, und ich, wollen spazieren gehen*, you, your brother, and I will take a walk. *Wollen* is put in the first person plural, because one of the subjects (*du, dein Bruder, und ich*) is the first person, *ich*. *Du, dein Bruder, und deine Schwester, seyd heute eingeladen worden*, you, your brother, and your sister, have been invited to-day.. *Seyd* is the second person of the verb, on account of *du*, the second personal pronoun, which takes the lead in absence of the first.

3. The verb stands in the plural number, with a subject nominative of the singular, from motives of politeness. Thus we find it in titles of address: as, *Euer Excellenz haben befohlen*, your Excellency

has ordered; Eure Majestät geruhen, your Majesty is graciously pleased; Ihre Gnaden bemerken, your Grace observes. In the above, haben, geruhen, bemerken, are in the plural number. Also in speaking of people: as, Der Herr Baron sind hier gewesen, my Lord Baron has been here; der Herr Graf haben es mir gesagt, my Lord Count has told me. However, this is carrying the point of politeness too far; it is better not to deviate from the rule unnecessarily. In the titles of address this peculiarity must be observed in conformity to the prevailing custom of the nation.

Rule 2. The personal pronouns are always to be expressed, unless some other word is substituted for them.

Observations. 1. It is of course understood, that when a subject nominative accompanies the verb, no additional pronoun is wanted. Therefore, in the third person the pronoun is not required, when a substantive, in the nominative case, is already with the verb; for example: Der Mann schreibt, the man writes, where it would be wrong to say, der Mann er schreibt, the man he writes; one nominative being sufficient. In the same manner, when you address a person with a title, the second pronoun personal would be superfluous, as: Ihre Gnaden beweisen mir sehr viele Güte, your Grace, or your Lordship, shows me great kindness: where the insertion of a pronoun, after *your Grace*, would be improper.

2. The imperative mood takes no pronoun in the second person, except for the sake of empha-

sis, and distinction. But the third person cannot be used without the pronoun, not even, when it stands for the second, in speaking to people. See the Conjugation of Verbs.

3. When two or more verbs of the same person meet together, one pronoun or substantive may serve for them all, for example: Ich lese, und schreibe, I read and write; er kam zu mir, ging aber bald wieder weg, he came to me, but soon went away again; wir haben Ihre Einladung erhalten, danken für Ihre Güte, und werden uns das Vergnügen machen Sie zu besuchen, we have received your invitation, thank you for your kindness, and will do ourselves the pleasure of calling upon you. In these instances the pronoun is only put once, before the first verb. It is the same, when a substantive or proper name is joined to the verb: as, der Feind kam, und verheerte das Land, the enemy came, and desolated the country.

4. The first personal pronoun is sometimes omitted in old and ceremonious language, for instance, when we address those of superior rank: as, Eure Gnade solln hiemit versichern, I can here with assure your Lordship; Deren Schreiben habe erhalten, I have received your letter. This idiom arose from a mistaken notion of respect, as if it were improper to mention your own person after the one you meant to honour. In modern times these gothick ideas are, in a great measure, abandoned; and we do no longer adhere to that mode of writing.

Tenses.

THE use of the tenses is nearly the same in German, as in English. We have to observe, that the preterimperfect is, in German, not commonly employed to express an action quite passed, and unconnected with any other. For this we put, in general, the preterperfect tense, whereas the English very often prefer the preterimperfect; for example: *Ich habe das nie gesehen*, I never saw it; *ich bin nie da gewesen*, I never was there; *sind Sie nie in Berlin gewesen*, were you never at Berlin. In these instances you have the preterperfect in the German, and the preterimperfect in the English.—When the action is connected with another, that happened at the same time, or in consequence of the former, the preterimperfect is the proper tense. *Da wir hier ankamen, so schickten wir unsern Bedienten zurück*, when we arrived here, we sent back our servant. *We arrived and sent back*, are two actions connected with, and following out of, one another.—Such a connection of actions is the subject of historical narration. The preterimperfect is, therefore, peculiarly adapted to that sort of composition.

In historical style the present tense is frequently substituted for the past imperfect, to enliven the representation. This is sometimes done in English, but more seldom, than in German.

Lastly, we may notice that the present tense is occasionally applied to a future action. *Ich*

reise morgen ab, I (shall) set off to-morrow; in drey Wochen sehen Sie mich wieder hier, in three weeks you (will) see me here again; ich komme gleich wieder, I (will) come back immediately.

The Moods.

THE *Indicative* and *Imperative* require no elucidation.

Rule 1. The *Subjunctive*, or as the Germans commonly call it, the *Conjunctive*, is put

a. When a state of uncertainty is implied. We therefore find it after some conjunctions, which convey that idea. Such are, *wenn*, if; *als wenn*, as if; *ob*, whether; *damit*, in order that; *daß*, that. But the subjunctive must not be supposed to be governed by those conjunctions. It solely depends upon the uncertainty or doubtfulness, with which the action of the verb is conceived. It appears, for instance, that the subjunctive follows after *daß*, when any one of these verbs precedes: *bitten*, to beg; *rathen*, to advise; *ermahnen*, to exhort; *besorgen*, to apprehend; *fürchten*, to fear; *scheinen*, to appear, to seem; *bedingen*, to make conditions; *wünschen*, to wish; *wollen*, to desire; *zweifeln*, to doubt, &c. For, when we *beg, advise, exhort, apprehend, fear, wish, desire*, that a thing be done, a degree of uncertainty remains as to the event. Therefore the subjunctive is made use of in German. This is farther manifest from the verb *sagen*, to say, and similar ones, as, *antworten*, to answer; *behaupten*,

to maintain, &c. When that, which is said, or maintained, remains, in our idea, liable to doubt, the subjunctive should follow after *daß*; for example: *Man sagt mir, daß es gedonnert habe*, they tell me, that there has been thunder; *unser Freund behauptet, daß dieß ein fruchtbares Jahr sein werde*, our friend maintains, that this will be a fruitful year. Here I am told something, and a person has maintained, that such and such an event will take place. But in as far as I do not regard these things as perfectly certain, and as I may doubt them, it is proper that the notion should be expressed in the subjunctive mood.—When, on the other hand, the idea is considered as positive and certain, the indicative must be put. For instance, when we speak of ourselves, we naturally exclude doubt: as, *Ich behaupte, daß es wahr ist*, I maintain that it is true. Here the subjunctive would be wrong, because the notion is positive. If what we maintain were not certain in our idea, we should look for another expression, such as, *I believe, I think*. *Ich weiß, daß er das Geld bekommen hat*, I know he has received the money: the indicative, upon the same ground. Hence it is evident, that the subjunctive depends upon the conception we have formed of the certainty or uncertainty in the action of the verb. It is a natural consequence of this, that in some instances it may be questioned, whether the indicative or subjunctive be more proper: the decision will rest on the point of view, in which we consider the sentence,

—We find the subjunctive sometimes unnecessarily employed, because those notions, by which its use is regulated, are not always sufficiently distinguished.

b. The subjunctive mood takes place, when *daß* and *wenn* are to be understood: as, *Er glaubt, es sey nicht möglich*, he thinks (*that*) it is not possible; *Man sagt, der Kaiser habe Frieden gemacht*, they say (*that*) the Emperor has made peace. *Wäre ich an Ihrer Stelle*, were I in your place, instead of, *wenn ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre*, if I were in your place; *hätte er die Schätze des Croesus*, had he the treasures of Croesus, for, *wenn er die Schätze des Cr. hätte*, if he had the treasures of Cr. Thus, *Sollte sich das ereignen*, should that happen; *sollte er nicht kommen*, should he not come; for, if that should happen, if he should not come.

c. It frequently stands in a potential signification, expressing a wish: as, *Der Himmel gebe es*, may heaven grant it; *Gott behüte*, God forbid; or a permission, as, *Er gehe, wohin er wolle*, let him go where he pleases; or a supposition, as, *es wäre besser, wenn wir Ihren Rath befolgt hätten*, it would be better, if we had followed your advice; *die Franzosen hätten die Schlacht nicht gewonnen, wenn sie nicht eine so große Uebermacht an Leuten gehabt hätten*, the French would not have gained the battle, if they had not had such superior numbers.

Rule 2. The Infinitive Mood occurs either without the preposition zu, or with it.

1. Without *zu*.

a. When it stands by itself, and unconnected, for example, in a vocabulary, *lieben*, to love; *sehen*, to see.

b. When it is put in the room of a substantive, either as the subject, or as the object: as, *versprechen und erfüllen sind zwei verschiedene Sachen*, to promise and to fulfil are two different things; *daß nenne ich fechten*, that I call to fight, or fighting; *daß heiße ich grausam verfahren*, that I call to act cruelly, or acting cruelly.

c. After the auxiliaries, and the verbs: *kommen*, *mögen*, *lassen*, *dürfen*, *sollen*, *wollen*, *müssen*.

d. After the verbs: *heissen*, to bid; *helfen*, to help; *lehren*, to teach; *lernen*, to learn; *hören*, to hear; *sehen*, to see; *fühlen*, to feel. For example: *Ich hieß ihn gehen*, I bid him go; *er hilft mir schreiben*, he helps me to write, i. e. he assists me in writing; *der Vater lehrt das Kind lesen*, the father teaches the child to read; *wir lernen tanzen*, we learn to dance; *ich höre sie singen*, I hear them sing; *ich sehe ihn kommen*, I see him come, or coming; *er fühlte sein Blut gähren*, he felt his blood boil, or boiling.—*Note.* After some of the above verbs, the English more commonly use the participle; the Germans constantly employ the infinitive. *Lehren* and *lernen* sometimes admit *zu* before the infinitive that follows them.

e. Some verbs are joined to an infinitive (without *zu*) in particular phrases. They are

Bleiben, to remain: with the infinitive it signifies continuance of locality: as, *Er bleibt liegen*, he continues lying; *er bleibt sitzen*, he continues sitting,

he keeps his seat, he does not move from his seat; or *bleibt stehen*, he continues standing. Thus with *stecken*, to stick fast; *hangen*, to hang; *knien*, to kneel; *kleben*, to adhere, to stick.

Fahren, to go in a carriage, with *spazieren*: as, *Ich fahre spazieren*, I drive out for exercise, for an airing.

Finden, to find, is occasionally followed by the infinitive, when the English put the participle. *Er fand sie schlafen*, he found them sleeping, or asleep; *ich fand das Buch auf dem Tische liegen*, I found the book lying upon the table. The participle might here be used, even in German.

Gehen, to go: as, *ich gehe spazieren*, I take a walk; *er geht schlafen*, he goes to sleep, i. e. he goes to bed; and with some other verbs.

Haben, to have, in these and similar phrases: *Er hat gut reisen*, he has good travelling; *Sie haben gut sprechen*, you have fine talking; *wir haben Geld auf Zinsen stehen*, we have money standing out on interest.

Sich legen, to lay oneself down, with *schlafen*, to sleep: as, *ich lege mich schlafen*, I lay myself down to sleep.

Machen, when it signifies to cause, to occasion: as, *Er macht mich lachen*, he makes me laugh; *er macht mich weinen*, he makes me cry.

Reiten, to ride on horseback, with *spazieren*: as, *Ich reite spazieren*, I take a ride.

Thun, to do, with *nichts* and *als* after it: as, *Die Frau thut nichts als tanzen*, the woman does

nothing but quarrel; *der Mann thut nichts als schelten*, the man does nothing but abuse.

2. The Infinitive with the preposition *zu*, to, before it.

a. After nouns, when the English either put *to*, with the infinitive, or *of*, with the participle; for example, after a substantive: *Lust zu spielen*, an inclination to play; *das Vergnügen Sie zu sehen*, the pleasure of seeing you; *der Wunsch gelobt zu werden*, the wish of being praised. After an adjective: *ich war froh meinen Freund wieder zu sehen*, I was happy to see my friend again; *müde zu stehen*, tired of standing.

b. After verbs, when purpose and design is intimated. *Ich ging zu dem Manne, ihm die Sache vorzustellen, und mit ihm darüber zu sprechen*, I went to the man, to represent the thing to him, and to converse with him about it. And here the particle *um* is frequently joined with *zu*, which expresses the design still more distinctly. *Lebet die Tugend, um glücklich zu seyn*, love virtue (for) to be happy.

c. After the following, and verbs of a similar signification: *anfangen*, to begin; *aufhören*, to cease; *befehlen*, to command; *bitten*, to beg; *hoffen*, to hope; *fürchten*, to fear; *drohen*, to threaten; *pflügen*, to be wont; *behaupten*, to maintain; *erkennen*, to acknowledge; *bekennen*, to confess; *erscheinen*, to appear; *wünschen*, to wish; *verlangen*, to desire. — *Note.* In English the Infinitive *to be*, is put after some verbs, where the Germans prefer the conjunction *dass*, with the indicative and subjunc-

tive; for example: *I believe it to be true*, ich glaube, daß es wahr ist; *I thought him to be the man*, ich dachte, daß er der Mann wäre. The difference is, that the Germans do not like to join an accusative case with the infinitive of the verb seyn. We find the foreign idiom sometimes imitated; but I doubt, whether with propriety.

d. The preposition ohne, without, requires zu before the infinitive. The English construe it with the participle: as, Ohne zu wissen, without knowing; Fr. *sans savoir*,

The Auxiliaries.

When the same auxiliary belongs to more than one verb, it need only be once expressed: as, Ich habe es gehört und gesehen, I have heard, and seen it; wir haben geschrieben, gelesen, und gesprochen, we have written, read, and talked; der König wird von seinen Unterthanen geliebt und geehrt, the king is beloved and honoured by his subjects. It would make the sentence heavy, to have the auxiliary more than once in those several examples. The English coincides in this with the German language.—But the latter owns a peculiarity, which other tongues are not acquainted with; namely, the first and second auxiliary, when placed at the end of a sentence, may be omitted for the sake of euphony, or also brevity. For instance: Mein Freund hat mir gesagt, daß er Ihren Brief erhalten, my friend has told me, that he has received your letter. After erhalten the auxiliary, habe, or hat, is to be un-

derstood. It might as well have been expressed, yet the omission is not amiss, as that auxiliary precedes; by which means a repetition of the same sound is prevented. So far it may be said to promote euphony. But a care must be had, that from this ellipsis no obscurity or mistake may arise: and it is, upon the whole, better to avoid it, when there is no reason for adopting it. Sometimes, however, that licence may be of essential service in composition. The third auxiliary, though placed at the end, can never be left out.

The Verb governing Cases of Declension.

Rule 1. The Nominative case, as the object, is required by the following verb:

a. *Seyn, to be; werden, to become; bleiben, to remain; heißen, to be called, to bear a name; scheinen, to seem.* Examples: *Friedrich war ein großer König, Frederick was a great king; mein Bruder ist Soldat geworden, my brother is become a soldier; er bleibt ein Thor, wie er immer war, he remains a silly man, as he always was; dieser Mensch heißt der Oberste, this man is called the colonel; es scheint ein guter Plan, it seems a good plan.*

b. By the passive voice of such verbs, as, in the active, govern a double accusative, for instance; *nennen, to call, to name—er wird ein ehrlicher Mann genannt, he is called an honest man; heißen, to call, to name; taufen, to christen—das Kind ist Heinrich getauft worden, the child has been christened Henry.* *Heinrich* is the nominative case.

Schelten, to abuse—*er wird ein Betrüger gescholten*, he is abused as a cheat; *schimpfen*, to insult by opprobrious appellations—*er wurde eine Memme geschimpft*, he was insulted as a coward—*Note*. Some verbs occur, in English, with two accusatives, in the active, and two nominatives (namely, one as the subject before, and the other as the object after the verb) in the passive voice: whereas, in German, the second case is construed with a preposition. Such are the verbs, to appoint, to choose, to declare, and the like; for example: *Er ist zum Doctor gemacht worden*, he is made a doctor; *er ist zum Richter ernannt worden*, he has been appointed judge; *er wurde für einen Spießbuben erklärt*, he was declared a thief. In these instances we have the prepositions *zu* and *für*; and in English two nominatives.—There is a doubt about the verb *lehren*, to teach. Some grammarians join with it a double accusative, in the active voice; as, *einen Musi lehren*, to teach a person musick. Accordingly, it is right to say, in the passive, *er ist Musi gelehrt worden*, he has been taught musick. Others object to the two accusatives, in the active voice; and therefore cannot allow an object nominative to be governed by the passive. If in the active you say, *einem Musi lehren*, to teach musick to a person; you must in the passive retain the dative: as, *Mir ist Musi gelehrt worden*, musick has been taught (to) me.

c. The reflexive verbs are followed by a nominative after *als*, or *wie*, for instance: *Er betragt sich als ein rechtschaffener Man*, he conducts himself as

an honest man; er zeichnet sich als ein guter Soldat aus, he distinguishes himself as a good soldier. But it will be understood, that this nominative case is not governed by the reflective verb. That mode of speaking is elliptical: for, at full length, it should be, Er betrügt sich, als ein rechtschaffener Mann sich betrügt, he conducts himself, as an honest man conducts himself; er zeichnet sich aus, als ein guter Soldat sich auszeichnet, he distinguishes himself, as a good soldier distinguishes himself. It is the same after verbs, that are not reflective; as, Der Knabe schreibt als ein Mann, the boy writes as a man; for, der Knabe schreibt, als ein Mann schreibt, the boy writes, as a man writes.—If we would refer the case to the reflective verb, it could not be the nominative; for example: Er zeigt sich als einen tüchtigen Feldherrn, he shews himself an able general.

Rule 2. The Genitive case, governed

a. By the verbs: anklagen, to accuse of; beschuldigen, to accuse of, to charge with; berauben, to rob; überheben, to disburden, to free from; würdigen, to deign, to think worthy of. The thing, that we are accused of, charged with, robbed of, freed from, thought worthy of, is put in the genitive case; for example: Jemanden des Mordes anklagen, to accuse a person of murder; jemanden der Verrätherey beschuldigen, to charge a person with treachery; jemanden seines Vermögens berauben, to rob a person of his fortune; jemanden der Mühe überheben, to free a person from the trouble; jemanden großer Ehren würdigen, to think a person worthy of great honour.

b. The following take the genitive case of the thing, and the accusative of the person; though they may also be placed in some other construction. *Gewähren*, to grant; *entblößen*, to strip; *entlassen*, to dismiss; *entladen*, to disburden; *entledigen*, to free from; *entsetzen*, to displace; *überführen*, to convict; *überzeugen*, to convince; *versichern*, to assure; *verweisen*, to banish. For example: *Jemanden seines Wunsches gewähren*, to grant to a person his wish, i. e. that which he wishes; *einen Mann seines Amtes entsetzen*, to discharge a man from his office; *sich einer Last entledigen*, to disincumber oneself of a burden; *den Schuldigen seines Verbrechens überführen*, to convict the guilty person of his crime; *ich versichere dich meiner Freundschaft*, I assure you of my friendship. Those beginning with *en* and *über*, may be put with the preposition *von*, and the dative following: as, *jemanden von seiner Last entladen*, to free a person from his burden; *jemanden von seinem Dienste entlassen*, to dismiss a person from his office; *jemanden von seinem Irrthum überzeugen*, to convince a person of his error. *Gewähren* and *versichern* may be joined with the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing: as, *Ich gewähre dir deine Bitte*, I grant (to you) your request; *ich versichere es dir*, I assure (it to) you. *Versichern* is likewise combined with the preposition *von*: as, *Ich bin von der Sache versichert*, I am assured of the thing. — *Belehren* has the genitive of the thing, in the expression, *jemanden eines Lesens belehren*, to inform a person of what

worthy of great honour.

is better, to set him right. But commonly *von* is made use of—*er hat mich von der Sache belehrt*.

c. These govern either the genitive, or accusative: *achten*, to mind, to care about; *bedürfen*, to want; *begehren*, to desire; *entbehren*, to want, to do without; *erwähnen*, to mention; *genießen*, to enjoy; *pflegen*, to foster, to take care of; *schonen*, to spare; *spotten*, to mock; *warten*, to attend to, to take care of, as, *seines Amtes warten*, to attend to one's office.—*Gedenken*, to remember, to think of, may have the genitive after it, or the preposition *an* with the accusative.

d. Several reflective verbs have the genitive after them. Such are, *sich anmaßen*, to claim, as, *sich eines Titels anmaßen*, to claim a title; *sich (einer Sache) annehmen*, to interest oneself in a thing; *sich bedanken*, to thank for, as, *ich bedanke mich dessen*, I thank you for that; *sich bedenken*, to consider; *sich besinnen*, to think upon; *sich bedienen*, to make use of; *sich begeben*, to resign, to give up; *sich bemächtigen*, *sich bemeistern*, to make oneself master of a thing, to gain possession of it; *sich enthalten*, to abstain; *sich entschlagen*, to get rid of a thing; *sich entsinnen*, to recollect; *sich erbarmen*, to have mercy, to have compassion; *sich erinnern*, to remember; *sich erwehren*, to resist; *sich freuen*, to rejoice; *sich getrostern*, to hope with confidence; *sich rühmen*, to boast of; *sich schämen*, to be ashamed; *sich unterfangen*, *unterwinden*, to venture on, to undertake; *sich versehen*, to be aware of; *sich weigern*, to refuse, &c. Add some impersonals: *Es gereut mich*, I repent; *mich jammert*, I pity, am sorry for;

es verlangt mich, I desire; *es verlohnt sich* (der Mühe) it is worth (while). Many of these verbs also admit other cases, and prepositions.

c. The use of the genitive was formerly more frequent than it is in our days. We, therefore, find it, in old writing, after many verbs, that are now combined with different cases, particularly the accusative, or with prepositions. For instance, to express a part of a thing, the mere genitive was put, where we now employ a preposition: as, *Isß des Brotes*, eat of the bread; *trinke des Weines*, drink of the wine; *nimm des Getraides*, take of the corn. At present we should say, *isß von dem Brote*, *trinke von dem Weine*, &c.

Rule 3. The Dative case after the verb.

a. After transitive verbs, which, at the same time, govern an accusative. The accusative is then called the case of the thing, and the dative the case of the person; for example: *Geben Sie dem Manne das Buch*, give the book to the man. *Dem Manne* is the dative case of the person, and *das Buch*, the accusative of the thing.—The following verbs take the dative of the person: *Geben*, to give; *nehmen*, to take from a person; *sagen*, to say; *erzählen*, to tell; *bringen*, to bring; *befehlen*, to command; *bezahlen*, to pay; *kosten*, to cost; *bieten*, to offer; *borgen*, to sell upon credit; *leihen*, to lend; *glauben*, to believe; *gönnen*, not to envy; *klagen*, to complain of; *liefern*, to furnish; *leissen*, to show, to render, as *Dienste leisten*, to render a service; *erlassen*, to remit; *erwidern*, to return, to give in turn, to reply; *gebieten*, to command; *geloben*, to

vow; gestatten, to allow.—Add verbs compounded with *ab*: *Abbitten*, to beg pardon, as, *einem einen Fehler abbitten*, to beg a person's pardon for a fault; *abfordern*, to demand; *abzwingen*, to force from; *abrathen*, to advise; *abschlagen*, to refuse; *absprechen*, to give sentence against a person, *einem etwas absprechen*; *abkaufen*, to buy of. Some with *an*: *Anbieten*, to offer; *anrathen*, to advise; *andeuten*, to signify; *anzeigen*, to announce, and the like. Some with *ent*: *Entreißen*, to snatch away; *entziehen*, to take away, &c.

b. After verbs intransitive: as, *Anliegen*, to apply to, to solicit; *gehören* and *angehören*, to belong to; *begegnen*, to meet; *befommen*, to agree with, said of things, that refer to our health and constitution, for instance, of eating and drinking; *bevorstehen*, to impend; *beifallen*, to agree with a person in opinion; *danken*, to thank; *dienen*, to serve; *drohen*, to threaten; *fröhnen*, to do service without pay; *gelingen*, to succeed, to prosper—*es gedeihet mir*; *gehören*, to obey; *gefallen*, to please; *gerathen*, *gelingen*, to succeed—*es gerath ihm*; *gleichen*, to be like; *geziemen*, to become, to be fit; *einleuchten*, to be clear—*es leuchtet mir ein*; *nützen*, to be useful; *obliegen* (*einer Sache*) to apply oneself to a thing; *unterliegen*, to be overcome, to yield; *schaden*, to hurt; *schmeicheln*, to flatter; *scheinen*, to seem—*es scheint mir*; *troßen*, to bid defiance; *steuern*, to restrain, to check; *wehren*, to check; *weichen*, *ausweichen*, to give way, to yield; *widerstehen*, to resist; *wohlwollen*, to wish well. And these impersonals: *Es ahndet mir*, it misgives me,

I foresee; *es beliebt*, it pleases; *es gebricht*, it is wanting; *es geziemt*, it becomes; *es graut mir*, I am fearful; *es träumt mir*, I dream; *es schwindelt mir*, I am giddy; *es schauert mir*, I shudder; *es verschlägt mir nichts*, it makes no difference to me.

c. Some verbs both take the dative and the accusative: *Ankommen*, to come upon—*mir*, or *mich*, *kömmt Furcht an*, fear comes upon me; *mir*, or *mich*, *däucht*, it seems to me; *mir*, or *mich*, *dünkt*, it seems to me (the accusative is more usual); *es schmerzt mir*, or *mich*, it pains me; *mir*, or *mich*, *ekelt*, I loathe. *Heissen*, to bid, to desire, occurs with the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing—*wer hat dir das geheissen?* who desired you to do that? but the person may also be put in the accusative, *wer hat sich das geheissen?* The same is to be said of *lehren*, to teach, which either is followed by two accusatives, one of the thing, and the other of the person; or by the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing. I think the latter more proper.

d. The dative expresses advantage or disadvantage, and answers to the English prepositions *to*, and *for*; for example: *Dir scheint die Sonne*, for thee the sun shines; *dir lachen die Felder*, to thee the fields smile; *dir heulen die Winde*, to thee, i. e. against thee, the winds roar.

Rule 4. The Accusative is governed by verbs transitive.

These are verbs, that imply an action, passing over to an object: as, I love my country, *I love*

is the verb transitive, the action of which passes over to the object, *my country*.

That verbs neuter may be transformed into transitives, and govern an accusative, has been noticed upon a former occasion, as, *einen guten Kampf kämpfen*, to fight a good fight; where *kämpfen* is put with the accusative, though it is generally used without any case.

There are verbs that take a double accusative: as, *heissen*, to call; *nennen*, to name; *schelten*, to abuse; *schimpfen*, to call by an opprobrious name. For example: *Ich heisse, nenne, ihn einen Helden*, I call him a hero; *er schalt, schimpfte ihn einen Betrüger*, he, by way of insult, called him a cheat. To which may be added *fragen*, to ask, as *einen etwas fragen*, to ask a person something; but it is better to make use of a preposition, as, *einen um etwas fragen*, to ask a person about something. Of *lehren*, to teach, and *heissen*, to command, which sometimes have a double accusative, we have already spoken.

The Participle.

We have anticipated in the first part all that was necessary to be said of the participle, so that there remains little or nothing to add.—Besides its connection with the verb, the participle is, in the syntax, liable to the rules of the adjective.—The preterite is combined in a particular way with the verbs *wollen*, *haben*, and *wissen*: as, *Ich wollte Sie gefragt haben*, I would have you asked, &c. I.

should wish to ask you; *ich wollte Sie gebeten haben*, I would have you requested, *i. e.* I would request you. *Dieses Verbrechen wollen wir geahndet wissen*, we would know this crime punished, *i. e.* we wish to have it punished; *er will nichts von der Sache gesagt wissen*, he wishes not to know any thing said of the matter, *i. e.* he does not wish to have any thing said about it.

SECT. III.

OF THE PREPOSITION, CONJUNCTION, AND INTERJECTION.

THIS section only furnishes a few short observations.

Of the Preposition.

When the same preposition belongs to more than one noun, it need only be once expressed: as, *von meinem Vater, meinem Bruder, und meiner Schwester*, from my father, my brother, and my sister.

Of the Conjunction.

The subjunctive mood follows after some conjunctions: yet it is not governed by them, as sometimes is erroneously conceived, but depends upon other grounds, which have been fully explained above.

Of the Interjection.

The interjection stands quite by itself: it neither is governed by, nor governs, any other part of speech. Therefore, the nominative and vocative, being independent cases, that is, such as are not governed by a preceding word, most naturally stand after the interjections. Ach! ich unglücklicher Mensch, ah! I unhappy mortal. Ey! der Schalk, ah! the rogue! O! was für ein Scheusal, O! what a horrible object. Ach! lieber Freund, ah! beloved friend. O! theurer Vater, O! dearest Father.

We find the genitive case after interjections, but it must not be considered as the effect of them. Ach! des Elendes, ah! the misery. O! der Freude, oh, what joy! Ach! des Undankbaren, ah! the ungrateful wretch. Psui! des schamlosen Menschen, fie upon that shameless man! This genitive case seems to be owing to an ellipsis, and is a peculiarity of the German language, as is shown in other places.

The dative of advantage or disadvantage is put after certain words, that may be called interjections, though they are not strictly so: as, wohl ihm! happy him!—wohl dem Menschen! happy the man!—weh mir! woe is me!

In imitation of the Latin, the accusative case is also found after the interjection: as, O! mich Unglücklichen! O, me miserum! O, unhappy me! But this I regard as foreign to the German language, and not proper to be imitated.

CHAP. II.

ON IDIOMS.

As there are things peculiar to the language, which the former chapter could not conveniently comprehend, the present is devoted to them. It will contain a mixture of observations, as they occur, without any particular arrangement. Our object is to collect under this head those modes of expression, which differ from the English, and belong to the nature of the German tongue. As far as the word *Idiom* denotes such peculiarities, it will be deemed proper for the title of this chapter.

We will begin with a subject, which has been mentioned upon former occasions, viz.

The Use of the Genitive Case.

It is frequently met with, when there is apparently no word to govern it. Thus it expresses:

a. Relation of time. *Des Abends*, in the evening; *des Morgens*, in the morning; *des Mittags*, at noon; *des Nachts*, in the night (here the article is changed, to correspond with the ending, a circumstance which has been noticed before); *Sonnabends*, on Saturday; *Montags*, on Monday; *eines Tages*, one day, on a certain day; *heutiges Tages*, this day; *einmal des Monats*, once in a month; *viermal des Jahres*, four times in a year; *zwei ganzer Stunden*, two whole hours.

b. Relation of place. *Dieses Ortes*, in this place; *gehörigen Ortes*, in, or at, a proper place; *aller Orte*, in all places, every where.

c. Way and manner. *Gerades* (or *geraden*) *Wege*, straightways; *stehenden Fußes*, immediately; *dieser Gestalt*, in this manner; *folgender Gestalt*, in the following manner; *meines Theils*, on my part; *unsers Theils*, on our part; *meines Wissens*, to my knowledge; *meines Bedünkens*, in my opinion; *einiger Maßen*, in some measure; *gewisser Maßen*, in a certain measure; *unverrichteter Sache*, not having effected one's purpose. Add the following phrases: *Hungers sterben*, to die of hunger; *eines schmerzlichen Todes sterben*, to die a painful death; *der Hoffnung leben*, to live in hope; *des Zutrauens leben*, to live with confidence, *i. e.* to place confidence in a thing. With the verb *seyn* as, *Willens seyn*, to intend; *der Meinung seyn*, to be of opinion; *des Todes seyn*, to perish, &c. If we were to enquire into the origin of this case, we should probably trace it to some ellipsis, and find either prepositions, or other words, to be supplied in the several instances. But it cannot answer our purpose to enter into the subject so minutely; it will be sufficient to state, that such is the use of that case in the German language. As it is founded upon something, that is not precisely ascertained, the student should be cautious in applying it, and always look to good examples, and authority. He would be liable to mistake, if he were to form new expressions of that kind. In general, prepositions will serve to convey the same

notions. This topick has been introduced Part 1. Chap. 6.

The Use of the Accusative.

This case stands by itself, when we speak of time: *Den zehnten Tag nach der Schlacht*, the tenth day after the battle; *so war es das erste Jahr*, thus it was (in) the first year; *den neunten Jul*, the ninth of July; *vorigen Dienstag*, last Tuesday; *dreh mal die Woche*, three times a week. The genitive also serves for this purpose (see before), or a preposition with some other case.—Duration of time is likewise expressed by the accusative: *Ich bin den ganzen Tag zu Hause gewesen*, I have been at home the whole day; *ich werde noch einen Monath in der Stadt bleiben*, I shall remain yet a month in town; *verweilen Sie einen Augenblick*, stay one moment.

After certain adjectives, and verbs, signifying weight, measure, extent, age, price, value, such as great, broad, heavy, to weigh, to cost, the accusative follows, though it does not exactly appear, that it is governed by those words. *Einen Fuß breit*, a foot broad; *einen Monath alt*, a month old; *es wiegt einen Zentner*, it weighs a cent weight.

Space and motion are indicated by the accusative. *Einen langen Weg gehen*, to go a long way; *den Berg hinunter laufen*, to run down the mountain; *er geht einen guten Schritt*, he walks a good pace.

Nouns of Measure and Quantity

leave the words, that follow them, unaltered: as *Zwölf Ellen Tuch*, twelve yards of cloth; *fünf Pfund Fleisch*, five pounds of meat; *zehn Thaler Silber*, ten dollars of silver coin. For a more particular account we may refer to Part 1. Chap. 2. Sect. 3. Gen. Rem. Sometimes, however, the genitive is put: as, *ein Summ Geldes*, a sum of money; *ein Haufen Goldes*, a heap of gold; *eine Menge Volkes*, a crowd of people; *eine Meile Weges*, a mile of the way, i. e. a mile distant; more especially, when an adjective precedes the substantive, as, *ein Gericht schöner Fische*, a dish of fine fish.

The Gender is occasionally deviated from, when the meaning of the word is more regarded than its grammatical nature. *Dieses Frauenzimmer ist am schönsten, wenn sie sich nicht schminkt*, this lady is most handsome, when she does not paint herself. *Frauenzimmer* is of the neuter gender, but the pronoun *sie*, she, is feminine; because this is the gender, which the subject ought naturally to have, though, from a grammatical combination, the appellative differs. *Er liebt sein Weib nicht, sondern mißhandelt sie*, he does not love his wife, but ill-treats her. *Weib* is neuter, and the feminine *sie* answers to it. In the Latin grammar this would be called *constructio ad verbum*. Thus the English often admit a different number, which comes under the same denomination: namely, when a collective noun precedes, though in the singular, the verb, belonging to it, frequently stands in the plural: as, *all the company were present*; the

army of martyrs praise thee. It should be *was*, and *praises*, because *company* and *army* are of the singular number. But being collectives, that is to say, words which comprehend several individuals, the idea of plurality is followed, and the grammatical number set aside. The Germans, however, do not allow this deviation, but adhere to the number of the subject nominative.

The *Dative Singular* of the first and second personal pronoun, *mir*, *dir*, is, in familiar language, often inserted only as an expletive: *Du bist mir ein schöner Kerl*, thou art a fine fellow! *Ich lobt mir den Rheinwein*, I give the preference to Rhenish wine; *das mag dir eine Freude gewesen seyn*, that must have been a (great) joy! We also find the plural of the second personal thus interposed: *Das war euch eine Lust*, that was a pleasure! *das war euch ein Fest*, that was a festivity!

The *Possessive Pronoun* is sometimes put after the genitive case; as, *des Vaters sein Bruder*, the father his brother; *der Frau ihr Kind*, the woman her child, instead of the woman's child. See Part 1. Chap. 2. Sect. 2. We may suppose, that the pronoun is instead of the termination of the noun, and that consequently we should not say, *des Vaters sein Kind*, *des Mannes sein Buch*, but, *des Vaters sein Kind*, *des Manns sein Buch*; though this circumstance is not always attended to in practice.—The English, when they wish to express one individual object out of a greater number; in their possession, place the possessive pronoun after the substantive in the genitive case; as, *a friend of mine*; *a servant of yours*;

an acquaintance of yours; a book of his. In German a different mode is followed, for instance: Ein Freund von mir, a friend of me, or einer von meinen Freunden, one of my friends; ein Bedienter von uns, a servant of us, or einer von unsern Bedienten, one of our servants; eines von seinen Büchern, one of his books.

Alle und jede, all and every one. This is almost the only instance, in which jeder suffers the plural number.

Alle, in common life, signifies, sometimes, that a thing is consumed, finished, that nothing of it is left: as, Der Wein ist alle, the wine is finished; die Erdbeeren sind alle, the strawberries are eaten.

Meines gleichen, deines gleichen, seines gleichen, ihres gleichen, eures gleichen, means, people of an equal situation with me, thee, him, her, them, you.

The *Infinitive* of the active voice, after certain verbs, occasionally has a passive signification. Laß ihn rufen, let him call, may also signify, let him be called; der Richter hieß ihn binden, the judge ordered him to bind, also, to be bound; wir sahen ihn schlagen, we saw him beating, also, being beaten. This manner of expression, though perfectly consistent with the idiom of the German language, should be avoided, when ambiguity is created by it.

The *Infinitive* of the verbs, dürfen, sollen, können, mögen, lassen, müssen, wollen, hören, sehen, is substituted for the *preterite Participle*, when an infinitive precedes. Ich habe es nicht thun dürfen (for gedurft), I was not allowed to do it; du hättest kommen sollen (for gesollt), you ought to have

come; wir hätten es sehen können (for gekonnt), we might have seen it; er hat ein Haus bauen lassen (for gelassen), he has caused a house to be built; ich habe ihn anhören müssen (for gemußt), I have been obliged to listen to him; hätten wir ausgehen wollen (for gewollt), had we been inclined to go out; ich habe ihn reden hören, (for gehört), I have heard him speak; ich habe ihn reiten sehen (for gesehen), I have seen him ride.—Lehren, to teach, and lernen, to learn, admit the same infinitive; though the preterite participle is, at present, more frequently made use of: as, Er hat mich schreiben lehren, or gelehrt; he has taught me to write; ich habe bey ihm zeichnen lernen, or gelernt, I have learnt of him to draw.

The *Preterite Participle* of certain verbs denoting motion, is joined to the verb *kommen*, to come, in an active signification, to express the manner of coming: as, Er kommt geritten, he comes riding, *i. e.* on horseback; er kommt gegangen, he comes walking, *i. e.* on foot; er kommt gefahren, he comes driving, *i. e.* in a carriage, &c. This peculiarity has been adverted to in the chapter on the participle, Part 1.

To compare things together, the English use *as*—*as*; for instance: as brave as Hannibal. The Germans render this by *so*—*als* (or *wie*); *so tapfer als Hannibal*.

Two Negatives, in the same sentence, are improper, because they are useless. For they do not affirm, as in Latin, nor add to the force of the negation, as in Greek. Yet we meet with them in the language of common life, and sometimes also

in writing. Der Kaiser und die Ligue standen gewaffnet und siegreich in Deutschland, und nirgends keine Macht, die ihnen Widerstand leisten konnte*— The emperor and the league now stood armed and victorious in Germany, and there was *no where no power* to resist them.

The *Negative*, nicht, not, in an interrogative exclamation, gives emphasis. Wie viele Menschen sind nicht in diesem Kriege umgekommen! how many men have perished in this war! Wie stolz schien er nicht! how proud he appeared!

The *Conjunction* doch serves for a similar purpose, in questions and exclamations. Was sagte er doch! pray, what did he say? War das doch ein Lärm! what a noise that was!

The idea *about, nearly*, with numbers, is rendered: a. by some adverbs, viz. beinahe, etwa, fast, ungefähr, bis. Ungefähr drey Jahre, about three years; zween bis drey Wochen, from two to three weeks. b. In common life by eine, which seems to stand for einige: as, eine acht Tage, about eight days. c. By prefixing ein to the substantive, and adding to the latter the termination er. The numeral is put after it; for example: Ein Stücker zeh'n, about ten pieces, (das Stück, the piece); ein Ehler drey, about three yards, (die Ehle, the yard); ein Jahrer fünf, about five years, (das Jahr, the year). The termination er is supposed to have arisen from a corruption of oder, or; so that it should be, ein Stück oder zeh'n, one piece or ten;

* Schillers Geschichte des dreißigjährigen Krieges. Vol. i. p. 227.

eine Elle oder drey, one yard or three; ein Jahr oder fünf, one year or five. Whatever may be the true origin of this manner of speaking, it is not one that can be recommended as classical. Nor does the following deserve more regard, viz. *d.* With the prepositions, *an*, *bey*. *An die zwanzig*, nearly twenty; *bey die vierzig*, nearly forty.—*Gegen* is here more proper.

Einige and *etliche*, with numbers, answer to the English *some*: as, *Einige (or etliche) zwanzig Pfund*, some twenty pounds, that means, twenty pounds, and some odd ones besides. When put to a hundred or a superior number, *einige* expresses a repetition of that number: as, *Einige (etliche) hundert (tausend) Menschen*, some hundreds (thousands) of people.

The *Conjunction* *so* is employed to connect a sentence, when the prior member of it begins with a consecutive, causal, or conditional conjunction. *Da er sich der Stadt näherte, so fand er die Wälle von den Feinden besetzt*, when he approached the town, he found the ramparts occupied by the enemy. *Wenn man sich in den Wissenschaften auszeichnen will, so muß man ununterbrochenen Fleiß besitzen*, if a person would distinguish himself in the sciences, he must possess unceasing industry.—*So* is not always required after the consecutive and causal, such as, *da*, when; *als*, as; *wie*, as; *weil*, because; but it is rarely left out after the conditional conjunctions, such as *wenn*, if; *ob schon*, *ob gleich*, *wenn schon*, *wenn gleich*, although. When the conditional is not expressed in the prior member, but to be understood, it is ne-

cessary to make use of *so* in the subsequent: as, *Hätte ich das gewußt, so wäre ich nicht gekommen*, had I known that, I should not have come; which stands for, *Wenn ich das gewußt hätte*, if I had known that—therefore *so* must be put in the following member.

When *Obgleich*, *Obschon*, or a similar word, noting though, although, precedes; *doch*, yet, or a synonymous conjunction, generally follows. *Ob er gleich jung ist, so hat er doch viele Erfahrung*, although he is young, he has (nevertheless) great experience.

After *indirect questions*, such as begin with *what*, *how*, *where*, the English frequently put the infinitive; for example: "I know not what to do; I will tell you how to act, where to go." In German, the infinitive cannot be employed in this manner. Some other mode of expression must be substituted: as, *Ich weiß nicht, was ich thun soll*, I know not what I must do; *Ich will Ihnen sagen, wie Sie handeln müssen*, I will tell you how you ought to act; *wohin Sie gehen müssen*, where you ought to go.

To what has been said concerning the *Preterite Participle*, these phrases may be added: *Das Gesicht nach Osten gekehrt*, having turned, or turning, his face to the east; *den Blick nach dem Vaterlande gewendet*, his looks being turned towards his country; *die Augen nach dem Himmel gerichtet*, his eyes being directed towards heaven. Here are three preterite participles, *gekehrt*, *gewendet*, *gerichtet*, joined to accusative cases, *das*

Geficht, den Blick, die Augen. To account for the accusative, the participle must either be construed actively, as we have done in the first example, or we must suppose it to be an imitation of the Latin idiom, as, *faciem mutatus et ora*; or consider those cases as absolute, in the manner of the Latin ablative. Thus the following expressions may be explained: **Dieß ausgenommen**, this being excepted, or excepting this; **dieß bey Seite gesetzt**, this being set aside, or setting this aside; **alles das abgerechnet**, all that being deducted, or deducting all that.

CHAP. III.

ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

THE parts of speech, in composing a sentence, follow a certain order of arrangement; which, in the German language, does not depend upon the government of words and their grammatical construction, but is adjusted according to other notions. The Greeks and Romans, in the progress of their rhetorick, deviated from the natural collocation of words, and placed them so as to give to the speech cadence and harmony; which, in Latin, is called *numerus orationis*, and in Greek *ῥυθμός* *. In this they had no fixed rules to direct them, but were guided merely by the judgment of their ear †. Hence arose what was called *numerosa oratio* ‡, which, being originally an imitation of poetry §, was adopted to increase the power and charms of eloquence. But for the language in general, there

* See Cicero, Orator, 51, 53.

† Cicero, *ibid.* 42, says: *Collocabuntur igitur verba, aut ut inter se quam aptissimè cohæreant extrema cum primis, eaque sint quam suavis-
simis vocibus; aut ut forma ipsa concinnitasque verborum conficiat or-
bem suum; aut ut comprehensio numerosè et aptè cadat.*—And 53, he
remarks: *Aures enim, vel animus aurium nuntio naturalem quandam in se
confinet vocum omnium mentionem.*—*Ibid.* 55. *Est in oratione numerum
quendam, non est difficile cognoscere: judicat enim sensus.*

‡ See Cicero and Quintilian.

§ Cicero, Orator, 52, 56—60. De Oratore, Lib. III. Cap. 47, &c.
Quintilian. Inst. Cap. 4.

were no exact laws, by which the arrangement of words was managed. Their grammatical combination, by agreement and government, modified, in some degree, by an obscure, or at least undetermined perception of the ear, was the sole standard to go by. In the modern tongues of Europe the case is, for the most part, the same. They are possessed of no regular system in placing the words. The ancients are more or less imitated*. The Germans alone have a settled method of arranging the parts of speech in a sentence: which is, at present, so incorporated with the genius of the language, that any deviation from it may be regarded as a grammatical offence. It is, therefore, very essential to be acquainted with this subject. I shall endeavour to lay down the rules with as much precision and perspicuity, as the present occasion will allow, leaving it for the student to complete the sketch by his own observation. Very vague notions have, indeed, been entertained about this matter, and I have seen it asserted, that it is impracticable to reduce it under any rules. But the error of such an opinion is apparent. For where there exists a criterion of discovering what is wrong, there must also be a standard for what is right: where we perceive a fault, a rule must be at hand to suggest the reason why it is so, and how it may be avoided. It was on such grounds, that I entered upon these researches; and though I

* This is particularly striking in the prosaic writers of Italy.

have pursued them unassisted by any one author*, I hope, that my attempt has not proved quite successful.

The leading principle in the position of words is, to give expression to the sentence, and to render it interesting to the attention of the hearer. For this reason the natural construction has been abandoned; and the words are placed in such a manner, as is calculated to produce that effect. There have been a few writers, who have wished to counteract this artificial system, and to restore the original order of grammatical construction. But they do not seem to have sufficiently considered the nature of their undertaking, and the established, and unalterable usage of the German tongue. Their endeavour has accordingly failed; and they serve merely as a test of the prevailing idiom.

It will be found, that the arrangement of words, as stated in the subsequent pages, favours the fluency of the language, and derives, from that circumstance, an additional recommendation. Nor is it inimical to versification, but frequently proves of advantage; and where the necessity of metre or rhyme requires, it allows deviations.

* I did not see what Mr. Adelung says upon this subject, in his works on the German language, till several years after I had drawn up my system: but I feel great satisfaction in coinciding, in many instances, with so respectable an authority.

We shall divide this chapter in the following manner:

1. The Position of the Noun Substantive.
2. The Position of the Noun Adjective.
3. Of the Pronoun.
4. Of the Verb.
5. Of the Participle.
6. Of the Adverb.
7. Of the Preposition.
8. Of the Conjunction.
9. Of the Interjection.

SECT. I.

POSITION OF THE NOUN SUBSTANTIVE.

Rule 1. The Substantive, in the nominative case, being *the subject* of a sentence, is placed before the verb.

The subject is opposed to the object: the former may be said to govern, and the latter to be governed by, the verb; for example: *Der Vater liebt seinen Sohn*, the father loves his son. Here *Der Vater* is the subject, which governs the verb, so far as the latter must agree with it in number and person, (see Part 2. Chap. 1); *seinen Sohn* is the object, and governed by the verb, because it is to be put in a particular case. Thus, *Der Mann schreibt einen Brief*, the man writes a letter; *der Mann* is the subject, *einen Brief* the object.

Exceptions to the first Rule.

1. The subject is put after the verb, in a direct question, as, *Schreibt der Mann*, does the man write? *Schreibt*, the verb—*der Mann*, the subject.

2. When, for the purpose of emphasis, the object is placed at the head of a sentence. For instance: *Dieses Glück genießt der Tugendhafte*, this happiness the virtuous man enjoys. *Der Tugendhafte* is the subject, which follows after the verb *genießt*; because the object, *dieses Glück*, begins the sentence.

3. When the dative or accusative of person (see Rule 4.) stands first, as, *Dem Menschen ist das Leben theuer*, to man life is dear; *diesen Knaben hat mein Freund die Französische Sprache gelehrt*, this boy my friend taught the French language.—The sentences here begin with a case of person, and the subjects are after the verb.

4. When an adjective or pronoun, serving for, or belonging to, the object, begins the sentence. *Gut ist der Wein zwar, aber auch theuer*, the wine indeed is good, but also dear. The adjective *gut* has, in this instance, the capacity of the object, and moves the subject, *der Wein*, from its place. *Gut findet mein Vater den Wein*, &c. my father finds the wine good: here, *gut* refers to the object *den Wein*, and has the same influence upon the subject. And this we may observe in the pronoun; as, *Wein ist das Haus*, mine is the house; *mein* serves for the object, and *das Haus*, which is the subject, is put after the verb. *Sein nennt der König die Waldung, welche im Süden von England befindlich ist*, the king

calls the forest *his*, which is in the south of England. *Sein* belongs to the object, and therefore brings the subject after the verb.

5. The participles, with an adverbial power, to express the manner of acting, being, or suffering, (see p. 299.) when placed in the beginning of a sentence, make the subject follow the verb. For instance: *Weinend sprach der Vater*, weeping the father spoke; *Trauernd gingen die Gefährten zu dem Grabmale*, the companions went mourning to the sepulchre. Thus with the preterite participle: *Geliebt und angebetet verließ der Held seine Mitbürger*, and *eilte ins Schlachtfeld*, neue Lorbeern zu erringen, the hero, beloved and adored, left his fellow-citizens, and hastened into the field of battle to obtain new laurels.

6. When an adverb begins the sentence, the subject stands after the verb. *Bald kommt der Winter*, the winter soon comes; *Schnell geht die Zeit dahin*, time quickly passes.

7. When a preposition, with its case, commences. *Mit freudiger Mine gingen die Einwohner ihrem Befreier entgegen*, with a joyful countenance the inhabitants went to meet their deliverer.

8. The following conjunctions have the same effect in moving the subject. *Also*, signifying so, thus; *daher*, therefore; *dann* (or *denn*), then; *darum*, for that reason; *dennach*, consequently; *deshalben* (*derohalben*), for that reason; *deswegen*, on that account; *desgleichen*, likewise; *deslo*; *ferner*, moreover; *folglich*, consequently; *gleichwohl*, nevertheless; *indessen*, in the meanwhile; *ingleichen*,

likewise; kaum, scarce; mithin, consequently; noch, yet, nor; theils, partly; so, either meaning so, or beginning the subsequent member of a sentence; überdieß, besides; übrigenß, in other respects.—

When the conjunctions, auch, also; entweder, either; zwar, indeed, are in the beginning of the sentence, the subject may be put after the verb, by which means a stress is laid upon the latter: as, Auch rief das Volk, the people even exclaimed; entweder liest der Knabe, oder er schreibt, the boy either reads or writes; zwar scheint die Sonne, aber, &c. the sun indeed shines, but, &c. When the emphasis is to be on the subject, it should remain before the verb: as, Auch das Volk rief, even the people cried out.—

In old and formal language the subject is sometimes placed after the verb, when und, and, or sondern, but, precedes. Und hat Beklagter erwiesen, and the defendant has proved. Here Beklagter, the subject, is after the verb, in consequence of und.

9. The subject always follows the verb, in the subsequent member of a sentence.

Note. The *Subsequent member* of a sentence is that, which comes after one beginning with a conditional, causal, or consecutive conjunction: such as wenn, if; weil, because; da, when. (See Part I. Chap 8.) Examples: Wenn das Wetter günstig bleibt, so kommt mein Freund in wenigen Tagen, if the weather continues favourable, my friend comes (or will come) in a few days. This sentence consists of two members: *the first*, if the weather continues favourable; *the second*, my friend comes, or

will come. The latter is called *the subsequent member*, in which the subject must be placed after the verb. Thus, *Weil die Zeit schnell verstreicht, so benutzt der Weise jeden Augenblick*, because time passes quickly, the wise man turns every moment to profit. Here are again two members, *the antecedent*, because the time passes; and *the subsequent*, the wise man turns every moment to profit. The subject in the latter, of course, stands after the verb. *Da Cäsar sich näherte, entwichen die Feinde*, when Cæsar approached (*antecedent*), the enemy withdrew (*subsequent*).—The subsequent members, after a conjunction of the description alluded to, frequently begin with the particle *so*, concerning which it will be proper to refer to Part 1. Chap. 8. The conjunction *wenn*, if, is sometimes understood in the antecedent: in which instance the subsequent member generally takes *so*, and the subject goes after the verb. For example: *Wäre der Fluß schiffbar, so würde der Handel blühen*, if the river were navigable, trade would flourish. The antecedent member should properly be thus expressed: *Wenn der Fluß schiffbar wäre*.—A subsequent member may be said to arise, when an infinitive begins the sentence, expressing purpose and design. *Um reich zu werden, unterzieht sich der Mensch oft den größten Mühseligkeiten*, to grow rich, man often undergoes the greatest hardships. The latter, “man undergoes,” &c. is the subsequent member, where the subject must be put after the verb.

10. The last instance, in which the verb precedes the subject, is where the conjunction *wenn*,

if, is to be supplied: as, *Wäre mein Vater hier gewesen, so wäre das Unglück nicht geschehen*, had my father been here, the misfortune would not have happened. *Wäre mein Vater hier gewesen*, stands undoubtedly for, *wenn mein Vater hier gewesen wäre*, if my father had been here; and the subject, as appears, is behind the verb.

Rule 2. The Substantive, being the object, is put after the verb; for example: *Ich liebe meinen Vater*, I love my father; *meinen Vater* is the object.

Exceptions:

1. When a stress is to be laid upon the object, it is placed in the beginning of the sentence: *Den Homer lese ich mit Vergnügen und Bewunderung*, Homer I read with pleasure and admiration.

2. The verb is sometimes thrown to the end of the sentence (see Sect. 4.), in which case the object must naturally come before it.

Rule 3. The substantive, in the genitive case, not being the object*, is generally put after the word, by which it is governed: as, *Der Sohn meines Freundes*, the son of my friend. However, we see it

1. Before the substantive that governs it, when it is attended with a distinction and emphasis. *Des Vaters Segen bauet den Kindern Häuser, aber der Mutter Fluch reisset sie nieder*, a father's blessing builds houses to the children, but a mother's curse pulls them down again.

* The genitive may be the object, when it is governed by the verb. See Part 2, Chap. 1.

2. Before adjectives: as, *Des Verbrechens schuldig*, guilty of the crime; *des Lobes würdig*, worthy of the praise; *der Sorge unwerth*, undeserving of the care.

3. Before some prepositions. See Sect. 6.

Rule 4. The dative has its place after the verb, and if there is an objective case, besides, before the latter. *Er gibt dem Manne das Buch*, he gives the book to the man. The dative, *dem Manne*, here stands between the verb and the object.

When it is to bear an emphasis, it should be moved from its place, either before the verb, or after the object. The first is the most powerful: as, *Dem Manne gibt er das Buch*; the second does not so much alter the force of the sentence, *er gibt das Buch dem Manne*.—If the object is a monosyllable, or short word, and the dative case consists of more syllables, the former should be put first, because a long word finishes the sentence better than a short one; for example: *Er sagte es dem Vater*, he told it to the father—*es* is the object, and comes before the dative.

Rule 5. The accusative serves to some verbs as the case of person, when there is another accusative of the thing, or object. The former is then placed in the same manner as the dative, according to the preceding rule. Examples: *Ich nenne den Mann Freund*, I call the man friend; *ich heiße einen solchen Menschen einen Helden*, I call such a man a hero; *er lehrt den Sempronius die Rechenkunst*, he teaches Sempronius arithmetick.

Note. Should the subject, the object, and the case of person meet together, either before or after the verb, they would follow in this order: subject, case of person, object. For example, before the verb: Da der König dem Feinde den Frieden angeboten hat, since the king has offered peace to the enemy.—After the verb: Auf diese Weise verschaffte Cäsar seinen Freunden Genugthuung, und benahm seinen Feinden alle Hoffnung zur Rache, in this manner Cäsar procured satisfaction for his friends, and deprived his enemies of all hope of revenge.

Rule 6. The vocative case may stand any where, either before or after the verb, at the option of the speaker.

SECT. II.

POSITION OF THE NOUN ADJECTIVE.

Rule 1. The Adjective, being joined with a substantive, precedes the same; as, Guter Wein, good wine; das schöne Kind, the pretty child.

Sometimes it is placed after the substantive, by way of apposition, serving for a relative sentence: as, Der Minister, nicht weniger gerecht, als staatsklug, that alles, um diesem Ereignisse vorzubeugen, the minister, not less just than politick, did every thing to obviate this event. Here the adjectives, being put after the substantive, occupy the place of a re-

lative sentence; *welcher nicht weniger gerecht als staatsflüg war*, who was not less just than politic.

Rule 2. When the adjective is not combined with a substantive (nor turned into a substantive itself; for thus it would have all the rights of the latter), it is considered as the object, and put after the verb: as, *der Mann ist gut*; or before it, with an emphasis, *gut ist der Mann*.

Rule 3. The numerals rank before other adjectives, preceding a substantive: as, *Drey gute, ehrliche Menschen*, three good honest men.

Note. When cardinal and ordinal numbers meet before a substantive, it seems indifferent which is put first; whether, for instance, we say, *die drey ersten*, the three first; or, *die ersten drey*, the first three.—The words *alle*, all; *manche*, several; *viele*, many; *jeder*, each, stand before the numerals and the adjectives.

Rule 4. Adjectives generally follow the cases they govern (see Part 2. Chap. 1.): as, *Dieser Ehre würdig*, worthy of this honour; *des Verbrechens schuldig*, guilty of the crime; *zehn Ellen lang*, ten yards long; *drey Fuß breit*, three feet broad; *sechs Pfund schwer*, weighing six pounds.

SECT. III.

POSITION OF THE PRONOUN.

Rule. The pronoun either stands in the room of a substantive; or is connected with it, in the

character of an adjective; and has, accordingly, either the position of the one, or of the other.

Therefore, when used substantively, it may serve as the subject, and as the object in a sentence, concerning the arrangement of which see the first section. The personal pronouns never occur otherwise, than as substantives; and the demonstratives occasionally assume that quality. When the latter are employed as adjectives, they take the place of the article, and go before any other word, that may be joined with the substantive: as, *Diese drey guten Leute*, these three good people; *jene vier ersten tapfern Männer*, those four first brave men.—The word *all*, however, may precede them. See Part 2. Chap. 2.

Note. The personal pronoun, in the accusative, or objective case, is commonly put before the dative: as, *Er gibt es mir*, he gives it to me—*es*, the objective case, before the dative *mir*. *Schicke sie ihm*, send them to him—*sie*, them, preceding *ihm*, to him. We find, indeed, the dative before the object: as, *gib mir es*, but not so frequently; and then it is often contracted, as, *mir es* into *mir's*, *dir es* into *dir's*, *euch es* into *euch's* (not so properly *ihm's*, *ih'r's*).

Farther, the personal pronoun, in the dative or accusative, is sometimes placed before the subject, when the verb is at the end of the sentence. *Wenn mir das Glück günstig ist*, if fortune is propitious to me; *weil dich dein Vater liebt*, because thy father loves thee.

SECT. IV.

POSITION OF THE VERB.

Rule 1. The Indicative Mood stands after the subject and before the object.

Except:

1. The instances, when the subject is placed after, and the object before it, which are mentioned in the first section.

2. When the verb must be at the end, that is to say, not only after the subject, but also after the object, and all words connected with the same. This is necessary:

a. When the member of the sentence, to which the verb belongs, commences with a relative pronoun, as *der, welcher, wer, was*; or a relative adverb, as *daher, from whence; darum, for what; warum, weßwegen; von wannen, from whence; wo, where; and the compounds of wo, as wovon, woher, womit, woraus, &c.* Examples: *Der Schriftsteller ist zu schätzen, welcher die Beförderung der Tugend zum Zwecke hat;* that writer is to be esteemed, who has the promotion of virtue for his object. *Ich kenne einen Mann, der sich mit Recht meinen Freund nennt;* I know a man who justly calls himself my friend. *Wer dem Laster und dessen Reizen folgt, bereitet sich eine schmerzliche Reue,* he who follows vice, and its charms, prepares to himself a painful repentance. The verb, in the foregoing examples, is at the end of that member of the sentence, to which the relative pronouns, *der,*

welcher, wer, belong. It is thus with the adverbs alluded to, for instance: *Der Ort, wo ich heute meinen Freund sah*; the place, where to-day I saw my friend. *Wohin man das Auge nur wendet, erblickt man nichts als Elend*, wherever one turns one's eye, one perceives nothing but misery. The verbs *sah* and *wendet* are put last, in consequence of *wo* and *wohin*.

b. The verb goes to the end after interrogatives, (whether pronouns, adverbs, or conjunctions), when they make an indirect question. Examples: *Er fragt mich, wer diesen Morgen bey Ihnen war*, he asks me, who was with you this morning? *wissen Sie, welches Buch sie heute in dem Garten lasen*; do you know what book they read to-day in the garden? *Wer* and *Welcher*, interrogative pronouns, serve here to indirect questions*, and the verb stands last. *Ich kann nicht sagen, wie es sich jugetragen hat*, I cannot tell how it has happened; *ich möchte wissen, ob viele Leute bey jetziger heisser Witterung auf dem Felde seyn werden*, I should like to know, whether, during the present hot weather, many people will be in the field. *Wie* and *ob* constitute indirect questions.

c. After conjunctions, conditional, causal, and consecutive. They are: *Als, bevor, bis, da, dafern,*

* It is probably understood by every reader, what I mean by indirect questions: but it will not leave any doubt, if I change the foregoing into direct questions, to show the difference, viz. *Wer war bey Ihnen*, who was with you? *welches Buch lasen sie*, what book did they read? In these the verb is put before the subject. See Sect. 1.

damit, daß, auf daß (in order that), ehe, falls, im Falle (in case that), gleichwie, indem; (inasmuch, since, because; old) nachdem, nun (when it signifies, since, after—nun es einmal geschehen ist, since it once has been done); ob, ob schon, obgleich, obwohl, seit and seitdem; (sintemat, since, whereas; old); so (when it means if); so bald, or so bald als; wenn, wenn gleich, wenn schon, wiewohl, wofern, wo nicht. Examples: Als er den Aufruhr in der Stadt bemerkte, when he perceived the tumult in the city; bevor ich den Wald erreicht hatte, before I had reached the wood; bis die Sonne die erstarrten Felder auflösen wird, till the sun shall loosen the congealed fields; da der König in London ankam, when the king arrived in London, &c.

Note. By the force of the aforesaid conjunctions, the verb is put after every word belonging to the same member of the sentence, and even after a subordinate member, connected with it. For example: Da ich den Mann, welcher so edel gedacht, ehre und liebe, since I honour and love the man, who has thought so nobly. In this the principal member is, da ich den Mann ehre und liebe, with which is connected a subordinate or secondary member, welcher so edel gedacht, and the verb of the former is placed after this. It need not necessarily be so; but the sentence might also run thus: Da ich den Mann ehre und liebe, welcher so edel gedacht. Sometimes one way, and sometimes the other may be preferable: it depends upon sound and perspicuity. This likewise applies to the infinitive with the preposition zu. The verb, influ-

enced by the above conjunctions, may be put after the infinitive: as, *Weil ich mich nicht zu zanken wünsche*, because I do not like to quarrel—or before it: *Weil ich nicht wünsche, mich zu zanken*. When the infinitive has not the preposition *zu*, it is immediately governed by the verb, as much as a case declension; and the verb must, under those circumstances, stand after it: as, *Wenn er das Buch lesen will*, if he will read that book; where it would be erroneous to let the infinitive follow after the verb, as, *wenn er will das Buch lesen*.

Rule 2. The Subjunctive Mood is, in the arrangement of words, under the same regulations, as the indicative. Only observe, that, when it expresses a wish, it often begins the sentence: as, *Gebe es der Himmel*, may heaven grant it; *möchte die Sonne doch scheinen*, O that the sun would shine! Also when a conditional conjunction is understood: *Wäre ich hier gewesen*, had I been here; for, *wenn ich hier gewesen wäre*, if I had been here.

Rule 3. The Imperative always precedes the personal pronouns, that serve to it as subjects. *Lobe du*, praise thou; *lobe er*, let him praise; *loben sie*, let them praise.

Rule 4. The Infinitive comes after the object and the other words of the sentence, except the indicative and subjunctive, when these, for reasons assigned before, are put last. Examples: *Er wünscht die Lateinische Sprache gründlich zu lernen*, he wishes to learn the Latin language accurately; *dieser Mann kann Englisch, Französisch, Deutsch, und verschiedene andere Sprachen von Europa reden*, this man can speak English, French, German, and se-

veral other tongues of Europe. *Verren* and *reden*, are infinitives.

This rule affects the future tenses, because they are composed of an infinitive, and the third auxiliary. That infinitive, namely, is placed in the same manner, as in the examples above stated, that is to say, after the object and other words: as, *Ich werde morgen die Gegend besuchen*, I shall to-morrow take a view of the country. *Besuchen* is the infinitive belonging to the auxiliary *werde*, with which it constitutes the future tense; but this connexion does not alter its position in the sentence.—When the future, in the indicative, or subjunctive mood, is to go to the end, the infinitive, which composes it, must be put before the auxiliary: as, *Man glaubt, daß der Kaiser mit den Franzosen Frieden machen werde*, it is thought that the Emperor will make peace with the French. Here the infinitive, *machen*, is before the auxiliary *werde*.

Note. The infinitive is sometimes employed as the subject or object in a sentence; and is then placed according to these qualifications.

Rule 5. The verbs compound separable are to be noticed in this place. The particle is separated from the verb (when this is not at the end of the sentence) and thrown back, after the object and other words. *Ich nehme Ihr Geschenk mit Dankbarkeit an*, I receive your present with gratitude; verb *annehmen*, to receive, the particle *an*, at the end. *Sie kamen in Ansehung dieses Punctes bald überein*, they soon agreed with respect to this point; verb *übereinkommen*. *Nehmen Sie das Buch*

mit, take the book with you; verb *mitnehmen*. When the verb is at the end of the sentence, the particle is not divided from it: as, *Da ich Ihr Geschenk mit Dankbarkeit annehme*, as I receive your present with gratitude. The verb *annehme* stands last, in consequence of the conjunction *da*, and remains, for this reason, united with the particle.—The infinitive mood and preterite participle have their places after the object, and at, or near, the end of the sentence; therefore, the particle is not separated, except by *zu*, in the infinitive, and *ge*, in the preterite part. being put between: as, *mitzunehmen*, inf. *mitgenommen*, pret. part. *Zu*, however, does not always accompany the infinitive.—After what has been said, it appears, that the separation principally occurs in the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative moods. Compare farther, upon this subject, Part 1. Chap. 4. Sect. 7.

SECT. V.

POSITION OF THE PARTICIPLE.

Rule 1. When the participle (either present or preterite) is used as an adjective, it has the privileges of the same in the position of words.

Rule 2. The present participle is always preceded by the case it governs: as, *Die alles belebende Sonne*, the sun animating every thing; *die Fleisch fressenden Thiere*, the animals that live upon flesh.

Rule 3. The preterite participle, combined with the auxiliary verbs, has its station after the object and other words; and is, therefore, generally found towards the end of the sentence. *Er ist in London gewesen*, he has been in London—*ist gewesen*, the participle *gewesen* at the end. *Ich habe heute das Buch gelesen*, I have read the book to-day—*habe gelesen*. *Er wird mit Recht ein großer Mann genannt*, he is justly called a great man. If the auxiliary, by the power of some pronoun or conjunction, be removed to the end, the pret. part. stands before it: as, *Die Thaten, welche von dem Dichter geschildert werden*, the deeds, that are depicted by the poet. The auxiliary, *werden*, at the end, because of the pronoun *welche*; the participle, *geschildert*, before it. *Ich weiß es, weil ich den Mann selbst gesehen habe*, I know it, because I have seen the man myself. *Weil*, conj. brings the verb *habe* to the end, and the partic. *gesehen* precedes it. —Should it so happen, that an infinitive also is in the sentence, then the arrangement may either be thus, participle, infinitive, indicative (or subjunctive), *nachdem ich das Buch gelesen haben werde*, after I shall have read the book; or the verb definite may be put before the participle and infinitive, *nachdem ich das Buch werde gelesen haben*.

SECT. VI.

POSITION OF THE ADVERB.

Rule 1. An adverb, joined to an adjective, must always remain before it: *sehr gut*, very good; *nicht schlecht*, not bad.

Rule 2. When the adverb belongs to the verb, it is put after the latter, and, in general, also after the object. *Er behandelt den Gegenstand vortreflich*, he treats the subject excellently; *vortreflich* is the adverb.

The verb being at the end of the sentence, the adverb, as well as the other words, must naturally stand before it. Nor can the adverb, with propriety be placed after the infinitive, or preterite participle.

Rule 3. The adverb, being moved from its place, towards the beginning of the sentence, generally receives an emphasis; as, *Ich habe heute das Buch gelesen*, I have to-day read the book. This makes the notion of *heute*, to-day, more perceptible than, *Ich habe das Buch heute gelesen*. But to render the emphasis so distinct, that it cannot be mistaken, the adverb should be put quite at the beginning. *Heute habe ich den König gesehen*, to-day I have seen the king.

In this observation are not included the interrogative adverbs, such as *wie*, how; *wenn*, when; *warum*, why; *weßwegen*, what for; *wo*, where; which, as they can be placed no where but in the

beginning, derive no particular distinction from that situation.

There are adverbs, that in no position seem to be susceptible of an emphasis, viz. those which express chance, probability, and the like ideas—*vielleicht*, perhaps; *vermuthlich*, probably; *wahrscheinlich*, very likely, &c. As no difference arises in the purport of the sentence from their situation, they may stand any where, even between the subject nominative and the verb, where no other adverb can be placed. *Dieser Mann vielleicht wird es wissen*, this man perhaps will know it; *sein Bruder vermuthlich hat ihm das geschrieben*, his brother probably has written that to him. If they have any effect when thus put, it is, that they rather give force to the subject.

The negative *nicht*, not, is commonly stationed after the object: as, *Der Mann thut seine Pflicht nicht*, the man does not do his duty—here the action of the verb is accompanied by the negative. If it is to be referred to the subject or object, or any other word, it must precede the same. *Nicht Reichthum, sondern Zufriedenheit macht die Menschen glücklich*, not riches, but contentment makes men happy. In this instance the negative is applied to the subject, and goes before it. *Last uns nicht den Verlust des Schiffes, sondern den Tod so vieler braver Seeleute beklagen*, do not let us lament the loss of the ship, but the death of so many fine seamen. The negative before the object.

SECT. VII.

POSITION OF THE PREPOSITION.

Rule 1. The preposition always continues with its case, and is in general prefixed to it.

Halben, halber, entgegen, zuwider, are constantly put after their cases. *Durch, nach, gegenüber, ungeachtet, wegen, zu, zufolge, zuwider*, sometimes before, and sometimes after. See the prepositions in the first Part.

Rule 2. The preposition, together with its case, may be looked upon, in the position of words, as an adverb; accordingly its place will be after the object. *Ich habe einen Brief aus Deutschland erhalten*, I have received a letter from Germany.

Rule 3. From thence it may be transposed, for the purpose of emphasis, and be put before the object: *Ich habe aus Deutschland einen Brief erhalten*—here the words *aus Deutschland* acquire energy from their position; but the stress is most forcible, when the preposition is placed in front of the sentence: *Aus Deutschland habe ich einen Brief erhalten*, from Germany I have received a letter.

Rule 4. It cannot be inserted between the subject and the verb, unless it solely belongs to the former: as, *Der Mann mit dem blauen Rocke hat es gethan*, the man with the blue coat (*i. e.* wearing a blue coat) has done it. *Jener mit dem Degen hat den Mord begangen*, that one with the sword (*i. e.* who has a sword) has committed the murder. It is not said, that the first has done it with the blue coat, or that the second has committed the murder

with the sword: this would be a false construction. But, from the collocation of the words, it is to be understood, that the one, who wears a blue coat, is charged with a certain deed, and the other, who has a sword, has committed a murder. Therefore, if the preposition, with its case, is not exclusively referred to the subject, it cannot be put where we see it in the examples adduced.

Rule 5. If both adverb and preposition meet in the same member of the sentence, and at the end of it, the adverb should come before the preposition, especially when the former consists only of one or two syllables; for it is not so harmonious to conclude with a short word, as with one of more syllables. *Er schreibt gut mit dieser Feder,* he writes well with this pen; *wir gehen heute auf die Jagd,* we go a hunting to-day; *sie reiseten eilig durch London,* they passed hastily through London. The adverbs, *gut, heute, eilig,* here stand before the prepositions.

SECT. VIII.

POSITION OF THE CONJUNCTION.

Rule 1. As conjunctions are intended to join, their place naturally must be, where the junction is to be effected: therefore, those, which join sentences, are put at the beginning of the member they connect, and before the subject.

Rule 2. Some conjunctions force the verb to the end of the sentence, as has been stated in the fourth section, where they are specified.

Rule 3. Others, when at the beginning, make the subject go behind the verb.

They are: *Da*, then; *daher*, therefore; *darum*, for that reason; *demnach*, *democh*, *jedoch*, *jedemoch*, *ferner*, *folglich*, *hingegen*, *ingleichen*, *kaum*, *mithin*, *überdies*, *übrigens*. *Da* kam der Mann, then came the man; *mithin* irrt sich dein Bruder, consequently your brother mistakes. Except *da* and *mithin*, all the rest may likewise be placed after the verb: as, *Der Mann glaubt daher*, the man thinks therefore; *ich zweifelte jedoch*, I, however, doubt. *Ferner*, *folglich*, *hingegen*, *ingleichen*, *überdies*, *übrigens*, may even stand between the subject and the verb; *der Verfasser ferner behauptet*, the author moreover maintains.—*Also*, *doch*, *entweder*, *weber*, *zwar*, are to be added to the foregoing; for, when they begin a sentence, they may, like these, bring the subject after the verb, though it is not necessary. It is right to say, *Also der Bruder hat geschrieben*, and, *also hat der Bruder geschrieben*. Likewise thus: *Der Bruder hat also geschrieben*, and *der Bruder also hat geschrieben*. By this transposition we have it in our power to qualify the stress of the sentence, as seems most fit for our purpose, which is no small advantage in composition.—The word *namlich*, namely, which not improperly is called a conjunction, may be included in the above; but, when at the beginning of a sentence, it never has the power of removing the subject after the verb.

Rule 4. The conjunctions, *Aber*, but, and *auch*, also, may stand any where in the sentence.

At the beginning, *Aber mein Bruder weigert sich*, but my brother declines it. After another con-

junction, *Da aber mein Bruder sich weigert.* After an adverb, *Run aber befiehlt es der König,* but now the king commands it; or after a preposition with its case, *Mit diesen Leuten aber kann ich nichts anfangen,* but with these people I can do nothing. And it makes no alteration in the power of the words it follows; therefore, those which move the subject after the verb, retain the same quality, though *aber* be inserted after them; as appears from the preceding examples.—It may farther be placed after the subject, *Die Franzosen aber haben den Engländern den Krieg erklärt,* but the French have declared war against the English. After the verb, *Die Franzosen haben aber den Engländern den Krieg erklärt.* After the case of person, *Die Franzosen haben den Engländern aber den Krieg erklärt.* After the object, *Die Franzosen haben den Engländern den Krieg aber erklärt.* It always gives energy to the word that precedes it. The personal pronouns are generally put before it, when the verb has quitted its original place: as, *Da er aber nicht kommt,* but since he does not come; *das wünschen wir aber nicht,* but this we do not wish; *das Geld verlange ich aber,* but the money I demand.

What has been said of *aber*, may be applied to *auch*, so that it will not be necessary to illustrate this latter by examples.

SECT. IX.

POSITION OF THE INTERJECTION.

THE position of the interjection is arbitrary; we may put it wherever we are prompted by our feelings. There is no other rule but this.

APPENDIX.

IT seemed expedient to furnish the reader with a few pages of German composition, that he might have an immediate opportunity of applying the rules of the preceding Grammar. For which reason I have selected some passages from four eminent writers, now living in Germany. They are as conspicuous for their learning and genius, as they are distinguished by the purity and elegance of their language. They will be considered as an adequate test for what has been advanced in the foregoing work. If the rules that are given, coincide with their practice, it will be a great confirmation of them. I recommend it particularly to the reader to examine, by those authorities, what has been said concerning the arrangement of words in the last chapter. To facilitate this undertaking, a translation of those passages has been added, as accurate and literal, as the difference of the two languages would admit of.

It may be objected, that for the purpose of trying the merit of the whole Grammar, the extracts afforded are too short; and this I must, in a great degree, allow. But I have to plead the necessity of keeping within certain limits the extent of this publication, which, indeed, has already outstept the boundaries, that were originally intended. The reader will, therefore, content himself with these fragments, which may lead him on to farther investigation.

To assist the student in his first attempts of speaking German, a collection is finally subjoined of such words and phrases, as frequently occur in the course of common conversation.

Wieland.

(Agathon, Erstes Buch, Erstes Kapitel).

Die Sonne neigte sich zum Umergang, als Agathon, der sich in einem unwegsamen Walde verirrt hatte, abgemattet von der vergeblichen Bemühung einen Ausgang zu finden, an dem Fuß eines Berges anlangte, welchen er noch zu ersteigen wünschte, in Hoffnung von dem Gipfel desselben irgend einen bewohnten Ort zu entdecken, wo er die Nacht zubringen könnte. Er schleppte sich mit Mühe durch einen Fußweg hinauf, den er zwischen den Gesträuchen gewahr ward; allein da er ungefähr die Mitte des Berges erreicht hatte, fühlte er sich so entkräftet, daß er den Muth verlor den Gipfel erreichen zu können, der sich immer weiter von ihm zu entfernen schien, je mehr er ihm näher kam. Er warf sich also ganz athemlos unter einen Baum hin, der eine kleine Terrasse umschattete, und beschloß die einbrechende Nacht daselbst zuzubringen.

Eine Oeffnung des Waldes zeigte ihm die untergehende Sonne. Es brauchte nichts mehr als diesen Anblick, um das Gefühl seiner widrigen Umstände zu unterbrechen. Er übertieß sich der Begeisterung, in welche dieses majestätische Schauspiel empfindliche Seelen zu setzen pflegt, ohne sich eine Zeitlang seiner dringendsten Bedürfnisse zu erinnern. Endlich weckte ihn das Rauschen einer Quelle, die nicht weit von ihm aus einem Felsen hervorsprudelte, aus dem angenehmen Staunen, worin er sich selbst vergessen hatte; er stand auf, und schöpfte mit der hohlen Hand von diesem

FROM WIELAND.

(Agathon, Book 1st, Chap. 1st.)

THE sun was setting, when Agathon, who had lost himself in a pathless wood, fatigued with the vain endeavour of finding his way out of it, arrived at the foot of a mountain, which he yet wished to ascend, hoping, from its top, to discover some inhabited place, where he might pass the night. He dragged himself up with difficulty, along a track, which he perceived among the bushes; but when he had reached about the middle of the mountain, he felt himself so exhausted, that he lost the courage of being able to attain to the summit, which seemed to be removed the farther from him, the nearer he came to it. He, therefore, threw himself, quite breathless, under a tree, which shaded a little terrace, and determined, there to pass the approaching night.

An opening of the wood showed him the setting sun. It wanted nothing but this sight, to interrupt the sensation of his disagreeable circumstances. He gave himself up to that ecstasy, into which this majestick spectacle is wont to transport sensible souls, without, for some time, remembering his most urgent necessities. At last the murmuring of a fountain, which, not far from him, issued out of a rock, roused him from the pleasing reverie, in which he had forgotten his situation; he rose, and took with a hollow hand of this water, whose

Wasser, dessen fließenden Krystall, seiner Einbildung nach, eine wohlthätige Nymphe ihm aus ihrem Marmorkrüge entgegen goß; und anstatt die von Cyprischem Weine sprudelnden Becher der gewöhnlichen Athenischen Gastmähler zu vermissen, dünkte ihm, daß er nichts angenehmer getrunken habe. Er legte sich wieder nieder, entschloß unter dem sanft betäubenden Gemurmel der Quelle, und träumte, daß er seine geliebte Psyche wieder gefunden habe, deren Verlust das Einzige war, was ihm von Zeit zu Zeit einige Seufzer auspreßte.

Herder.

(Zerstreute Blätter, Erste Sammlung, Paraphrasen).

Die Lirie und die Rose.

Als einst, ein nackter Fels, die Erde da stand: siehe, da trug eine freundliche Schaar von Nymphen den jungfräulichen Boden hinan, und gefällige Samen waren bereit, den nackten Fels zu beblümen. Vielfach theilten sie sich in ihr Geschäft. Schon unter Schnee und im kalten kleinen Grase fieng die bescheidne Demuth an, und webte das sich verbergende Beilichen. Die Hoffnung trat hinter ihr her, und füllte mit kühlenden Düften die kleinen Kelche der erquickenden Hyacinthe. Jetzt kam, da es jenen so wohl gelang, ein stolzer, prangender Chor vielfarbiger Schönen. Die Tulpe erhob ihr Haupt: die Narzisse blickte umher mit ihrem schmachtenden Auge.

flowing crystal, according to his fancy, a kind nymph poured out to him from her marble urn; and instead of wishing for the cups, frothing with Cyprian wine, at the usual Athenian banquets, it seemed to him, that he had never drunk more pleasantly. He laid himself down again, fell asleep by the soft stunning murmur of the fountain, and dreamt, that he had again found his beloved Psyche, whose loss was the only thing, which, from time to time, extorted some sighs from him.

FROM HERDER.

(Scattered Leaves. First Collection. Paramythicks.)

THE LILY AND THE ROSE.

WHEN once the earth stood there, a naked rock, behold, a friendly set of nymphs carried upon it the virgin soil, and pleasing genii were at hand to cover the naked rock with flowers. They divided this occupation into manifold shares. Already under the snow, and in the cold short grass, modest *Humility* began, and wove the reserved *Violet*. *Hope* followed her, and filled with cooling odours the small cups of the refreshing *Hyacinth*. Now came, as those had so well succeeded, a proud and splendid throng of many-coloured beauties. The *Tulip* raised her head: the *Narcissus* looked round with her languishing eye.

Viele andre Göttinnen und Nymphen beschäftigten sich auf mancherley Art, und schmückten die Erde, frohlockend über ihr schönes Gebilde.

Und siehe, als ein großer Theil von ihren Werken mit seinem Ruhm und ihrer Freude daran verblühet war, sprach Venus zu ihren Grazien also: "was säumt ihr, Schwestern der Armuth? Auf! und webet von Euren Reizen auch eine sterbliche, sichtbare Blüthe." Sie giengen zur Erd' hinab und Aglaja, die Grazie der Unschuld, bildete die Lilie: Thalia und Euphrosyne webten mit schwesterlicher Hand die Blume der Freude und Liebe, die jungfräuliche Rose.

Manche Blumen des Feldes und Gartens neideten einander; die Lilie und Rose neideten keine, und wurden von allen beneidet. Schwesterlich blühen sie zusammen auf einem Gefilde der Hora, und zieren einander: denn schwesterliche Grazien haben ungetrennt sie gewebet.

Auch auf euren Wangen, o Mädchen, blühen Lilien und Rosen; mögen auch ihre Huldinnen, die Unschuld, Freude und Liebe, vereint und unzertrennlich auf ihnen wohnen.

Goethe.

(Werthers Leiden. Erstes Buch. Am 26, Julius.)

Ich habe mir schon manchmal vorgenommen, sie nicht so oft zu sehen. Ja, wer das halten könnte! Alle Tage unterliege ich der Versuchung, und verspreche mir heilig: morgen willst du einmal weg-

Many other goddesses and nymphs were engaged in different ways, and adorned the earth, exulting at their beauteous productions.

And lo! when a great part of their works had faded with its glory, and their joy, Venus thus spoke to the Graces: "Why tarry you, sisters of loveliness? Rise! and weave of your charms likewise a terrestrial, visible blossom." They went down to the earth, and Aglaia, the Grace of innocence, formed the lily: Thalia and Euphrosyne wove with a sisterly hand the flower of joy and love, the virgin rose.

Many flowers of the field and of the garden envied each other; the lily and the rose envied none, and were envied by all. Sisterlike they bloom together upon the same field of Hora, and adorn each other: for sisterly Graces have woven them inseparable.

Upon your cheeks also, O maidens, flourish lilies and roses: may their deities, Innocence, Joy, and Love, dwell upon them, united and inseparable.

FROM GOETHE.

(The Sufferings of Werther. Book 1st. July 26th.)

I HAVE already several times resolved not to see her so often. Ah! who could keep it! Every day I yield to the temptation, and promise to myself solemnly: thou wilt stay away for once to-morrow;

bleiben; und wenn der Morgen kommt, finde ich doch wieder eine unwiderstehliche Ursache, und ehe ichs mich versehe, bin ich bey ihr. Entweder sie hat des Abends gesagt: Sie kommen doch morgen?—Wer könnte da wegbleiben? oder sie giebt mir einen Auftrag, und ich finde schicklich, ihr selbst die Antwort zu bringen; oder der Tag ist gar zu schön, ich gehe nach Wahlheim, und wenn ich nun da bin, ist's nur noch eine halbe Stunde zu ihr!—Ich bin zu nahe in der Atmosphäre.—Zuck! so bin ich dort! Meine Großmutter hatte ein Märchen vom Magnetenberg: die Schiffe, die zu nahe kamen, wurden auf einmal alles Eisenwerkes beraubt, die Nägel flogen dem Berge zu, und die armen Elenden scheiterten zwischen den übereinander stürzenden Bretern.

Schiller.

(Geschichte des dreißigjährigen Krieges. Dritter Theil,
Seite 750.)

Und wirklich war das Elend in Deutschland zu einem so ausschweifenden Grade gestiegen, daß das Gebet um Frieden von tausendmal tausend Zungen ertönte, und auch der nachtheiligste immer noch für eine Wohlthat des Himmels galt. Wüsten lagen da, wo sonst tausend frohe und fleißige Menschen wimmelten, wo die Natur ihren herrlichsten Segen ergossen und Wohlleben und Ueberfluß geherrscht hatte; die Felder von der fleißigen Hand des Pflügers ver-

and when the morrow comes, I nevertheless find again some irresistible reason, and before I am aware of it, I am with her. Either she has said in the evening: you, however, come to morrow—Who could then stay away? or she gives me a message, and I deem it proper to bring to her the answer myself; or the day is too fine, I go to Wahlheim, and when once I am there, it is but half an hour's walk farther to her!—I am too near in the atmosphere—in the twinkling of an eye I am there! My grandmother had a story of the magnetick mountain: the ships that came too near, were at once deprived of the ironwork, the nails flew towards the mountain, and the poor wretches foundered among the boards, (which were) tumbling one over the other.

FROM SCHILLER.

(History of the Thirty Years' War. Part 3d, p. 750.)

AND, indeed, the calamities (of war) had in Germany risen to such an enormous degree, that the prayer for peace resounded from a thousand times thousand tongues, and that even the most disadvantageous was still regarded as a favour of heaven. Deserts lay there, where formerly thousands of happy and industrious human beings lived, where nature had poured forth her choicest blessings, and wealth and abundance had reigned.

lassen, lagen ungebaut und verwildert, und wo eine junge Saat aufschoss, oder eine lachende Aernte winkte, da zerstörte ein einziger Durchmarsch den Fleiß eines ganzen Jahres, die letzte Hoffnung des verschmachtenden Volkes. Verbrannte Schlösser, verwüstete Felder, eingescherte Dörfer lagen meilenweit herum in grauenvoller Zerstörung, während daß ihre verarmten Bewohner hingingen, die Zahl jener Mordbrennerheere zu vermehren, und was sie selbst erlitten hatten, ihren verschonten Mitbürgern schrecklich zu erstatten. Kein Schuß gegen Unterdrückung, als selbst unterdrücken zu helfen.

Die Vernachlässigung der Felder, die Zerstörung der Saaten, und die Vervielfältigung der Armeen, die über die ausgesogenen Länder daher stürmten, hatten Hunger und Theurung zur unausbleiblichen Folge, und in den letzten Jahren vollendete noch Mißwachs das Elend.

Alle Bande der Ordnung lösten sich in dieser langen Zerrüttung auf, die Achtung für Menschenrechte, die Furcht vor Gesetzen, die Reinheit der Sitten verlor sich, Treu und Glaube verfiel, indem die Stärke allein mit eisernem Scepter herrschte; üppig schossen unter dem Schirme der Anarchie und der Straßlosigkeit alle Laster auf, und die Menschen verwilderten mit den Ländern. Kein Stand war dem Muthwillen zu ehrwürdig, kein fremdes Eigenthum der Noth und der Raubsucht heilig.

The fields, abandoned by the diligent hand of the husbandman, remained uncultivated and wild; and where a young crop sprung up, or a smiling harvest beckoned, there a single march destroyed the exertions of a whole year, the last hopes of a famished people. Burnt castles, desolated fields, villages turned into ashes, lay scattered for miles, in awful destruction, while their impoverished inhabitants went to increase the number of the incendiaries, and to take dreadful vengeance for what they themselves had suffered, upon those of their fellow citizens, who had hitherto been spared. No defence against oppression, but in joining the oppressor.

The neglect of the fields, the ruin of its productions, and the multiplication of the armies, which, like a hurricane, rushed over the starved countries, had hunger and death for their inevitable consequence, and in the last years a blighted harvest completed the misery.

All bonds of order were dissolved in this long confusion; the regard for human rights, the fear of the laws, the purity of morals, were lost; truth and faith sunk, while Force alone ruled with an iron sceptre: vices of all kinds grew up luxuriantly under the shelter of anarchy and impunity, and men fell into the same wildness, as the countries they inhabited. No condition was too venerable for insult, no property sacred against want and rapine.

A

COLLECTION OF PHRASES.

1. *For Petty Conversation, or Small Talk.*

Guten Morgen, mein Herr!	Good morning, Sir!
Guten Abend.	Good evening.
Wie befinden Sie sich?	How do you do?
Wie geht's?	How goes it?
Was machen Sie?	What are you doing?
Ganz wohl.	Tolerably well.
Ziemlich wohl.	Pretty well.
Sehr wohl, or recht wohl.	Very well.
Haben Sie wohl geschlafen (or geruhet).	Have you slept (or rested) well?
Es ist schönes Wetter.	It is fine weather.
Sehr warm und angenehm.	Very warm and pleasant.
Sehr frische Luft.	Very fresh air.
Außerst kalt.	Extremely cold.
Ein schneidender Wind.	A cutting wind.
Geht der Wind stark?	Is the wind high?
Es wird wahrscheinlich regnen.	It will probably rain.
Es regnet—es schneit.	It rains—it snows.
Die Sonne scheint.	The sun shines.
Wollen Sie spazieren gehen?	Will you take a walk?

Wollen Sie nicht einen
kurzen Spaziergang
machen?

Will you not take a
short walk?

Wollen Sie mit gehen?

Will you go with me (or
with us)?

Haben Sie hier ange-
nehme Spaziergänge?

Have you pleasant walks
here?

Ja, ziemlich gute.

Yes, pretty good ones.

Reiten Sie nie?

Do you never ride,
go on horseback?

Nein, fast gar nicht.

No, almost not at all.

Sie lesen sehr viel.

You read a great deal.

Ich bitte um Verzeihung,
sehr wenig.

I beg your pardon, very
little.

Stehen Sie früh auf?

Do you rise early?

Nein: aber ich gehe ge-
wöhnlich spät zu Bett.

No: but I generally go
to bed late.

Wieviel Uhr ist es?

What o'clock is it?

or

Was ist die Stunde?

What is the hour?

Ein Uhr (or Eins).

One o'clock.

Zwei Uhr (or zwei).

Two o'clock.

Ein Viertel auf drey.

A quarter past two, (li-

terally, a quarter upon

two).

Halb drey.

Half past two (lit. half

Drey viertel auf drey.

two).

Drey viertel auf drey.

Three quarters after two,

or a quarter of three

(liter. three quarters

Es ist drey Uhr, &c.

upon three).

It is three o'clock, &c.

Es geht auf vier.

It is past three (lit. it goes towards four).

Es schlägt vier.

It is striking four.

Hat es geschlagen?

Has it struck?

Es wird gleich schlagen?

It will strike immediately.

Seht Ihre Uhr richtig?

Does your watch go right?

Etwas zu geschwinde—zu langsam.

Rather too fast—too slow.

Haben Sie Herrn N. gesehen?

Have you seen Mr. N.?

Er war nicht zu Hause.

He was not at home.

Haben Sie die Zeitungen gelesen?

Have you read the newspapers?

Was gibt es Neues?

What is the news?

Nicht viel—nichts von Belang.

Not much—nothing of importance.

Haben Sie Briefe erhalten?

Have you received letters?

Wollen Sie zu Mittag bey mir essen?

Will you dine with me?

Wollen Sie zu Abend (or diesen Abend) bey mir essen?

Will you sup with me?

Wie Sie belieben, (or wie Sie wollen).

As you like.

Essen Sie gern Rindfleisch?

Do you like beef?

Ist hiervon gefällig, or belieben Sie etwas hiervon?

Do you choose any thing of this?

Sie essen nicht.	You do not eat.
Sie lassen sich nöthigen.	You want to be pressed.
Wollen Sie ein Glas Wein trinken?	Will you drink a glass of wine?
Rothem Wein (or Rothwein).	Red wine.
Weissen Wein (Weißwein).	White wine.
Ist Ihnen Kaffee, oder Thee gefällig?	Do you choose coffee or tea?
Ich danke Ihnen.	I thank you. (This, like the French <i>bien obligé</i> , generally signifies, that we decline the offer.)
Bleiben Sie noch ein wenig.	Stay a little longer.
Eilen Sie nicht.	Do not be in a hurry.
Ich habe nicht (or keine) Zeit.	I have not time.
Wollen Sie wieder kommen?	Will you come again?
Es thut mir leid—ich habe Abhaltung.	I am sorry—I am prevented.
Thun Sie mir den Gefallen.	Do me this favour.
Lassen Sie sich erbitten.	Be intreated, be persuaded.
Ich bitte Sie.	I beg you.
Seyn Sie so gut.	Be so good.
Seyn Sie so gütig.	Be so kind.
Haben Sie die Güte.	Have the goodness.
Es ist mir nicht möglich.	It is not possible for me.

Leben Sie wohl. Farewell! good bye!
 Guten Tag. Good day.
 Gute Nacht. Good night.
 Morgen sehen wir uns To-morrow we see each
 wieder. other again, or, we
 meet again!

Bis aufs Wiedersehen. Till we meet again.
 Schlafen Sie wohl. May you sleep well.
 Es ist spät. It is late.
 Es ist früh. It is early.
 Sind Sie müde? Are you tired, or sleepy?

Nicht dünkt, ich höre je- I think, I hear some-
 mand kommen. body coming.
 Es klopft jemand. Somebody knocks.
 Wer ist da? Who is there?
 Herein. Come in.
 Machen Sie die Thür auf. Open the door.
 Machen Sie die Thür zu. Shut the door.
 Klingeln Sie, or schellen Ring the bell.
 Sie.

2. For polite or complimentary Conversation.

Es ist mir angenehm, daß I am happy to have the
 ich die Ehre habe, Sie honour of seeing you.
 zu sehen.
 Verzeihen Sie, daß ich so Pardon me for taking
 frey bin, Ihnen meine the liberty of paying
 gehorsamste Aufwar- my humble respects
 tung zu machen. to you.

Sie erzeigen mir viele Ehre durch Ihren gütigen Besuch. You do me great honour by your kind visit.

Ich habe lange das Glück nicht gehabt, Sie zu sehen: und freue mich daher, Sie so wohl zu finden. I have for a long while not had the happiness of seeing you: and am therefore glad to find you so well.

Sie befinden Sich doch auch recht wohl. You are likewise very well, I hope.

Was machen Ihre werthen Angehörigen? How is your family?

Ich bin Ihnen für Ihre gütige Nachfrage verbunden: Sie sind alle gesund und wohl. I am obliged to you for your kind enquiry: they are all in health, and well.

Das freut mich außerordentlich. That gives me very great pleasure.

Wollen Sie sich nicht niederlassen? Will you not take a seat?

Darf ich Ihnen einen Stuhl anbieten? May I offer you a chair?

Ich bitte gehorsamst, bemühen Sie sich nicht. I beg you will not trouble yourself.

Ich bitte, setzen Sie sich. I beg you to be seated.

Sie sind sehr gütig. You are very kind.

Ich danke Ihnen verbindlichst. I thank you very much.

Ich fürchte Sie zu belästigen? I am afraid of being troublesome to you.

Nein, im geringsten nicht: es macht mir hingegen the contrary, it gives

- viel es Vergnügen, Sie zu sehen. I have great pleasure to see you.
- Ich wünschte, wenn es Ihre Zeit erlaubt, ein paar Worte über eine gewisse Sache mit Ihnen zu reden. I could wish, if your time permits it, to speak with you a few words upon a certain subject.
- Ich will Ihnen mit dem größten Vergnügen darin dienen. I will, with the greatest pleasure, serve you in it.
- Sie verpflichten mich durch Ihre Gefälligkeit. You oblige me greatly by your kindness.
- Darf ich mir nicht die Ehre Ihrer Gesellschaft auf morgen Mittag (oder auf morgen Abend) zum Essen erbitten? May I request the honour of your company to-morrow to dinner (or to supper)?
- Das wird viele Ehre für mich seyn. That will be great honour for me.
- Ich empfehle mich Ihnen. I recommend myself to you.
- Ich habe die Ehre mich Ihnen zu empfehlen. I have the honour of recommending myself to you. (These are expressions of respect similar to "your humble servant, your most obedient servant").
- Ich bitte mir ferner Ihre Gewogenheit und Freundschaft aus. I farther request your favour and friendship.

Kann ich die Ehre haben?	May I have the honour?
Darf ich Sie bitten?	May I beg you?
Darf ich Sie bemühen?	May I trouble you?
Wollen Sie mir erlauben?	Will you permit me?
Ich bitte um Verzeihung.	I beg pardon.
Entschuldigen Sie mich.	Excuse me, pardon me.
Verzeihen Sie mir.	Pardon me.
Ist Ihnen gefällig?	Does it please you?

3. *For travelling.*

Wie weit ist Berlin von hier?	How far is Berlin from hence?
Zwanzig (Deutsche) Meilen.	Twenty (German*) miles.
Wie viele Stationen haben wir zu passiren?	How many stages have we to pass?
Ich glaube, zehn.	I think, ten.
Und wie viel bezahlt man für die Station?	And how much does one pay for a stage?
Reisen Sie mit zwey, oder mit vier Pferden?	Do you travel with two, or with four horses?
Gewöhnlich mit zweyen, wenn die Wege nicht zu schlecht sind.	Commonly with two, when the roads are not too bad.
Die Strasse von H. nach G. ist ziemlich gut.	The road from H. to G. is pretty good. It is

* A German mile is the 15th part of an equator's degree; consequently the proportion of a German mile to an English is = 15 : 69, or nearly 1 : 4 $\frac{2}{3}$: which makes a German mile equal to 4 $\frac{2}{3}$ English, within a small fraction.

Es ist eine hohe Land- straße (or <i>Chaussée</i>)*.	a turnpike road.
Ist das die Landstraße, oder ein Feldweg (Ne- benweg)?	Is that the high road, or a crossroad (by-road)?
Wo geht dieser Weg hin?	Where does this road go to?
Dieser zur rechten (or rechts).	This one to the right.
Jener zur linken (or links).	That one to the left.
Die Wege sind rauh.	The roads are rough.
Die Spuren tief.	The ruts are deep.
Es geht Bergauf—Ber- gab.	It goes up hill—down hill.
Postknecht (or Postillion, also Schwager) fährt zu.	Postboy, go on.
Warum fahrt Ihr so langsam?	Why do you drive so slow?
Fahrt geschwinder.	Drive faster.
Wir fahren kaum eine halbe (Deutsche) Meile in einer Stunde.	We scarce go half a (German) mile in an hour.
Das ist zu arg.	That is too bad.
Wenn Ihr nicht besser fahrt, so kriegt Ihr kein Trinkgeld †.	If you do not drive bet- ter, you will not get any money.
Sind die Pferde müde?	Are the horses tired?

* A French term for a high road.

† The gratuity that is given to the lower people, as an extraordinary reward for their services, is called Trinkgeld, properly drinking money; i. e. money intended to be spent in drink.

Wir müssen Vorspann nehmen.	We must get some additional horses.
Halte in diesem Dorfe.	Stop in this village.
Ist daselbst ein Wirthshaus?	Is there an inn?
Kann ich über Nacht hier bleiben (or logiren).	Can I stay here this night?
Haben Sie gute Betten?	Have you good beds?
Gut, ich will aussteigen.	Well, I will get out.
Nehmt meine Sachen aus dem Wagen.	Take my things out of the carriage.
Bringt den Koffer herein.	Bring the trunk in.
Vergeßt den Mantelsack nicht.	Do not forget the portmanteau.
Herr Wirth, nehmen Sie meine Päckereien in Acht.	Landlord, take care of my luggage.
Sie müssen davor einstehen.	You must answer for them.
Was kann ich zu essen haben?	What can I have to eat?
Ist kein Küchenzettel da?	Is there no bill of fare?
Das ist also hier nicht gebräuchlich, einen Küchenzettel zu halten.	So, it is not usual here to keep a bill of fare.
Num, was kann ich bekommen?	Well, what can I have?
Was für Wein haben Sie hier?	What sort of wine have you here?
Er ist nicht vorzüglich.	It is not particularly good.
Wie viel kostet die Flasche (or Bouteille)?	How much does a bottle cost?

Damit ist er bezahlt.	It is paid with that, i. e. that is money enough for it.
Ich mag ihn nicht.	I do not like it.
Bringt mir den Stiefel- knecht, und ein Paar Pantoffeln.	Bring me the bootjack, and a pair of slippers.
Ich will das Bett ge- wärmt haben.	I want to have my bed warmed.
Ich denke morgen sehr früh abzureisen.	I think of setting out very early to-morrow.
Sie müssen mich also wecken.	Therefore you must call me.
Um wie viel Uhr?	At what o'clock?
Um welche Zeit?	At what time?
Um halb vier.	At half past three.
Denn ich muß den Tag noch nach Hamburg kommen.	For I must that day get to Hamburg.
Das werden Sie schwer- lich können.	That you will hardly be able to do.
Wir wollen sehen.	We will see.
Wo ist die Rechnung?	Where is the bill?
Rechnen Sie hier nach Thalern, Groschen, und Pfennigen?	Do you reckon here by dollars*, groshes, and pennigs?

* A dollar (Reichsthaler, commonly called *rix-dollar* by the English, which, in the original, means dollar of the empire) according to the general coinage in Germany, may, upon an average, be estimated at 3s. 6d. English. Sometimes it is below, and sometimes above this proportion, which depends upon the course of exchange.

Sind dieß Gute-groschen,	Are these good groshes,
oder sogenannte Ma-	or what they call
rien-groschen?	* Mary-groshes.
Was ist ein Kreuzer?	What is a kroitzer?
Zwey Kreuzer ein Sechser.	Two kroitzers a sexer.
Zwey Sechser ein Groschen,	Two sexers a grosh, or
(or Guter-groschen).	good grosh.
Vier und zwanzig Gute-	Four and twenty good
groschen ein Thaler.	groshes, a dollar.
Acht Groschen (i. e. Gute-	Eight groshes (i. e. good
groschen) ein Drittel,	groshes) a drittel, or
oder ein halber Gulden.	half a gilder.
Sechzehn ein Gulden.	Sixteen a gilder.
Oder nach Marien-gro-	Or, according to Mary-
schen, wie viel gehen	groshes, how many go
auf einen Thaler?—	to a dollar?—Thirty-
Sechs und dreißig.	six.
Ein Pfennig ist der achte	A pennig is the eighth
Theil eines Marien-gro-	part of a Mary-grosh,
schen, und der zwölfte	and the twelfth of a
eines Guten-groschen.	good grosh.
Was heißt ein Mattier?	What is called a mat-
	teer?
Ein halber Marien gro-	Half a Mary-grosh.
schen.	
Heller ist weniger als ein	Heller is less than a
Pfennig?	pennig.
Außer diesen gibt es so	Besides these, there are
viele Münzarten in	so many sorts of coin

* They were called Mary-groshes, because they bore originally an impression of the Holy Virgin.

Deutschland, daß es Zeit erfordert, sie kennen zu lernen.	in Germany, that it requires time to get acquainted with them.
Fünf Thaler machen eine Pistole.	Five dollars make a pistole.
Das heißt, Reichsthaler, nicht so genannte Große Thaler, oder Französische Thaler.	That is to say, rixdollars, not what are called big dollars, or French dollars.
Wechseln Sie mir.	Get change for me.
Es ist ein Friedrichd'or, ein Louisd'or, ein Carlsd'or.	It is a Frederic d'or, a Louis d'or, a Charles d'or*.
Ist die Pistole (or der Friedrichsd'or, &c.) vollwichtig?	Is the pistole (or the Frederic's d'or, &c.) full weight?
Vielleicht etwas zu leicht.	Perhaps somewhat too light.
Geben Sie Aufgeld (or Agio)?	Do you give agio†?
Wie hoch kommt die Rechnung?	What does the bill amount to?
Was habe ich zu bezahlen?	What have I to pay?
Die Rechnung beträgt so viel.	The bill amounts to so much.
Herr Wirth, Sie verstehen	Landlord, you under-

* All these are different denominations for a pistole, taken from the names of the sovereigns that coined them.

† Agio (Aufgeld) is money paid for the difference between the value of gold and silver coin. In Germany the balance is, generally, in favour of the gold.

daß anschreiben.

stand making out a bill.

Das ist unbillig.

That is unreasonable.

Das ist billig.

That is reasonable.

Es ist zu viel—aber hier ist Ihr Geld.

It is too much—but here is your money.

Wo sind die Pferde?

Where are the horses?

Spannt an.

Put to.

Macht fort.

Make haste.

Ist der Wagen geschmiert?

Has the carriage been greased.

Sind die Räder in gutem

Are the wheels in good condition?

Stande?

Nichts zerbrochen?

Nothing broken?

Welches ist das beste

Which is the best Inn at

Wirthshaus in St.

St.

VOCABULARY.

1. *Terms relating to the human Body.*

Der Leib, the body.	Das Kinn, the chin?
Der Kopf, the head.	Die Kinnlade (or der Kinnbacken) the jaw-bone.
Die Schläfe, plur. the temples.	Der Bart, the beard.
Die Stirne, the forehead.	Die Kehle, the throat, the windpipe.
Das Auge, the eye.	Der Hals, the neck, chiefly the forepart.
Das Augentlid, the eye-lid.	Der Nacken, the neck behind.
Die Augenvimpern, pl. the eye-lashes.	Die Schulter, the shoulder.
Die Haare, pl. the hair; sing. Das Haar.	Der Rücken, the back.
Die Nase, the nose.	Der Rückgrat, the back-bone, the spine.
Das Nasenloch, the nostril.	Der Arm, the arm.
Das Ohr, the ear.	Der Elbogen, the elbow.
Der Mund, the mouth.	Die Hand, the hand.
Die Lippe, the lip.	Die Faust, the fist.
Der Zahn, the tooth.	Der Finger, the finger.
Das Zahnfleisch, the gums.	Der Nagel, the nail.
Die Zunge, the tongue.	Der Daumen, the thumb.
Der Gaumen, the palate.	Der Knöchel, the knuckle.
Der Backen, (die Wange) the cheek.	Die Brust, the breast.

Der Wagen, the sto- mach.	Die Ferse, (die Hacke) the heel.
Das Bein, the leg.	Das Gelenke, the joint.
Der Schenkel, the thigh.	Die Haut, the skin.
Das Knie, the knee.	Das Fleisch, the flesh.
Die Schiene (das Schien- bein) the shin.	Das Blut, the blood.
Die Wade, the calf of the leg.	Das Gehirn, the brain.
Der Fuß, the foot.	Die Eingeweide, pl. the bowels.
Der Knöchel, the ankle.	Das Herz, the heart.
Die Zehe, the toe.	Die Lunge, the lungs.

2. Terms relating to Dress.

Die Kleidung, dress, clothes.	Der Rock, the coat; also petticoat.
Die Kleidungsstücke, pl. wearing apparel.	Der Hut, the hat.
Das Tuch, the cloth; also the handkerchief.	Die Mütze, the cap.
Die Leinwand, the linen.	Das Halstuch, the neck- cloth.
Die Seide, the silk.	Das Schnapstuch, the pocket handkerchief.
Die Wolle, the wool.	Das Hemd, the shirt, or shift.
Die Baumwolle, the cotton.	Die Weste, the waistcoat.
Das Kleid, a man's dress- coat; also a woman's gown.)	Die Hosen, or die Bein- kleider, the breeches.
	Der Strumpf, the stock- ing; pl. die Strümpfe.

Das Strumpfband, the garter.	Der Knopf, the button.
Der Schuh, the shoe; pl. die Schuhe.	Die Tasche, the pocket.
Der Stiefel, the boot; pl. die Stiefel.	Die Schnürbrust, the stays.
Der Pantoffel, the slip- per, pl. die Pantoffeln.	Der Faden, the thread.
Die Schnalle, the buckle.	Die Nadel, the needle, the pin.
	Die Stecknadel, the pin.

3. Terms relating to the House, Furniture, Utensils, &c.

Das Haus, the house.	Der Ofen, the stove.
Das Zimmer, the apart- ment, the room.	Der Kamin, the fire- place.
Der Saal, a large room, drawing-room.	Der Schornstein, the chimney.
Die Stube, the room.	Der Herd, the hearth.
Das Schlafzimmer, (die Schlafkammer, or die Kammer), the bed- room.	Die Küche, the kitchen.
Die Thür, the door.	Die Kohle, the coal.
Das Fenster, the window.	Das Holz, the wood.
Das Dach, the roof.	Der Stein, the stone.
Die Decke, the ceiling; also the cover of any thing.	Das Bett, the bed.
Die Treppe, the stairs.	Das Kissen, the cushion.
Das Geländer, the rails, balustrade.	Der Tisch, the table.
	Der Stuhl, the chair.
	Der Sessel, a large chair, also a stool.
	Die Fußdecke, the carpet.
	Der Vorhang (die Gar- dine) the curtain.

Das Messer, the knife.	Die Serviette, the nap- kin.
Die Gabel, the fork.	Das Handtuch, the towel.
Der Löffel, the spoon.	Das Bettuch, the sheet.
Der Esstöffel, the table- spoon.	Die Matraße, the mat- tress.
Der Theelöffel, the tea- spoon.	Die Glocke, the bell.
Der Teller, the plate.	Das Schloß, the lock.
Die Schüssel, the dish.	Der Schlüssel, the key.
Das Becken, the bason.	Die Feuerzange, the tongs.
Das Glas, the glass.	Der Stöhrer, the poker.
Das Weinglas, the wine glass.	Die Schaufel, the shovel.
Das Bierglas, a large glass.	Das Licht, the candle; also the light.
Der Topf, the pot.	Der Leuchter, the candle- stick.
Die Tasse, cup and saucer.	Die Lichtscheere (die Licht- pinde) the snuffers.
Die Flasche (die bou- teille) the bottle.	Das Papier, the paper.
Das Theezeng, the tea- things.	Die Feder, the pen.
Das Tischtuch, the table- cloth.	Die Dinte, the ink.
	Das Dintenfaß, the ink- stand.

4. Terms relating to Food and Drink.

Das Brot, the bread.	Das Fleisch, the flesh, meat.
Der Kuchen, the cake.	Das Rindfleisch, beef.
Die Butter, the butter.	Das Hammelfleisch, mutton.
Das Butterbrot, bread and butter.	

Das Kalbfleisch, veal.	Der Krebs, the crawfish.
Das Schweinefleisch, pork.	Der Hummer, the lobster.
Der Schinken, the ham.	Die Krabbe, the crab.
Der Speck, bacon.	Die Auster, the oyster; pl. die Austern.
Der Puter, the turkey.	Das Salz, the salt.
Der Kaporn, the capon.	Der Pfeffer, the pepper.
Das Huhn, the fowl.	Der Essig, the vinegar.
Junges Huhn, chicken.	Das Gemüse, the vege- tables.
Die Gans, the goose.	Die Kartoffel, the pota- to; pl. Kartoffeln.
Die Ente, the duck.	Der Kohl, the cabbage.
Das Geflügel, birds for the table.	Der Blumenkohl, the cauliflower.
Die Taube, the pigeon.	Der Spinat, the spinage.
Das Rebhuhn, the par- tridge.	Die Erbse, the pea; pl. Erbsen.
Die Schnepfe, the snipe.	Die Bohne, the bean; pl. Bohnen.
Die Waldschnepfe, the woodcock.	Die Rübe, the turnip.
Der Phasan, the phea- sant.	Die Möhre, the carrot.
Das Wildpret, game, ve- nison.	Die Gurke, the cucumber.
Der Hase, the hare.	Die Zwiebel, the onion.
Der Fisch, the fish.	Der Rettig, the radish.
Der Karpf, the carp.	Der Meerrettig, the horse-radish.
Die Schleie, the tench.	Der Salat, the salad.
Der Lachs, the salmon.	Die Suppe, the soup.
Die Forelle, the trout.	Die Brühe (die Fleisch- brühe) the broth.
Der Aal, the eel.	
Der Barsch, the perch.	
Der Flunder, the floun- der.	

Die Sauce, Fr. the sauce, the gravy.	Die Nuß, the nut; pl. die Nüsse.
Die Pastete, the pasty.	Die Walnuß, the walnut.
Der Nachtisch, the desert.	Der Wein, the wine.
Das Gebäck, the pastry.	Der Rheinwein, Rhenish wine.
Die Torte, the tart.	Der Franzwein, French wine.
Der Kuchen, the cake.	Der Punsch, the punch.
Das Obst, the fruit.	Der Brantwein, the brandy.
Der Apfel, the apple.	Der Thee, the tea.
Die Birne, the pear.	Der Kaffee, the coffee.
Die Kirsche, the cherry.	Der Zucker, the sugar.
Die Pflaume, the plum.	Das Frühstück, the breakfast.
Die Zwetsche, the damson.	Das Mittagessen, (das Mittagsmahl) the din- ner.
Die Pfirsche, the peach.	Das Abendessen, the sup- per.
Die Aprikose, the apricot.	Das Mahl, die Mahlzeit, the meal.
Die Zitrone, the lemon.	Essen, to eat.
Die Apfelsine, (die Orange) the orange.	Frühstücken, to breakfast.
Die Erdbeere, the straw- berry; pl. Erdbeeren.	Zu Mittag essen, to dine.
Die Himbeere, the rasp- berry.	Zu Abend essen, to sup.
Die Maulbeere, the mul- berry.	Trinken, to drink.
Die Stachelbeere, the gooseberry.	Das Stück, the piece.
Die Johannisbeere, the currant.	Der Bissen, the bit.
Die Weintraube, (die Traube), the grape.	Ein wenig, (ein bißchen) a little.
Die Kastanie, the chest- nut.	

5. *Terms relating to the People in the House.*

Der Herr, the master.	Die Köchin, the woman cook.
Die Frau, the mistress.	Der Bediente, the man-servant.
Der Wirth, the landlord.	Die Magd (das Mädchen) the woman-servant, the maid.
Die Wirthin, the landlady.	Der Aufwärter, the waiter.
Der Verwalter, the steward.	Der Schirrmeister, the ostler.
Die Haushälterin, the housekeeper.	Der Kutscher, the coachman.
Der Hausvogt, the bailiff.	Der Postillon, the post-boy.
Der Kellner (der Kellermeister, or der Schenk) the butler.	Der Stallknecht (der Reitknecht) the groom.
Der Kammerdiener, the valet de chambre.	Der Knecht, a farmer's-man, a servant, that does hard work.
Die Kammerfrau, or das Kammermädchen, the waiting woman, the lady's maid.	
Der Koch, the man cook.	

6. *Some Adjectives and Verbs.*

Groß, great, big, large.	Breit, broad.
Klein, little, small.	Schmal, narrow.
Dick, thick.	Weit, wide.
Dünn, thin.	Eng, tight.
Lang, long.	Roth, red.
Kurz, short.	Gelb, yellow.

Blau, blue.	Reiten, to ride on horse-
Grün, green.	back.
Schwarz, black.	Laufen, to run.
Weiß, white.	Stehen, to stand.
Gut, good.	Liegen, to lie down.
Schlecht, bad.	Holen, to fetch.
Schön, fine, beautiful.	Bringen, to bring.
Häßlich, ugly.	Spielen, to play.
Hübsch, pretty.	Lesen, to read.
Garstig, nasty.	Schreiben, to write.
Niedlich, neat, nice.	Schneiden, to cut.
Geschwind, quick.	Lachen, to laugh.
Langsam, slow.	Weinen, to cry.
Reisen, to travel.	Sprechen, to speak.
Gehen, to go, to walk.	Neden, to talk.
Fahren, to move by means of a carriage.	

FINIS.

ERRATA.

- Page 6, line 12,.....read undervalued.
- 20, — 13,..... — Dag for Dag.
- 24, — 23,..... — continues.
- 31, — 13,..... — Die.
- 32, — 4,..... — Der Böhmen.
- 17,..... — beegnen.
- 33, — 20,..... — liebete.
- 38, — 7,..... — Fieber.
- 8,..... — Fieber.
- 59, — 27,..... insert Vers after Christus.
- 67, — 8,..... read is for was.
- 111, last line,..... — Die Herrn for Dir H.
- 116, line 6, from below, — Dem Geſeße for Dem
Geſeße.
- 9,..... — Den Tiſch for Den
Tiſche.
- 118, — 18,..... — Des Gehorſams for der
G.
- 120, — 2,..... — Vorrath for Vorracht.
- 2, from below, — Band for Bond.
- 149, — 9,..... — er for en.
- 154, — 23,..... — Groſſe.
- 164, — 19,..... dele for.
- 211, — 3, from below, read have for hadst.
- 212 and 236, in the ſecond perſon ſing. preterpluperf.
Indicat. read hadst for had. P. 236, in the Sub-
junctive, had for hadst.
- 259, line 5, from below, read ſah for ah.
- 281, — 5,..... — Freunden.
- 290, last line,..... — brauchen for gebrauchen.
- 291, line 2,..... — gebrauchen for brauchen.
- 300, — 3,..... — Iliad.
- 369, — 14,..... — verbs.
- 371, — 8,..... — zeichnet.
- 384, — 2, from below, put a comma after the word
ſubſtantive. Line 3, dele the ſemicolon after
number.
- 400, line 5, read Part 1, Chap. 7, for Sect. 6.

